5280

GA21-9353-1
S5280-01

IBM 5280 Distributed Data System

Functions Reference Manual

GA21-9353-1
S5280-01

IBM 5280 Distributed Data System

Functions Reference Manual

Preface

This reference manual is intended for people who need the following information about the 5280:

- An overview of system programming and system function
- A description of system and partition data areas
- A description of machine addressing and object code instructions
- How to use system diagnostic aids

In the appendixes are hexadecimal conversion and addition tables, EBCDIC and ASCII charts, and SCS control codes.

A second application microprocessor can be added to the system as a feature. The second application microprocessor functions the same way as the main microprocessor except that it does not respond to keyboard attentions. References in this manual to the main microprocessor apply to the second application microprocessor as well.

Related Publications

- *IBM 5280 Data Areas and Diagnostic Aids Handbook,* SY31-0595
- *IBM 5280 Assembler Language Reference Manual,* SC21-7790
- *IBM 5280 Communications Reference Manual,* SC34-0247
- *IBM 3270 Information Display System Component Description,* GA27-2749.

Second Edition (April 1981)

This is a major revision of, and obsoletes, GA21-9353-0, and incorporates TNL GN20-9557.

Because the changes and additions are extensive, this publication should be reviewed in its entirety.

Changes are periodically made to the information herein; these changes will be reported in technical newsletters or in new editions of this publication.

Use this publication only for the purposes stated in the *Preface.*

It is possible that this manual may contain reference to, or information about, IBM products (machines and programs), programming, or services that are not announced in your country. Such references or information must not be construed to mean that IBM intends to announce such IBM products, programming, or services in your country.

Publications are not stocked at the address below. Requests for copies of IBM publications and for technical information about the system should be made to your IBM representative or to the branch office serving your locality.

This publication could contain technical inaccuracies or typographical errors. Use the Reader's Comment Form at the back of this publication to make comments about this publication. If the form has been removed, address your comments to IBM Corporation, Information Design and Development, Department 997, 11400 Burnet Road, Austin Texas 78758. IBM may use and distribute any of the information you supply in any way it believes appropriate without incurring any obligation whatever. You may, of course, continue to use the information you supply.

Contents

Components of the 5280 system include the:

- 5281 Data Station
- 5282 Dual Data Station
- 5285 Programmable Data Station
- 5286 Dual Programmable Data Station
- 5288 Programmable Control Unit
- 5256 Printer
- 5225 Printer

All data stations and the control unit may contain diskette drives. The 5285 and 5288 can have an optional printer attachment. The 5285 and 5288 can contain an optional communications attachment. A system controller contained in the 5285, 5286, and 5288 handles all system functions. The 5281 and 5282 data stations do *not* have a controller and, therefore, must be attached to a data station or control unit.

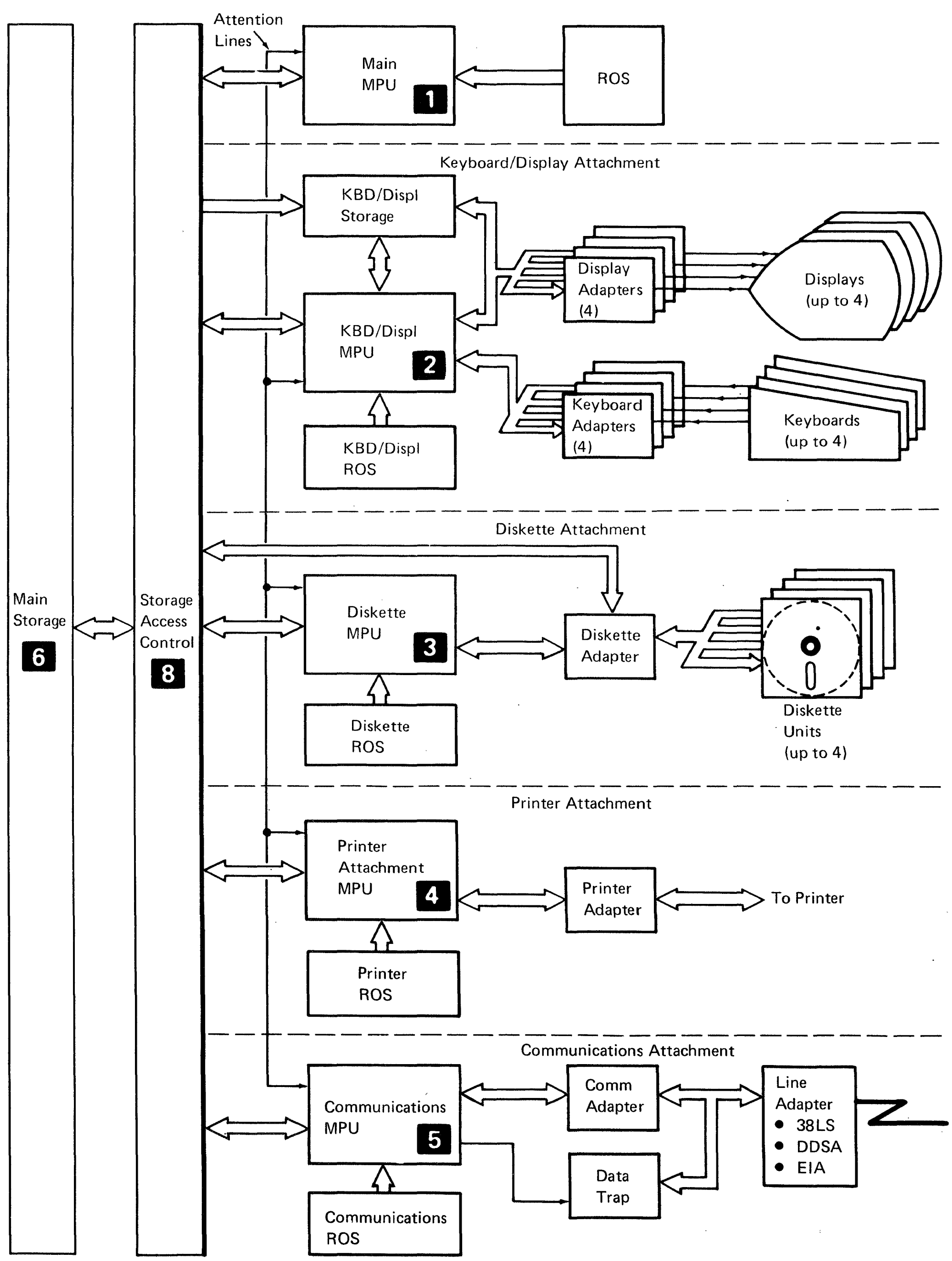
SYSTEM CONTROLLER

The 5280 system controller contains a main microprocessor, the partitioned main storage, and the device attachments. The device attachments contain the device microprocessors. The main microprocessor and the device microprocessors work independently of each other but share the same main storage.

The following illustration shows the main components of the system controller.

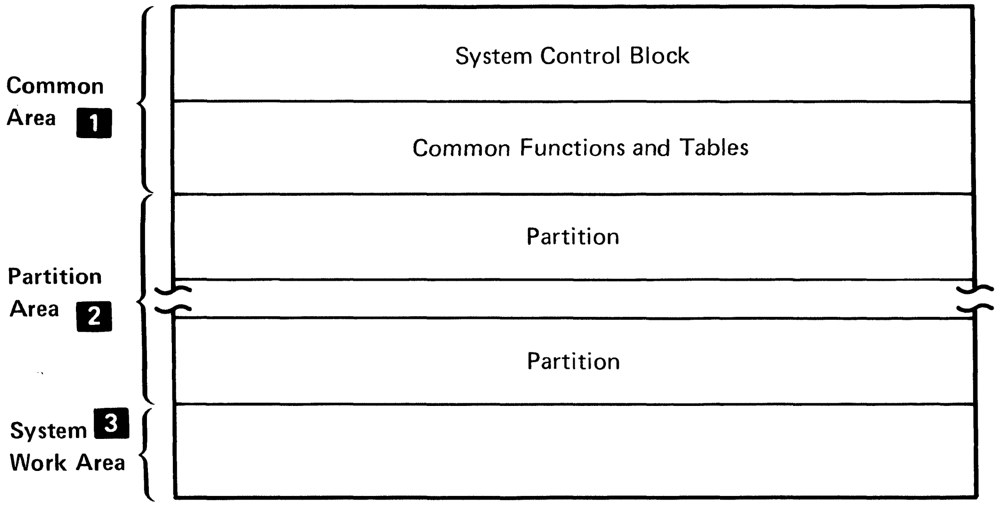
The main microprocessor **1** performs all of the non-I/O (input/output) operations, such as mathematical computations and data movement. The main microprocessor also controls the device microprocessors **2** through **5**.

The device microprocessors control all the operations for the attached devices. The main microprocessor communicates with the device microprocessors via IOBs (input/output control blocks) in main storage **6** and hardware attention lines **7**. When the main microprocessor determines that work is required of a device microprocessor, it puts information into the appropriate IOB and activates an attention line to the device microprocessor. When the device microprocessor detects the attention from the main microprocessor, it reads the IOB and performs the requested work. The storage access control **8** directs access to main storage for all the microprocessors.



MAIN STORAGE

Main storage is divided into the areas illustrated in the following figure:



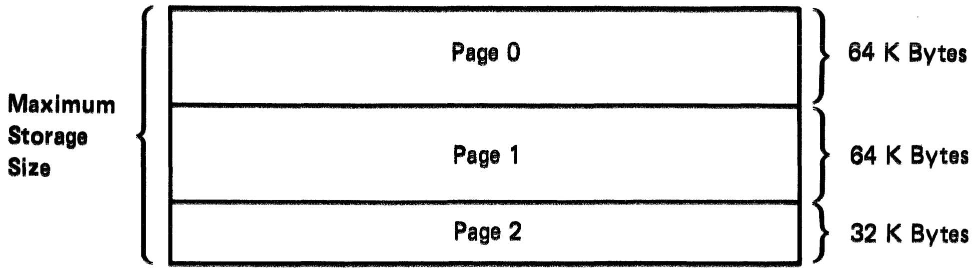
The common area 1 is always located at the beginning of main storage. It consists of the system control block and the common functions and tables.

The partition area 2 contains up to eight partitions. Except for the first and last partition, each partition can be up to 64 K bytes in length. The first partition can be up to 64 K minus 256 bytes, and the last partition can be up to 64 K minus 768 bytes in length. Total main storage size can be up to 160 K. A program can be loaded into each partition. After a program is loaded into a partition, the partition contains the IOBs, registers, indicators, formats, I/O buffers, tables, data areas, work area, and object code instructions required for the execution of the program.

The last 256 bytes of main storage are used by the controller as a system work area 3 .

Main Storage Addressing

Main storage is divided into 64 K byte sections referred to as pages. There can be a maximum of 160 K bytes of main storage.



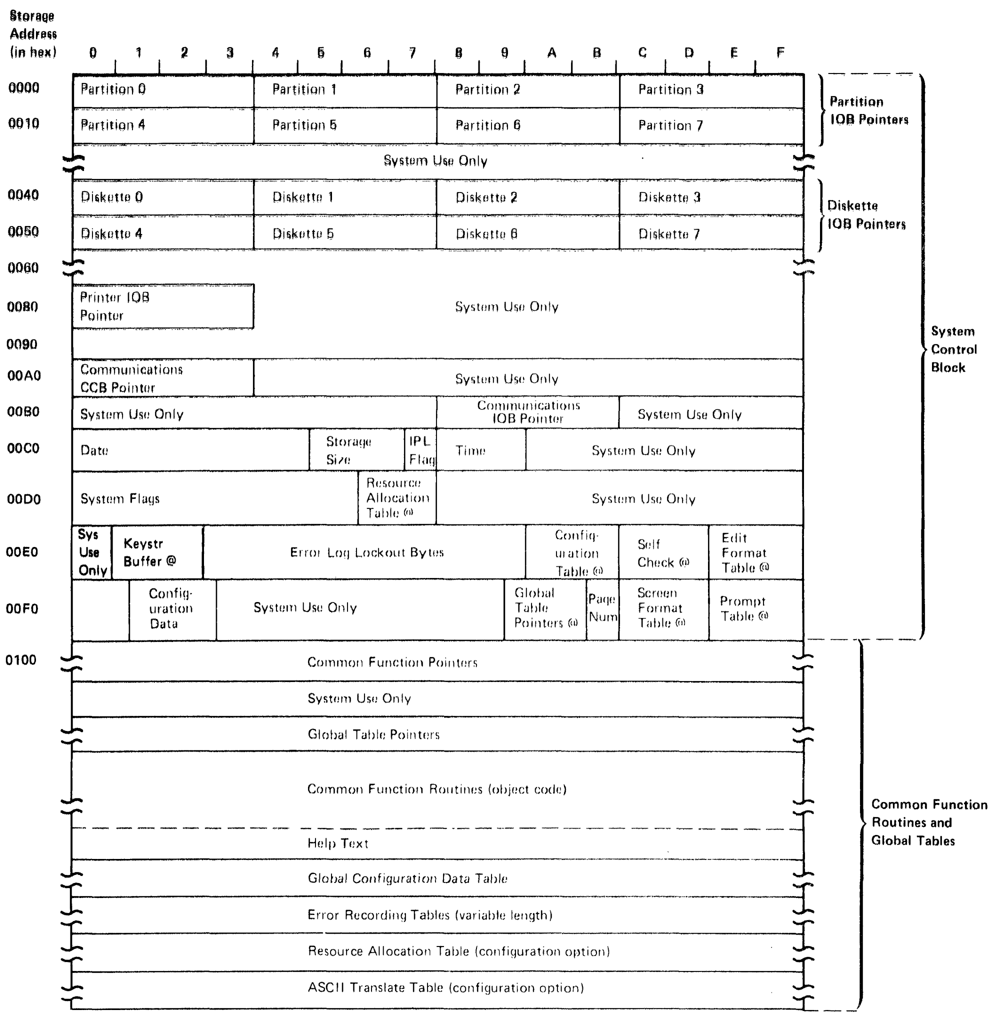
A partition cannot cross a page boundary, and therefore cannot be greater than 64 K bytes in length. Each byte within a partition can be uniquely addressed with 16 bits, from hex 0000 to FFFF.

Although the common area is always located on page 0, a partition may be on any main storage page.

When an application program addresses an area outside the partition, a 4-bit page number precedes the 16-bit storage address. This 20-bit address is used when a partition addresses an area within the common area.

COMMON AREA

The following is a general illustration of the system control block and common functions and tables located in the common area of main storage.

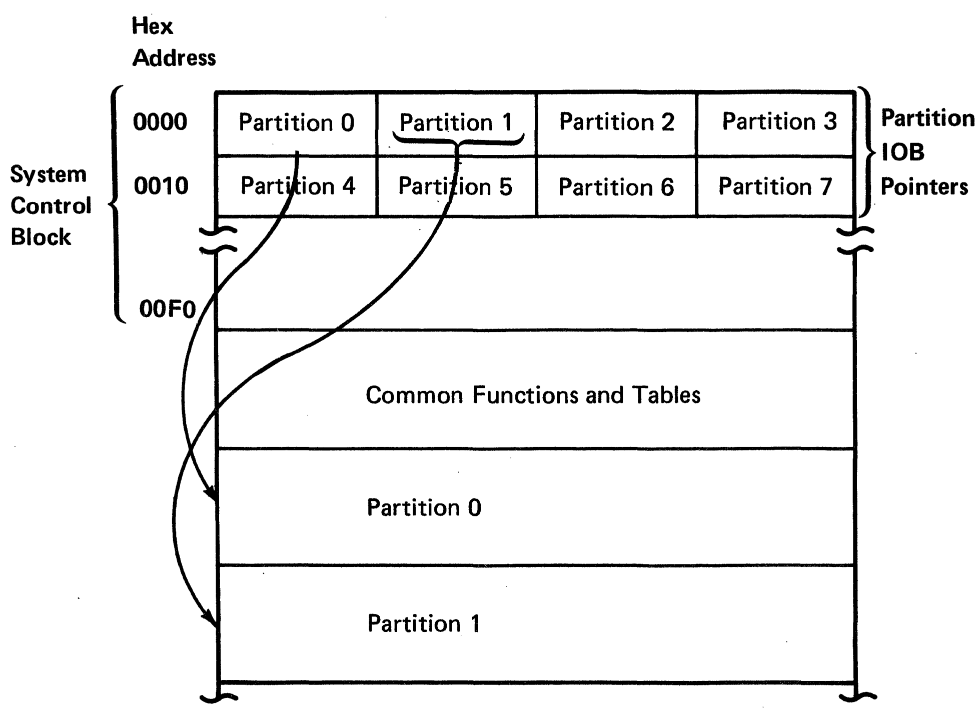


System Control Block

The system control block is located in the first 256 bytes of the common area. The fields of the system control block are assigned to fixed locations; the fields contain pointers to the partitions, device IOBs, and global system tables that are not assigned to fixed locations. Other system control block fields contain date, timer, and configuration information.

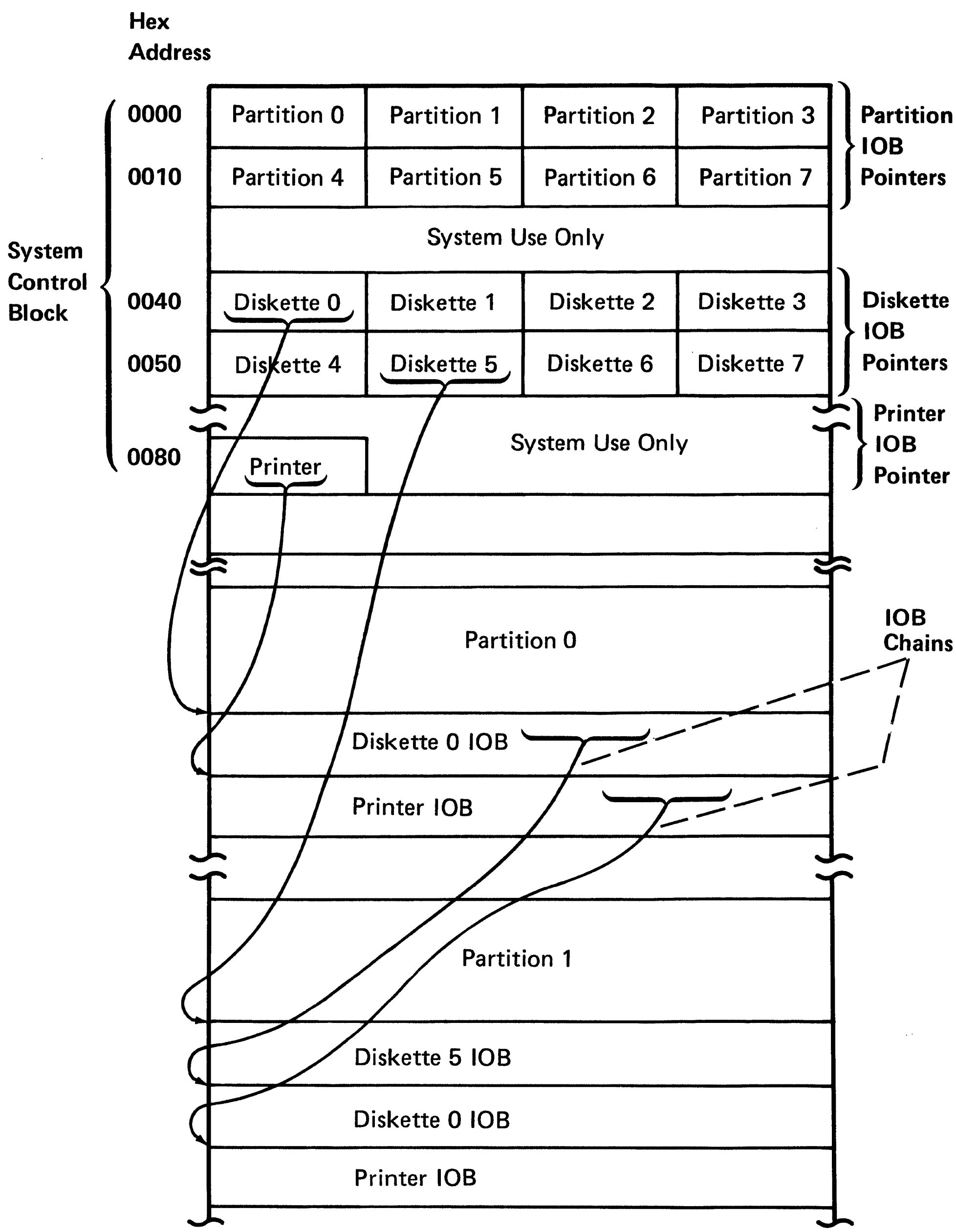
Partition Pointers

Each partition pointer is a 4-byte block of information about a partition. This information includes whether a program has been loaded into the partition, whether the partition is a foreground or background partition, and the address of the beginning of the partition. The partition IOB is always stored in the first 256 bytes of a partition, so this address is also the absolute address of the partition IOB. The partition IOB contains information about the partition and the program loaded into the partition. The main microprocessor uses the information in the partition pointer to find the partition; it uses the information in the partition IOB to execute the object code instructions stored within the partition.



Device IOB Pointers

Each device IOB pointer is a 4-byte block of information about a diskette drive, a printer, or the communications attachment. The information indicates whether the device is attached and includes the address of the first device IOB assigned to that device. If more than one IOB is assigned to one I/O device, an IOB chain is used; each device IOB contains the address of the next assigned device IOB. The device IOBs are stored within the main storage partitions and describe the I/O to be performed by each I/O device. The device microprocessor uses the information in the device IOB pointers to find the first device IOB. They use the information in the device IOB to perform the required I/O and to find the next device IOB. The last IOB on the chain points back to the first IOB.



Pointers to Global System Tables

Each global system table pointer contains the address of a global system table. System tables contain the addresses of prompts, formats, tables, and other data areas. System tables are used within each partition to contain the addresses of the data areas within that partition. The global system tables contain addresses of global data areas that are stored within the common area rather than within a partition. Data areas stored within a partition can be used only by that partition; however, global data areas can be used by any partition. Global data areas include a printer configuration table, screen formats, prompts for keyboard/display I/O, edit formats for diskette, printer, or communications I/O, data tables for table operations, and self-check data for self-check operations.

Common Functions and Help Text

Following the system control block is an area of variable length that contains common function routines. These routines can be called from any partition; return is made to the calling partition.

The routines stored in the common functions area depend upon the individual system. A table of help text messages may be included in the common area. These messages can be called from the keyboard in response to the Help key.

Configuration Table

A configuration table is included in the common area if one or more printers are attached to the system. The address of the configuration table is stored in the system control block.

The configuration table has one entry for each printer. Each entry has such information as the device subaddress and the number of entries the printer has in the soft error count table.

Error Recording Tables

Two error tables are stored in the common area as global tables 0 and 1: (1) the system hardware error log, and (2) the soft error count table. The system error log is of variable length and is used by the microprocessors to record system hardware-related errors. Each table entry has information to identify the device, IOB and program associated with the error. The soft error count table is used by the printer attachment microprocessor to record the number of soft printer errors that occur during program executions. These error tables provide a history of system hardware-related errors and I/O errors that can be written to a diskette with a special error log dump program. See the *Data Areas and Diagnostics Aids Handbook* for information about communications error tables.

Resource Allocation Table

The optional resource allocation table specifies the logical devices that can be accessed by each partition. Each table entry contains a logical device ID and the physical address of the device. The logical device ID, a 2-character ID assigned to the device during system configuration time, can be used to address the device. The main microprocessor uses the logical ID to find the physical address of the device in the resource allocation table.

ASCII Translate Table

Data is stored in main storage in EBCDIC notation. However, data in another notation can be translated to EBCDIC as it is read into an I/O buffer. Or data can be translated from EBCDIC to another notation as it is read from any I/O buffer other than the printer. The optional ASCII translate table can be used by any partition to translate data to or from ASCII notation. The ASCII table is another global table.

PARTITIONS

There may be up to 8 partitions numbered sequentially from zero. There must be at least one partition for each keyboard. A partition is of variable length, but it cannot cross a 64 K byte boundary. The number, size, and location of the partitions is defined at system configuration time. The first 256 bytes of each partition contains control information at fixed displacements from the beginning of the partition. The next 3840 bytes may be used as needed for indicators, decimal registers, or binary registers. This area is followed by a variable length storage area. The last 256 bytes of each partition is used for a work area. Each byte of a partition is addressable relative to the first byte of the partition. The following illustrates the areas of a main storage partition.

Relative Hex Address	
0000	Partition IOB
0040	Logical I/O Table
0080	Keyboard/Display IOB
0100	Indicators and Registers
1000	Storage for Object Program, Buffers, Device IOBs, and Other Data Areas
	Partition Work Area (256 bytes)

Partition IOB

The partition IOB describes the partition and the program loaded into the partition. The main microprocessor loads this information into the fields of the IOB, using information from the common area and from the application program. During program execution, the main microprocessor uses the information to determine the partition status, the program status, the address of the next executable instruction, and how long to execute instructions within the partition before going to the next partition.

The absolute address of the beginning of the partition is stored in the IOB. The main microprocessor adds this address to the relative addresses stored in the partition to generate absolute addresses for the program instructions.

A timer is set when the main microprocessor enters a partition. The IOB specifies how long the main microprocessor executes instructions within the partition. This time is determined by the application program. The main microprocessor exits the partition when the time limit is reached or when it encounters a nonoverlapped I/O instruction that is to be handled by a device microprocessor.

Logical I/O Table

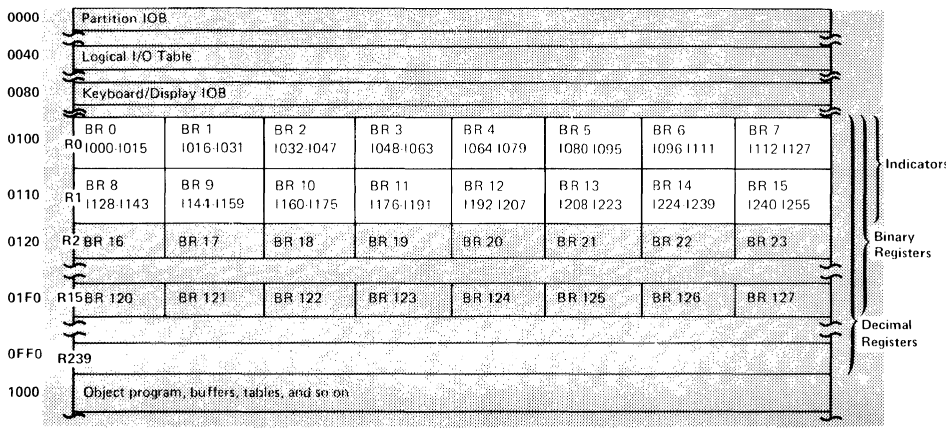
The logical I/O table consists of one 4-byte entry for each IOB that is used in the program. Each entry contains the address of the IOB, flags, and other information describing the IOB. The entries are numbered sequentially from hex 00 to 15, corresponding to the numbers assigned to the IOBs. The keyboard/display is always entry zero. When the main microprocessor encounters an I/O instruction during program execution, the instruction specifies the number assigned to the IOB that describes the work. The main microprocessor uses this number as an index into the logical I/O table; the entry at this index contains the address of the IOB and specifies the I/O device that is to perform the work.

Keyboard/Display IOB

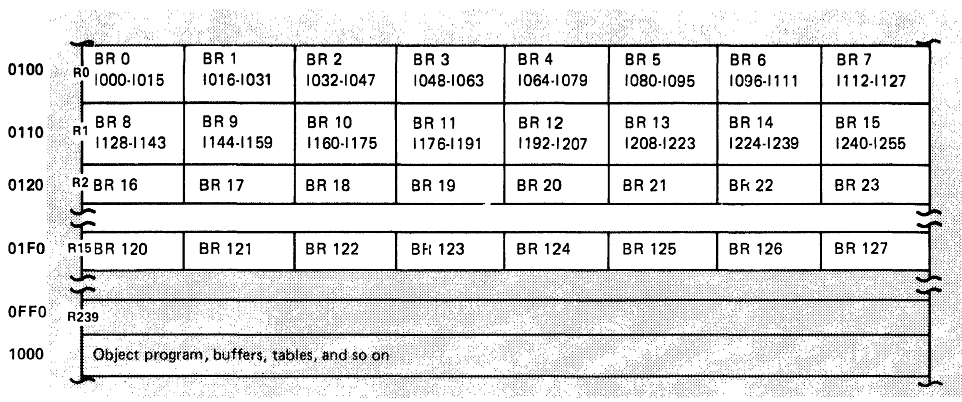
Every application program must have a properly initialized keyboard/display IOB. The keyboard/display IOB contains information to control all I/O via the keyboard/display to which the partition is assigned. This information includes the address of the I/O buffer, the address of the object code that controls the format of the records on the screen and in the I/O buffer, and the address of control tables located in keyboard/display storage. Keyboard display storage is not part of main storage; it is located within the keyboard/display attachment. The keyboard/display storage contains translate tables and other control information used by the keyboard/display microprocessor to process keystrokes and to display characters on the screen.

Registers and Indicators

Immediately following the partition control area are bytes that can be used for indicators, binary registers, and decimal registers. The first 32 bytes contain 255 indicators. The indicators are numbered sequentially from zero. The first 100 indicators are user indicators, and the remaining indicators are used by the system. The indicators are located in the bytes that also can be used for the first 16 binary registers or the first two decimal registers.



The first 256 bytes of this area, including the bytes where the indicators are located, can be used for 128 two-byte binary registers. The first 16 binary registers are used for the indicators, and the next 16 binary registers are used by the system. The remaining binary registers may be used for binary arithmetic or logical operations by the application program. The binary registers are located in the bytes that also can be used for the first 16 decimal registers.



The remaining bytes of this area, up to relative address hex 0FFF, can be used for 16-byte decimal registers. Counting the first 16 decimal registers, which can be used for the binary registers, there are 240 decimal registers. Decimal registers R16 through R239 can be used for decimal arithmetic or logical operations by the application program. Decimal registers store data in EBCDIC notation and can support sign control.

0100	R0	BR 0 1000-1015	BR 1 1016-1031	BR 2 1032-1047	BR 3 1048-1063	BR 4 1064-1079	BR 5 1080-1095	BR 6 1096-1111	BR 7 1112-1127
0110	R1	BR 8 1128-1143	BR 9 1144-1159	BR 10 1160-1175	BR 11 1176-1191	BR 12 1192-1207	BR 13 1208-1223	BR 14 1224-1239	BR 15 1240-1255
0120	R2	BR 16	BR 17	BR 18	BR 19	BR 20	BR 21	BR 22	BR 23
01F0	R15	BR 120	BR 121	BR 122	BR 123	BR 124	BR 125	BR 126	BR 127
0FF0	R239								
1000		Object program, buffers, tables, and so on							

Any of the bytes up to relative address hex 0FFF that are not used for registers are used for data storage. The bytes following hex 0FFF can be used only for data storage.

Partition Work Buffer

The last 256 bytes of a partition are used as a partition work buffer. This work buffer is used during load operations, trace operations, decimal arithmetic operations, self-check, and formatting. The application program does not access this area.

System Work Buffer

The last 256 bytes of main storage are used as a system work buffer. This system work buffer is not associated with any partition, and it is not accessed by an application program.

Foreground and Background Partitions

One main storage partition is permanently assigned to each keyboard/display. A partition that is permanently assigned to a keyboard is a foreground partition. Any partition that is not permanently assigned to a keyboard is a background partition.

When a program executing in a background partition needs to use a keyboard, it can cause an edge indicator to be displayed on the keyboard/display screen. This indicator notifies the operator that a background partition needs the keyboard. The operator can interrupt the program that is using the keyboard and attach the background partition. When the background partition no longer needs the keyboard, the partition must be detached to give control of the keyboard back to the interrupted program. Only one partition can be attached to a keyboard/display at any given time.

INPUT AND OUTPUT BUFFERS

There must be at least one physical buffer in main storage for each IOB in a program that has I/O instructions. The physical buffer length must be a multiple of 128 bytes. Double buffering can be used for minimal delays in interactive programs; a second physical buffer is set up so the 5280 can process data in one while an input or output operation is being performed with the other. Double buffers are also required to duplicate fields of a previous record into the same field of a current record. The 5280 keeps track of the buffers and the records that are in the buffers.

Data sets can be blocked for better utilization of diskette space; a logical buffer is set up and the blocking and deblocking functions are performed automatically by the 5280. Or the logical buffer can be omitted and logical records can be blocked and deblocked directly to and from the physical buffer.

IBM 3270 MODE BUFFERS

The following three buffers are used for IBM 3270 emulation.

Data Stream Buffer

This buffer is located in the user partition. It is used to store the IBM 3270 encoded data. This data is used by the IBM 3270 write assist KEYOPs and is generated by the IBM 3270 read assist KEYOPs. This buffer is normally 4K bytes in length.

Device Buffer

This buffer is located in the user partition. It is used to format the screen or printer image. It contains the form image translation of the data in the data stream buffer and also holds the data entered by the operator. The main part of the device buffer is 1920 bytes, an additional 128 byte microcode work area is required immediately following the 1920 bytes making the total size 2048 bytes.

Work Buffer

This buffer is located in the user partition. It is used as an intermediate buffer by the IBM 3270 write assist KEYOPs. The device buffer contents are first moved to the work buffer. Then, the write is done to the work buffer. If the write fails, the screen or printer image and device buffer remain unchanged. If the write is successful, the contents of the work buffer are written to the device buffer and the image is changed. This buffer is 1920 bytes in length.

EXTERNAL STATUS PROCESSING

While an I/O device is processing I/O, it may encounter a condition that the device microprocessor cannot handle, such as an error condition or a condition that requires operator intervention or execution of object code instructions. When this occurs, the device microprocessor stops processing the I/O, places a condition code into the device IOB, sets an external status flag in the device IOB, and sets an attention line to the main microprocessor. The device microprocessor continues to service the other IOBs.

When the main microprocessor determines that an IOB has the external status flag set, it enters the partition and executes appropriate object code instructions to resolve the conditions. The instructions are determined by the application program. When the application program has resolved the condition, the main microprocessor resets the external status flag and goes to the next partition. The device microprocessor returns to the IOB only when it again receives an I/O command. The I/O command may be a reissue of the last I/O command.

LOADING A PARTITION

At IPL, a program can be loaded into any main storage partition. At any time after IPL, a partition can be loaded by a program instruction or by the standard load processor in the common function area. The standard load processor prompts for load parameters to be entered from the keyboard. A program instruction can prompt for load parameters to be entered from the keyboard, or can obtain the load parameters from a storage area. The load parameters include the partition number, the device ID or physical address, and the name of the data set to load. The load operation can load a data set into another partition or can reload the same partition with the same or a different data set. After the main microprocessor obtains the load parameters, it attempts to load the data set from diskette into the partition.

Unless the diskette sector size is greater than 256 bytes, the first read will cause 256 bytes to be read into the partition. If the sector size is greater than 256 bytes, the first read will cause one sector to be read into the partition. In either case, the rest of the object data set will be read into the partition in 4 K byte blocks.

The data set is read from the diskette from the BOE (beginning of extent) to the EOD (end of data). There must be no gaps of unused diskette space between BOE and EOD. The first block that is read into the partition contains the partition IOB. The main microprocessor checks the length specified in the partition IOB and then checks the length of the partition being loaded. If the size of the partition being loaded is sufficient for the data set, the load proceeds until all data in the data set is read from the diskette. If the size of the partition being loaded is not sufficient, a load error results.

Partial Overlay

A partial overlay can spot load a section of object code or data into a partition without destroying the program object code already in the partition. A partial overlay is initiated by a program instruction. The load parameters must include the address where the partial overlay begins. When the partial overlay is completed, control returns to the instruction following the load instruction that initiated the partial overlay operation.

Error Recovery

There are two methods of error recovery that may be used when an error occurs during a load operation. One method allows the main microprocessor to handle error recovery. The other method uses error recovery procedures written by the user. The load instruction indicates which method of error recovery is used.

User Defined Error Recovery

When a program instruction loads a data set into another partition, or if the load takes place through a common function, the load instruction can indicate that user defined error recovery procedures will handle error recovery. If the load operation is successful, control returns to the *second* instruction following the load instruction. If an error occurs during the load operation, the main microprocessor places the error code into a system binary register (BR16) and returns control to the *first* instruction following the load instruction. This instruction usually branches to the error recovery procedures.

Main Microprocessor Error Recovery

There are four types of error recovery procedures, depending on the type of load taking place when the error occurred. When any type of error occurs, the main microprocessor sends an error message to the screen and waits for the operator to press the Reset key. After the reset, error recovery is as follows for the different types of loads:

Global load, prompts for the load parameters to be entered from the keyboard. After reset, the load prompt is redisplayed with the original information that was entered. The operator can then enter the correct information.

Program instruction reloading the same partition, with the standard load prompt in the common functions area available. After reset, the load instruction is replaced with the standard load prompt, which prompts for the load parameters to be loaded from the keyboard.

Program instruction reloading the same partition, with no standard load prompt available. There is no way to retry this type of load. The main microprocessor issues an exit instruction and goes to the next partition. The partition that was being loaded is available to be loaded by another partition.

Program instruction loading another partition. After reset, the load instruction is not retried. The partition that was being loaded is made available to be loaded by another load instruction or by the standard load processor. Control returns to the instruction following the load instruction.

SUBROUTINES

The 5280 supports a variable-length address stack for use during subroutine calls and returns. The assembler places the address (relative to the start of the partition) of the address stack into BR18. During program execution when a subroutine call is executed, the main microprocessor places the 2-byte absolute address of the next sequential instruction into the address stack pointed to by BR18. Then the content of BR18 is incremented by 2 so that it points to the next available 2-byte entry in the address stack. When a return is executed, the content of BR18 is decremented by 2, and the address stored in the address stack at the location pointed to by BR18 is taken as the return address. The last two bits of the address on the stack are used to indicate what 64K page of memory the address resides on.

Bits 14 and 15	Page of Return Address
00	return to same page as currently executing on.
01	return to page where common function area one resides.
10	return to page where original partition resides.
11	return to page where common function area two resides.

ADDRESS VALIDITY CHECKING

Addresses in assembler language instructions and control blocks are specified in the following two ways: (1) directly by a 2-byte address in the object code that was generated by a reference to a label in the source code, and (2) indirectly by an address in a binary register (this address is usually calculated), to which a displacement may be added to provide an offset into the base address. No validity checking is made for direct addresses; because the 2-byte address in the object code is generated by a reference to a label in the source code, the referenced label must be valid and within the partition for the code to assemble correctly. For indirect addresses (except addresses that access areas within the common area), the 5280 checks the address to which access is being made to verify that the address is within the partition. If a displacement is included in the instruction, it is added to the base address and the resulting address is checked to verify that it is within the partition. No validity checking is made on addresses that access areas within the common area (20-bit addresses). No additional checking is made to an address within an instruction that is modified by the INXEQ instruction; if the INXEQ instruction modifies an address within an instruction and the resulting address points to an area of storage outside the partition, unpredictable results will occur. The user should beware if addresses of type 1 above are changed at execution time or assembled incorrectly, since no validity checking will be performed.

SELF CHECK

The self check feature gives the user the capability to define a method for either creating a self check digit from a given alpha numeric field and then stornig the digit in the field, or to create a self-check digit to be compared with a pre-computed self check digit already stored in an alpha-nemuric field.

The parameters for a self check algorithm are specified by the user in a self check control statement which is then used by the assembler to create a self check control block. The self check control block is used by the main microprocessor when executing a generate self check or an if self check instruction.

For a non-global self check the self check control block will be located in the same partition as the program that contains the self check control statement. Bytes X'26' and X'27' in the partition IOB will contain the relative address of the self check control block. Also bytes X'20' - X'25' in the self check control block will contain addresses relative to the start of the partition if translation tables are specified.

For a global self check bytes X'26' and X'27' in the partition IOB will equal zero. The self check control block will be pointed to by bytes X'EC' and XED' in the system control area on page zero. They will contain the absolute address on page zero of the self check control block. Bytes X'20' - X'25' in the self check control block will also contain absolute addresses on page 0 if translation tables are specified.

When an *if self check* or *generate self check* instruction is executed, the self check control block is relocated in the last 128 bytes of the partition executing the instruction. Here the self check control block is expanded to include some work area's used to contain intermediate results. What follows is a diagram and a byte for byte description of the expanded self check control block.

EXPANDED SELF CHECK CONTROL BLOCK RELATIVE ADDRESSES

Self Check Control Block

Address				
00	Weight Table →			
04				
08				
0C				
10				
14				
18				
1C				← Weight Table
20	Input Translate Table @		Product of Sums Table @	
24	Output Translate Table @		Self Check Modulus (2-127)	Self Check Control Byte One
28	Self Check Control Byte Two	Self Check Displacement	#of Bytes −1 to be checked	Self Check Weight Table Register
30	Reserved →			
34				
38				
3C				← Reserved
40	Self Check Work Register →			
44				
48				
4C				
50				
54				
58				
5C				← Self Check Work Register

Byte Number (Decimal)		**Description**
Byte 0		Least significant digit self check weight table (weighting factors)

All 32 bytes of the weighting factors must be in hex and must be less than the modulus. A weight of hex 00 must be entered in the positions of the self check digits and any other positions to be bypassed. A weight of hex 01 should be entered in all positions, except those to be bypassed, when the product table is used.

Byte	X'1F'	Most significant digit of self check weight tables (32 bytes)
Byte	X'20'	Self check input translation table address (2 bytes)
Byte	X'22'	Self check product of sums table addr (2 bytes)

Byte X'27', bits 1-3 must equal B'000' or B'010' if product of sums table provided.

EQU	X'24'	Self check output translate table address (2 bytes)
Byte	X'26'	Self check modulus (2-127)

Byte X'27' Self check control byte one

Bit 0 - Decimalize self check number

Bit 0 = 1	The rightmost check digit (NR) is used to produce a two-digit decimal number. The units digit is converted to the DR (displayable rightmost self check digit), and the tens digit is converted to DL (displayable leftmost self check digit).
Bit 0 = 0	An F-zone is OR'ed to the leftmost check digit (NL) and NR to produce DL and DR.

Bits 1-3 = Summing of Products

Entry	Explanation
Bit 1-3 = B'000' and Byte X'22'-X'23' = 0	Multiply weights times digits and sum all the digits of the products.

Entry	Explanation
Bit 1 = 1	Multiply weights times digits and sum whole numbers.

Entry	Explanation
Bit 2 = 1	Translate digits to products and sum all the digits. Product table repeats every fourth digit. (See product table.)

Entry	Explanation
Bit 3 = 1	Multiply weights times digits and sum the units digits of the products.

Bit 4-5 = Sum Manipulation

This parameter is used to manipulate the NL and NR. If bit 4 = 1, (byte X'27') or if bit 4-5 = B'00', (byte X'27'), NL is forced to 0.

If bit 4-5 = B'11', (byte X'27'), bit 6 cannot equal 1 in (byte X'27') for a modulus less than 8.

Entry	Explanation
Bit 4-5 = B'00'	Divide the sum of NL and NR by the modulus.

Bit 4

Entry	Explanation
Bit 4 = 1	Divide the sum of the digits of the sum of NL and NR by the modulus.

Bit 5

Entry	Explanation
Bit 5 = 1	Special cross add of the digits of the sum NL and NR. (The hundreds digit plus units digit equals the NR. The tens digit plus the carry from NR equals the NL).

Bit 4 & 5

Entry	Explanation
Bit 4 - 5 = B'11'	Special modulus 8 and 3. The units position of the self check number is stored modulus 8 and the tens position is stored modulus 3. (Byte X'27'), Bit 1 cannot equal 1.

Entry	Explanation
Bit 6 = 1	NL and NR complemented to modulus.
Bit 6 = 0	NL and NR unchanged.

Entry	Explanation
Bit 7 = 0	One digit generated or checked. With an output translate table, and byte X'27', bit 5 = 1, the NL and NR are summed before translation.
Bit 7 = 1	Two digits generated or checked. If byte X'27', bits 4-5 = B'11', the NL is multiplied by 8 and added to the NR. That sum is then translated. **Note:** This option should only be used if an output translate table is available.

Byte X'28' Self check control byte two

Bit 0 = 0 Reserved

Entry	Explanation
Bit 1 = 1	Each byte in the input translate table is interpreted as two hex digits. The low-order hex digit (four bits) becomes the input translate character. The high-order hex digit (four bits) becomes the shift left count. The position being translated, and all higher positions in the register, are shifted left (with zero fill) the number of positions in the shift count, when the shifted register contains 16 bytes. (All unused high-order bytes of the original register are bypassed.)
Bit 1 = 0	All eight bits of any input translate byte are used for the input translate number.
Bit 2 = 1	Standard modulus eleven.
Bit 3 = 1	Global self check (set by micro-code).
Bit 4 = 1	Double decimal reg used (set by micro-code).

Bit 5-7 = B'0000' Reserved

Byte X'29' Self check displacement

This byte specifies the displacement (0-32) of the rightmost self check digit within the register.

Note: Specification of standard modulus 10 or 11 requires that the rightmost position of the register specified in the GSCK instruction be blank.

Byte X'2A' Number of bytes (—1) to be checked

Byte X'2B' Self check alternate weight

Table register

This entry specifies a register or register pair that contains the weighting factors for the self-checking algorithm. If a register is specified, byte 0-31 decimal in the Self-Check Control Block are ignored.

If no alternate weight table is used this value will be set to 0 by the assembler. Otherwise this byte will contain the decimal register number of the leftmost decimal register.

Note: All information in the decimal registers will be right justified.

OPENING A DATA SET IOB

The main microprocessor uses the OPEN instruction to prepare for I/O processing. When the main microprocessor executes an OPEN, it places the IOB on the IOB chain, initializes (or updates) information in the IOB, and verifies data set sharing capabilities.

To process an OPEN, the main microprocessor:

1. Obtains the IOB pointer address from the logical I/O table entry for this data set.

2. If the IOB pointer address specified in the logical I/O table is not between hex 40 and BC inclusive, or is not on a 4-byte boundary, the main microprocessor uses the device ID (bytes hex 60 and 61 of the IOB) as a search argument and searches the resource allocation table. If a match is made on the partition number and device ID, the main microprocessor takes the physical address given in the resource allocation table and uses it to open the data set IOB. If the system does not have a resource allocation table, an external status (0736) occurs. If no match is made on the device ID, an external status (0725) occurs. If the physical address that is found in the resource allocation table is invalid, an external status (0726) occurs. There are two IOB pointers in this range (address hex A0 and A4) that are used exclusively by the communications access method to access the communications microprocessor; these IOB pointers are not to be used by the application program. No checking is made to ensure that the application program does not use these IOB pointers, and unpredictable results may occur if they are used.

3. Determines the proper attention line to use, based on the IOB pointer address, and checks to determine if the device to open is installed. The main microprocessor does this by checking the third byte of the IOB pointer for a nonzero value. After checkout, each device microprocessor places hex FF in this byte to signal that the device is installed. During an open, the main microprocessor detects this nonzero value and continues doing the open. When the main microprocessor places the address of an IOB in the IOB chain, it leaves bit 1 of the third byte on so that there will always be a nonzero value there for later opens. If the device is not installed, this byte is left at hex 00 after checkout; the main microprocessor interprets this zero value to indicate that the device is not installed and will force an external status (0731) on any attempt to open the device.

4. Checks to determine if the data set IOB is already open. If it is already open, skip to step 8.

5. Checks to determine if there are any other IOBs on the chain. If the new IOB is label update, and if there are other IOBs on the chain, an external status (0733) occurs. If there are no other IOBs on chain, the address of the label update IOB is placed on the chain and bit 3 of byte 0 of the IOB pointer for this IOB is set; this marks the IOB chain as nonshare. If the new IOB is not label update, and if bit 3 of byte 0 of the IOB pointer is set, external status (0733) occurs. If there are no other IOBs on the chain, the main microprocessor places the address of the IOB on the chain and goes to step 8.

6. If there are other IOBs on the chain, the main microprocessor checks the share specifications.

7. If the share/access specifications are valid, the main microprocessor places the IOB on the chain. If they are not valid, external status (0727) occurs.

8. Saves the commands and operands in the IOB, turns on bits 0 and 1 in byte 0 of the IOB, and raises the attention line to the appropriate device microprocessor.

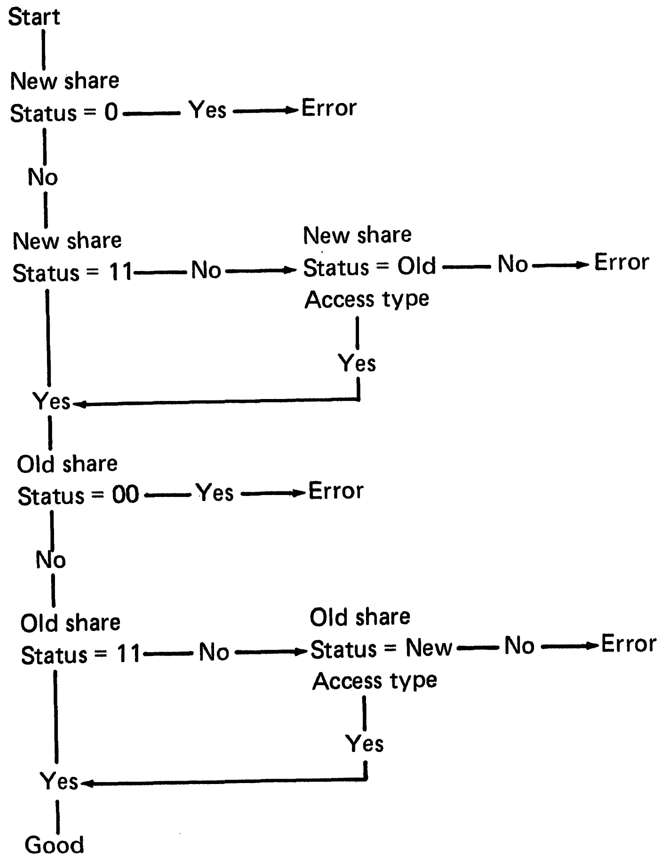
Formatting is not supported during an open (or allocate). If the HDR1 label should be formatted, a formatted read from the physical buffer should be executed after the open.

Share Data Set Opens

When a request is made to open, data set sharing is verified. A test is made to determine if the device subaddress of the new IOB matches that of the first IOB in the chain. If they do not match, the test is made on the next IOB in the chain. If there is a match, a test is made to determine if the IOB pointer address for the new data set is between hex 40 and 7C, inclusive. If it is not within this range, a match has been found and the share/access checking continues. If the IOB pointer address is within this range, an additional check based on data set names is made. If the data set name of the new IOB matches the data set name of the old IOB, the share/access checking continues. If the new data set name does not match the data set name of the old IOB, a mismatch has occurred and the next IOB in the chain is checked. For each match found, options based on read/write, share/don't share must compare. Four bits are assigned to contain the following access and share information:

Bit	Meaning
0	Read
1	Write
2	Read share allowed
3	Write share allowed

The following diagram shows how the main microprocessor compares the access type to the share options:



If the compare of options does not match according to the following diagram, an external status (0727) occurs. The error code is saved in the IOB, the appropriate external status code and external status bit are set, and a branch is taken to the external status subroutine.

R=Read
W=Write
S=Share

New \ Old	R/RS	R/R&WS	R/WS	R/NS	W/RS	W/R&WS	W/WS	W/NS	R&W/RS	R&W/R&WS	R&W/WS	R&W/NS
R/RS	OK	OK										
R/R&WS	OK	OK			OK	OK			OK	OK		
R/WS					OK	OK						
R/NS												
W/RS		OK	OK									
W/R&WS		OK	OK			OK	OK			OK	OK	
W/WS						OK	OK					
W/NS												
R&W/RS		OK										
R&W/R&WS		OK				OK				OK		
R&W/WS						OK						
R&W/NS												

KEYBOARD/DISPLAY I/O CONTROL

The keyboard/display attachment consists of a keyboard adapter, a display adapter, keyboard/display storage, and the keyboard/display microprocessor. Optional magnetic stripe readers and an optional elapsed time counter may also be included.

The keyboard/display microprocessor handles all data entry via the keyboard. It can handle up to four keyboards. For each keyboard it processes keyboard functions and data entry, and detects keystroke errors. It processes keystrokes and handles the character display according to the keyboard/display storage information. It uses a screen format control string, which is generated from the application program, to control the format of the input record as it is displayed on the screen and entered into the I/O buffer.

Keyboard/Display Storage

Each display has an assigned keyboard/display storage area. Within this area is a refresh buffer for the screen, and translate tables and other control information used by the keyboard/display microprocessor to interpret keystrokes and to display characters. The translate tables include the: (1) scan code translate table, which translates each keystroke scan code to a corresponding EBCDIC value that can be placed into the main storage I/O buffer; (2) display translate table, which translates each EBCDIC value to a display code before it is displayed on the screen; (3) validity table, which defines such things as the EBCDIC codes that are valid for each character set; and (4) diacritic table, which defines diacritic character combinations. Other control information in the keyboard/display storage area defines configuration of the lines on the screen and the symbols displayed on the status line for particular field definitions. The keyboard/display IOB specifies the address in keyboard/display storage of the storage area assigned to the keyboard.

Screen Format Control String

A source statement in the application program generates a string of object code, referred to as a screen format control string, that describes the format of each input record. This screen format control string specifies the length and valid characters for each input field, and describes prompts, display attributes, duplication fields and constant insert fields. It indicates the position on the screen where each field and prompt is to be displayed, and the position in the I/O buffer where each field is to be placed. The application program specifies the screen format control string and the I/O buffer to use, and the addresses of the string and buffer are stored in the keyboard/display IOB.

As the keyboard/display microprocessor processes each field of the screen format control string, it places the input data into the I/O buffer and displays it on the screen. However, the keyboard/display microprocessor cannot move the data from the I/O buffer to other main storage locations, or to another I/O device. When a screen format control string is completed, the keyboard/display microprocessor places a record advance condition code into the IOB and reports external status to the main microprocessor. The main microprocessor must process the contents of the I/O buffer according to the application program instructions.

Functions and Modes

When a function key is pressed, the keyboard scan code is translated by the keyboard/display storage translate tables to an EBCDIC code. This EBCDIC code initiates the appropriate function. The function may be processed by the keyboard/display microprocessor, by the application program, or by both.

The data entry mode may affect the way the function is processed. The keyboard/display microprocessor supports several modes of entry. (See the keyboard flags at hex displacement 3E in the keyboard/display IOB for a list of the modes.) The modes are selected by the application program, which must set the assigned mode flags in the keyboard/display IOB. The keyboard/display microprocessor controls the keyboard/display I/O and functions in the mode specified by the mode flags.

Magnetic Stripe Reader

The optional magnetic stripe reader reads a character string that is stored on a badge. When the badge is inserted into the reader, the character string is read into a buffer within the reader. The keyboard/display microprocessor reports an external status condition to the main microprocessor. The main microprocessor then executes the application program subroutine that reads the character string into main storage and processes it.

Elapsed Time Counter

The optional elapsed time counter records elapsed real time. The keyboard/display microprocessor maintains a timer that increments a 2-byte field in the system control block every 1.6 seconds. A program instruction can read this 2-byte field and the 1-byte timer value into a main storage area to measure the time elapsed during a job or during a portion of a job.

Errors Detected by the Keyboard/Display Microprocessor

The keyboard/display microprocessor detects keystroke errors and keyboard/display hardware errors. Most keystroke errors are handled by the keyboard/display microprocessor, which displays an error code on the screen and waits for the operator to press the Reset key. All hardware errors are entered into the error recording table in the common area. In addition, certain conditions cause the application program to be notified via external status.

Edge Indicators, IBM 3270 Mode

During IBM 3270 mode, indicators comparable to the IBM 3270 indicators appear at the far right side of the screen. These indicators are:

Insert Mode Indicator

This indicator is located on row 12 of the 24 row screen. The microcode turns the indicator on when the insert mode key is pressed. The application program can also control this indicator using KEYOP X'87'.

System Available Indicator

This indicator is located on row 10 of the 24 row screen. It is only controlled by the application program using KEYOP X'87'.

Input Inhibited Indicator

This indicator is located on row 14 of the 24 row screen. It corresponds to the input inhibited state of the keyboard, when only the reset key is valid. The indicator is manipulated by the microcode as follows:

- The microcode turns the indicator on whenever it posts external status to the software for a command key sequence or a software-supported function key.

- The microcode turns the indicator off when a keyboard restore is indicated on a write assist to the screen operation and when an erase all unprotected assist operation directed to the display is executed.

- The microcode turns the indicator on when the following errors occur:

  - When an alphameric or when dup, field mark, erase EOF, or delete is pressed while the cursor is positioned beneath an attribute character or within a protected data field.

  - When a key not in the numeric key set is pressed while the cursor is within a numeric field and the numeric lock feature is specified.

  - When an alphameric key is pressed in insert mode while there are no null characters at or to the right of the cursor within the field.

  - When an invalid scan code is detected.

  - When an error keystroke is hit.

The application program can also control this indicator using KEYOP X'87'.

Keyboard States in IBM 3270 Mode

The state of the keyboard determines how keys are handled by the KB/CRT microcode. The states and descriptions are:

- KB open

  All keys are valid. This state is equivalent to not hard lock and not input inhibited.

- Hard lock

  In this state, all keys are ignored except the shift keys. The KB/CRT microcode sets the hard lock on whenever it posts external status to the application program for a function key or a command key sequence. The application program may also control this state by using KEYOP X'87'.

- Input inhibited

  In this state, only the shift keys and the reset key are active. It corresponds to the status of the input inhibited indicator. The application program may also control this state by using KEYOP X'87'.

DISKETTE I/O CONTROL

The diskette attachment consists of a diskette adapter and the diskette microprocessor. Each diskette microprocessor can handle up to 4 diskette drives.

The diskette microprocessor handles all data I/O functions for the diskette drives. These functions include reading and writing data set records, blocking and deblocking records, searching data set records, and managing shared data sets. The diskette microprocessor also handles allocating data sets, opening data sets, and closing data sets. It can also change data set labels on a diskette and insert or delete records.

Although all data is stored within main storage in EBCDIC notation, the diskette microprocessor can read data set records in another notation and translate them to EBCDIC, or it can translate EBCDIC records to another notation and then write the translated records to a diskette. The translation requires translate tables, which may be within a main storage partition or within the common area.

Error Recovery and External Status

Initial attempts to recover from errors are tried by the diskette microprocessor. When an error occurs during an I/O operation, the operation may be retried a certain number of times; the number depends on the operation and the type of error. If the error is not resolved by the diskette microprocessor, the diskette microprocessor places a 4-digit condition code in the diskette IOB and reports external status. When the main microprocessor determines that an external status condition is pending in the diskette IOB, it uses the condition code to find the appropriate subroutine in the application program to resolve the condition.

PRINTER CONTROL

The printer attachment consists of a printer adapter and a printer attachment microprocessor. The printer attachment microprocessor can handle up to eight printers of the types IBM 5222, IBM 5224, IBM 5225, and IBM 5256, with restrictions as indicated in the IBM 5280 Distributed Data System General Information Manual, GA21-9350.

Note: Printer speed may be affected by customer programs, application load, forms design, and/or the number of printers attached to the system.

The format of the printed output may be modified by SCS (standard character string) control characters. The SCS control characters may be placed in the printer output data stream by the application program unless the program is using an SCS conversion data set or unless no modification is desired. Each data set is described with a control statement in the source program. If the data set description specifies the data set type as an SCS conversion data set, the main microprocessor places the SCS control characters in the printer output data stream.

The printer attachment microprocessor handles blocking and deblocking of output records. It also handles data sets that specify share attributes. For the printer, share attributes indicate that more than one data set can use the same printer.

Error Recovery and External Status

Initial attempts to recover from certain errors are tried by the printer attachment microprocessor or by the printer. If the error or external status condition is not resolved by the printer or printer attachment microprocessor, the printer attachment microprocessor places a 4-digit condition code in the printer IOB and reports external status. When the main microprocessor determines that an external status condition is pending in the printer IOB, it uses the condition code to find the appropriate subroutine in the application program to resolve the condition.

The printer attachment microprocessor records errors in the error tables, which are located in the common area.

COMMUNICATIONS CONTROL

The communications attachment consists of a communications adapter, a communications data trap, and the communications microprocessor. The communications microprocessor supports one communications line. The adapter can provide data link support for BSC or SDLC protocol. The data trap is used by the communications microprocessor to store diagnostic information. See the *Data Areas and Diagnostic Aids Handbook* and the *Communications Reference Manual* for information about communications.

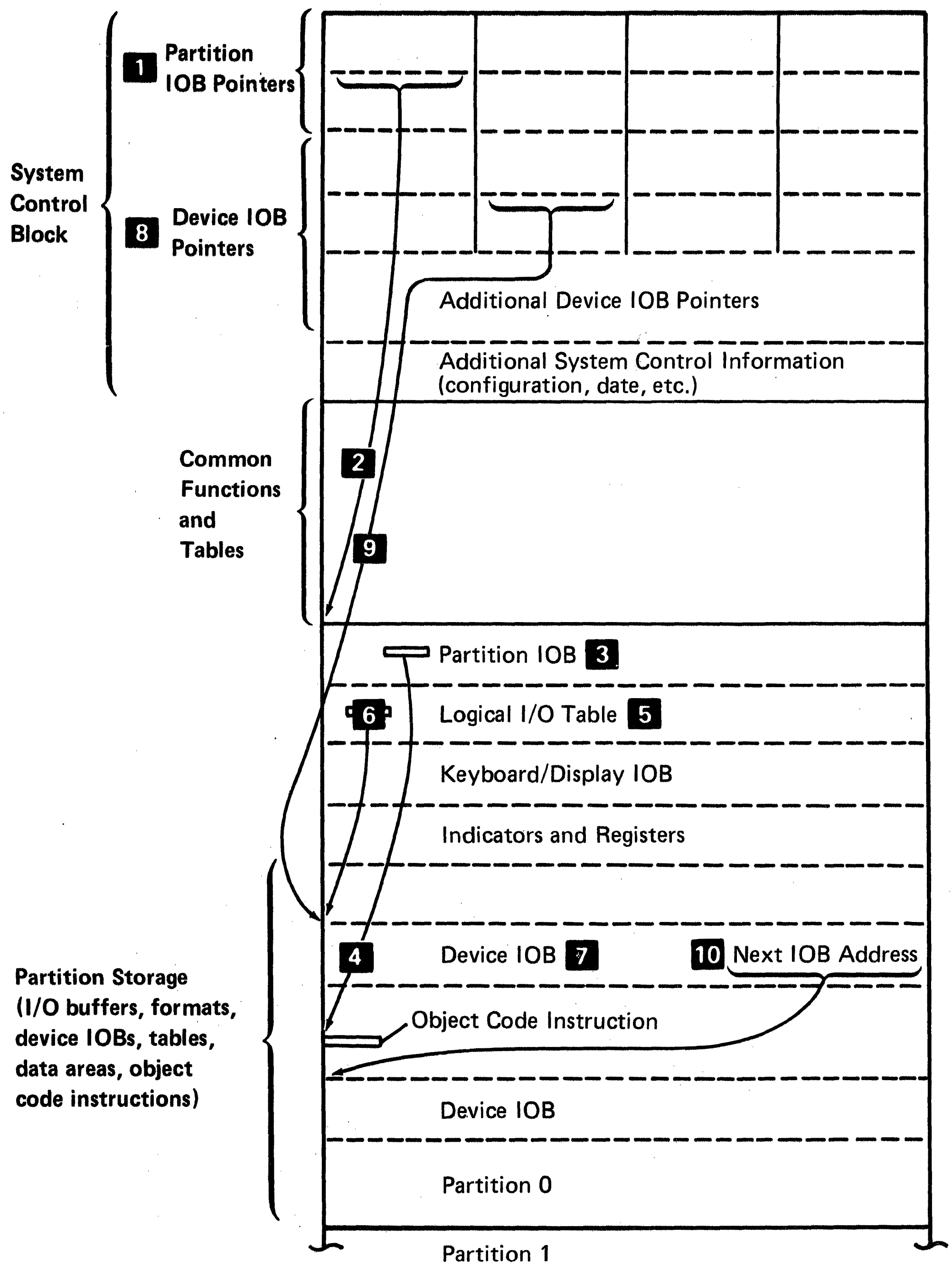
The communications microprocessor handles communications I/O, including sending status information and data to the host, receiving data and status information from the host, and blocking and deblocking records. The communications microprocessor uses a communications access method, which may be an IBM program product or a program written by the user, to control communications operations. The communications microprocessor interfaces with the communications access method through the communications control block. The communications access method, in turn, interfaces with the application program through the communications IOB. The communications IOB is described by a control statement in the source application program. The communications access method and communications control block must be loaded into a main storage partition. The application program and communications IOB are loaded into another main storage partition.

Error Recovery and External Status

The communications microprocessor attempts to recover from certain I/O errors and records errors in an error recording table located within the communications access method partition. If the error or condition is not resolved by the communications microprocessor, the communications access method places a 4-digit condition code in the communications IOB and reports external status.

TYPICAL OPERATION

This illustration is used with the typical operation description on the following pages.



The main microprocessor checks the partition IOB pointer 1 until it finds a pointer that indicates that a program is loaded in the partition. If there are no active attention lines pending, the main microprocessor goes to the address indicated in the partition IOB pointer 2. The first 256 bytes of the partition contains the partition IOB 3.

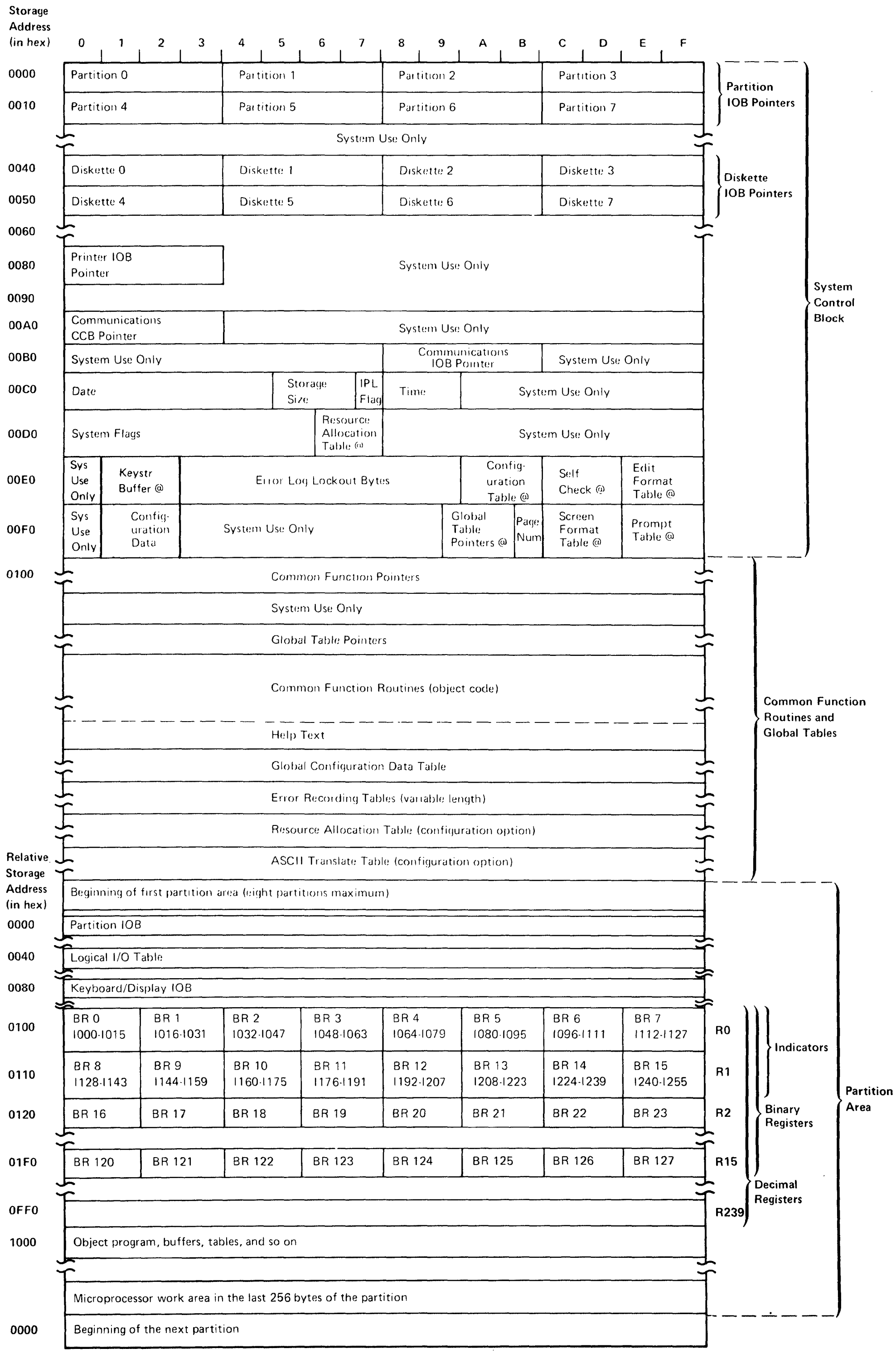
The partition IOB contains such information as the partition size and the address of the object code instruction to execute next. When the main microprocessor enters the partition, it sets a timer. This timer controls how long the main microprocessor is to remain within the partition. The main microprocessor then goes to the object code instruction address in the partition storage area 4. It executes instructions in the storage area until the time limit is up or until it encounters a nonoverlapped I/O instruction. If the timer times out, the main microprocessor completes the execution of the instruction it is currently working on, returns to the partition IOB and stores the address of the next instruction to execute when it returns to this partition, and goes back to the system control block. If no active attention lines are pending, it continues checking the partition IOB pointers; when it finds a partition IOB pointer that indicates that a program is loaded in the partition, it goes to that partition and performs the same steps as described above.

If the main microprocessor encounters an I/O instruction before the timer times out, it uses the data set number specified in the instruction as an index into the logical I/O table 5. It goes to the appropriate entry in the logical I/O table to find the address 6 of the device IOB that describes the I/O operation. The main microprocessor then goes to the device IOB 7, loads the instruction into the IOB, and activates the device attention line to the appropriate I/O device. If the I/O instruction specified overlapped I/O, the main microprocessor continues executing instructions within the partition while the I/O device is performing the I/O. If the instruction specified nonoverlapped I/O, the main microprocessor exits the partition, and the instruction following the I/O instruction is not executed until the I/O instruction is completed by the device.

When a device microprocessor senses an active device attention line, it checks the device IOB pointers 8 in the system control block until it finds a pointer that contains an IOB address. It then goes to the address 9 and performs the work described in the IOB. The IOB contains the instruction op code and parameters, the address of the I/O buffer or buffers, and other information such as format addresses and data set type. When the device microprocessor encounters a condition that it cannot handle, it clears the first two bits of the status byte and sets the external status bit in the status byte of the device IOB, and activates an attention line to the main microprocessor. If the device microprocessor finishes the I/O work in a normal way, it clears the first 2 bits of the status byte in the device IOB. The device microprocessor then checks the device IOB to determine the address of the next IOB on the IOB chain for this device 10. It processes the IOBs on the chain until it encounters an IOB that is marked as the first on the chain. Except for the printer attachment microprocessor, which has only one IOB pointer, the device microprocessor then returns to the system control block and checks the next device IOB pointer. If it finds another device IOB pointer that contains an IOB address, it goes to the IOB and uses the I/O device associated with the IOB pointer to process the IOB chain as described above.

This page intentionally left blank

This section describes the 5280 main storage data areas. The following figure shows the main storage organization for the 5280.



SYSTEM CONTROL BLOCK

The system control block occupies the first 256 bytes of main storage and contains partition pointers, device IOB pointers, and pointers to system tables.

Hex Displacement	Length in Bytes (in Hex)	Description
0000	20	Partition Pointers: (one 4-byte block for each possible partition). Each 4-byte block has the following meaning:

Byte 0

Bit(s)	*Meaning*
0	1 = A program is being loaded into the partition.
1	1 = The partition is being attached to the keyboard.
2	System use only.
3	1 = A keyboard attention occurred during a nonoverlapped, nonkeyboard-I/O operation.
4-7	System use only.

Byte 1

Bit(s)	*Meaning*
0	0 = Background partition. 1 = Foreground partition.
1	1 = There is no program in this partition; therefore, a program can be loaded.
2	1 = An attention from the main microprocessor to the keyboard/display microprocessor is pending.
3	1 = An attention from the keyboard/display microprocessor to the main microprocessor is pending.
4-7	0000 = No main microprocessor accessing the partition. 0001 = First main microprocessor accessing the partition. 0010 = Second main microprocessor accessing the partition.

Byte 2 — High-order address of the beginning of the partition. Hex FF indicates this partition is not defined.

Byte 3 — Page number in storage where this partition is located.

Hex Displacement	Length in Bytes (in Hex)	Description
0020	20	System use only.
0040	20	Diskette IOB Pointers (eight 4-byte blocks). Each 4-byte block has the following meaning:

Byte 0 — Flag Byte

Bit(s)		*Meaning*
0	1 =	The diskette microprocessor has locked the IOB pointer; the main microprocessor cannot use the IOB pointer while this bit is on.
1-2		System use only.
3	1 =	A label update data set is open. The main microprocessor cannot put another IOB on this chain.
4-7		0000 = No main microprocessor using the IOB chain. 0001 = First main microprocessor using the IOB chain. 0010 = Second main microprocessor using the IOB chain.

Byte 1 — The high-order address of the first IOB on the chain.

Byte 2

Bit(s)		*Meaning*
0		The low-order bit of the IOB address.
1	1 =	The diskette drive is installed for this IOB pointer.
2-3		System use only.
4-7		The page number in storage where the IOB is located.

Byte 3 — Diskette microprocessor save area.

Hex Displacement	Length in Bytes (in Hex)	Description
0060	20	System use only.
0080	4	Printer IOB pointer (same meaning as a diskette IOB pointer, displacement 0040).
0084	1C	System use only.

Hex Displacement	Length in Bytes (in Hex)	Description
00A0	4	Communications CCB pointer (one 4-byte block). The 4-byte block has the following meaning:

Byte 0

Bit(s)	*Meaning When 1*
0	The CCB pointer is valid for use by the communications feature.
1	The CCB pointer is available for CAM use.
2	The CAM load parameter list is located at the address specified in bytes 1 and 2.
3	The CAM is loaded and ready to accept commands from the application program.
4-7	The partition number of the partition that initiated the loading of CAM.

Byte 1 When bits 0 or 1 of byte 0 = 1, this byte contains the high-order byte of the CCB address (relative to the beginning of the page). When bit 2 of byte 0 = 1, this byte contains the page number of the load parameter list.

Byte 2

Bit(s)	*Meaning*
0-3	System use only.
4-7	When bit 1 of byte 0 = 1, this byte contains the page number of the CCB storage location. When bit 2 of byte 0 = 1, this byte contains the high-order byte of the address of the load parameter list.

Hex Displacement	Length in Bytes (in Hex)	Description
		Byte 3

Bit(s)	*Meaning*
0-3	Main microprocessor lock bits, indicate some user is currently setting up PARM list to load CAM. Bit 0 is for the main microprocessor. Bit 1 is for the second application microprocessor.
4-7	Used by microcode to signal attachment to the system after the first attention is issued by the main microprocessor. The microcode will write a hex 'F' in this position if the microcode diagnostics ran successfully and the communications adapter is attached. SYSIPL initializes bits 4-7 to hex '1' if the BSC Multipoint Monitor is not installed via SYSCON and SYSCMPU when building the IPL diskette. If the BSC Multipoint Monitor was defined for this IPL, bits 4-7 are initialized to hex 'D' by SYSIPL and will be used as follows: Bit 4 indicates BSC Multipoint Monitor is installed for this IPL. Bit 5 indicates BSC Multipoint Monitor is active, will be turned off by CAM when an OPEN is issued to microcode to start a communications session. It will be turned on by CAM when CAM is canceled if bit 4 is on. Bit 6, when off, indicates the main microprocessor lock bits (0-3) are ready for use, CAM can be loaded. Bit 7, when on, indicates the communications microprocessor diagnostics can successfully at power up time.

Hex Displacement	Length in Bytes (in Hex)	Description
00A4	14	System use only.

Hex Displacement	Length in Bytes (in Hex)	Description
00B8	4	Communications IOB Pointer:

Byte 0

Bit(s)	*Meaning*
0	The CAM has locked the IOB pointer; the main microprocessor cannot use the IOB if this bit is 1.
1-3	System use only.
4-7	0000 = No main microprocessor accessing the chain. 0001 = First main microprocessor accessing the chain. 0010 = Second main microprocessor accessing the chain.

Byte 1 — The high-order address of the first IOB on the chain.

Byte 2

Bit(s)	*Meaning*
0	The low-order IOB address.
1-2	System use only.
3	1=CAM is optional.
4-7	The page number of the IOB location.

Byte 3 — Hex FF if the CAM is operational.

Hex Displacement	Length in Bytes (in Hex)	Description
00BC	4	System use only.
00C0	5	Date information as follows:

Byte 0	Year minus 1900.
Bytes 1-2	Day of the year.
Byte 3	Month (date is invalid if this byte = 00).
Byte 4	Day of the month.

Hex Displacement	Length in Bytes (in Hex)	Description
00C5	2	Storage size as follows:

Byte 0	Number of 64 K-byte pages of storage.
Byte 1	Number of 256-byte blocks of storage on the last page.

Hex Displacement	Length in Bytes (in Hex)	Description
00C7	1	IPL Flag.

Hex Displacement	Length in Bytes (in Hex)	Description
00C8	2	High-order 2 bytes of time (1.6 seconds per count) since the system was powered on (if the elapsed time counter is installed). Updated by the keyboard/display microprocessor.
00CA	6	System use only.
00D0	6	System flags as follows:

Byte 0

Bit(s)		*Meaning*
0-3		System use only.
4	1 =	The resource allocation table is in storage.
5-7		System use only.

Byte 1	During IPL, hexadecimal FF indicates the main microprocessor is ready for IPL data to be loaded. Not hexadecimal FF indicates that a diskette microprocessor is loading IPL data.
Byte 2	The device address of the IPL diskette.
Byte 3	The IPL device subaddress.
Bytes 4-5	System use only.

00D6	2	The address of the resource allocation table, relative to the beginning of page 0.
00D8	9	System use only.
00E1	2	Address of main memory buffer for keystroke buffering.
00E3	7	Error log lockout bytes: Each device IOB pointer is assigned a bit in the first-level lockout bytes. Up to 8 device IOB pointers share a bit in the second-level lockout byte. For entry to the error log, all bits in the first-level byte containing the device IOB pointer lockout bit must be 0, and all bits in the second-level lockout byte must be 0. Also, bit 3 of byte 0 of the table pointer must be 1. To use the table, the microprocessor must: (1) Set the bit in the first-level lockout byte corresponding to the IOB pointer of the device that has the error. All other bits in that byte must be 0. (2) Set the bit in the second-level lockout byte. All other bits in that byte must be 0. (3) Set bits 4-7 of byte 1 of the pointer to system table 0 to hex F. This half-byte must have been zero.

Hex Displacement	Length in Bytes (in Hex)	Description
00E3 (cont.)		First-level error lockout bytes:

	Bit	
Byte E3	0	Partition 0
	1	Partition 1
	2	Partition 2
	3	Partition 3
	4	Partition 4
	5	Partition 5
	6	Partition 6
	7	Partition 7
Byte E4		System use only (must be zero).
	Bit	
Byte E5	0	Diskette 5000
	1	Diskette 4C00
	2	Diskette 4800
	3	Diskette 4400
	4	Diskette 4000
	5	Not defined
	6	Not defined
	7	Not defined
	Bit	
Byte E6	0	Printer 80XX
Byte E7		System use only (must be zero).
Byte E8		System use only (must be zero).

00E9 — Second-level error lockout byte:

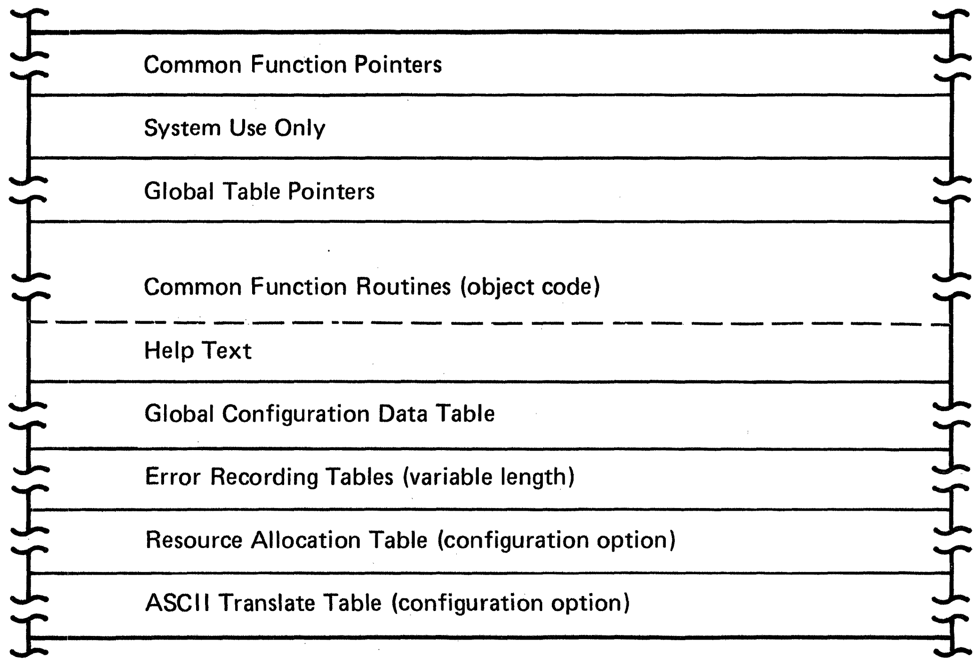
Bit(s)	*Use*
0	Partitions 0-7.
1	System use (must be 0).
2	Diskettes.
3	Printer and system use only (must be zero).
4-7	System use only (must be zero).

Hex Displacement	Length in Bytes (in Hex)	Description
00EA	2	Address of the global configuration table, relative to the beginning of page 0. The address is set by the configuration utility.
00EC	2	Address of global self check control block, relative to the beginning of page 0.
00EE	2	Address of the global edit format table, relative to the beginning of page 0.

Hex Displace-ment	Length in Bytes (in Hex)	Description
00F0	1	System use only.
00F1	1	Main microprocessor configuration data; initialized by the configuration program as follows: *Bit(s)* — *Meaning* 0-3 — The number of partitions-1 to scan. 4-7 — The number of the partition at which to start scanning.
00F2	1	Second application microprocessor configuration data; initialized by the configuration program as follows: *Bit(s)* — *Meaning* 0-3 — The number of partitions-1 to scan. 4-7 — The number of the partition at which to start scanning.
00F3	6	System use only.
00F9	2	Address of the system table pointers, relative to the beginning of page 0.
FB	1	The page number of the global screen format table and the global prompt table. *Bit(s)* — *Meaning* 0-3 — Page number of keystroke buffer in main memory. 4-7 — Page number of global screen format table and prompts table.
FC	2	The address of the global screen format table, relative to the beginning of the page specified in displacement FB.
FE	2	The address of the global prompt table, relative to the beginning of the page specified in displacement FB.

COMMON FUNCTIONS AND GLOBAL TABLES

The common functions and global tables begin at address hexadecimal 0100, and may include different areas depending on the system and whether the user selected IBM options. The following diagram is a general description of the common functions and global tables as they are if the common area SYSDPRT2 (the default area) is selected. Following the general description is a complete description of the global tables.



Global Configuration Table

The address of the global configuration table is at hexadecimal EA, EB in main storage. This table contains information about the printer for the printer microprocessor. There are two header bytes, followed by an 8-byte entry for each printer configured. Hexadecimal FFFF indicates the end of the table. The following is the format of the 2 header bytes, and of the 8-byte entry.

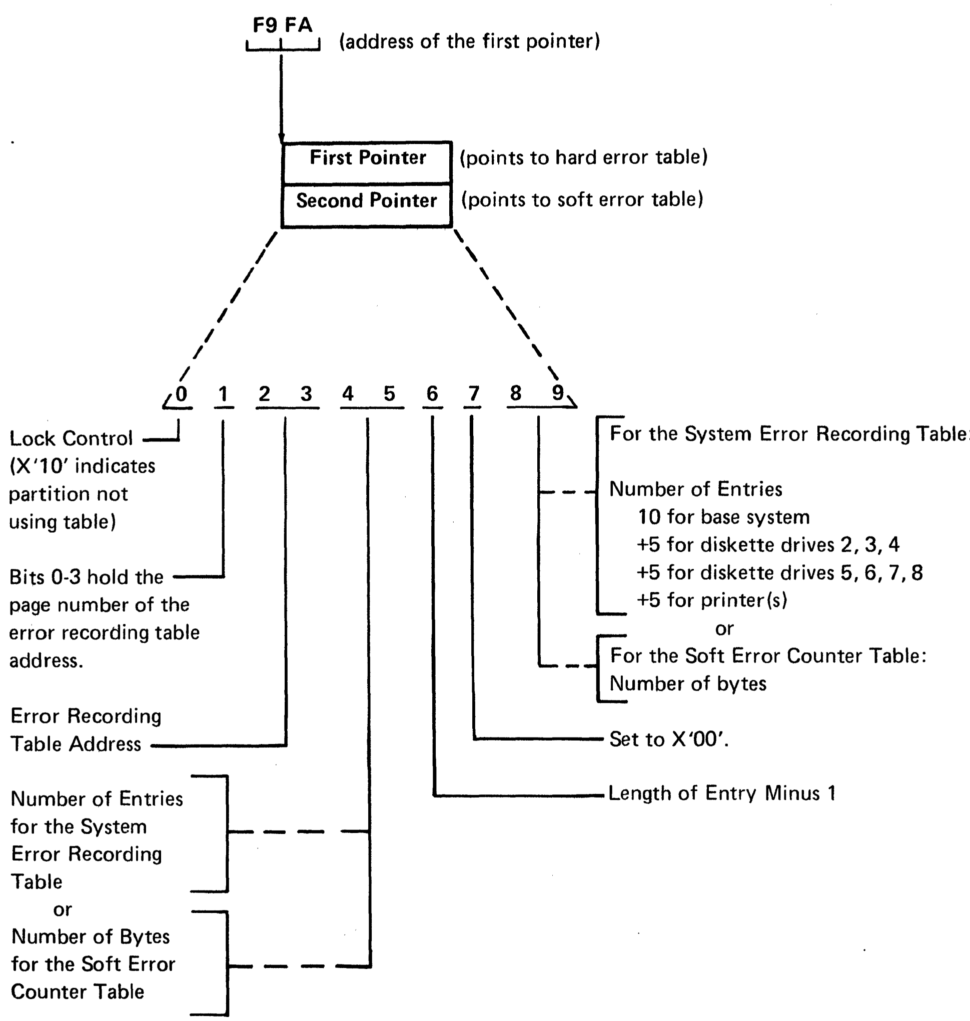
Hex Displacement	Length in Bytes (in Hex)	Description	
	2	Header Bytes:	
		Byte 1	The address of the printer IOB pointer (hexadecimal 0080).
		Byte 2	
		Bits	*Meaning*
		0-3	The number of entries in the configuration table minus 1.
		4-7	The length of a table entry minus 1 (hex 7).
	8	Printer Entry:	
		Byte 1	Device subaddress.
		Bits	*Meaning*
		0-1	System use only.
		2-4	Printer port number.
		5-7	Printer station address.
		Bytes 2-3	Displacement into the table to this entry (must be nonzero).
		Byte 4	Table length (hexadecimal 14).
		Byte 5	Printer error encoding type: A0 = Bit encoding 20 = Byte encoding
		Byte 6	Adapter Type 00 = Twinaxial printer attachment. 02 = Start-stop printer attachment.
		Byte 7	Number of 128-byte blocks in printer buffer (hex 02).
		Byte 8	Must be zero.

Error Recording Tables

A system hard-error table and a soft-error table are stored in the common area. The system hard-error table is used by the microprocessors to record system hardware-related errors. The soft-error table is used by the printer attachment microprocessor to record the number of I/O errors that occur during program execution. These error tables provide a history of system hardware-related errors and I/O errors that can be written to a diskette with a special error table dump program.

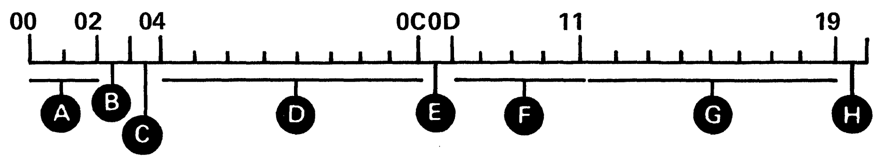
How to Find the Error Recording Tables

The error recording table pointers are stored in the common area, in the format of a system table. The 2-byte address of the error recording table pointers is located in the system control block, at displacement hex F9. The first pointer always contains the address of the hard error table, and the second pointer always contains the address of the soft error table. The pointers are 10 bytes in length, in the following format:



Hard Error Table Format

The hard-error table can contain up to 25 entries. Each entry contains up to 26 bytes of error information in the following format:



A   Error Code: See *Error Code Format.*

B   Address of IOB Pointer[2]

C   Device Subaddress (printer only)[1]

D   Program Name

E   IOB Identification:
   Bits 0-3 = The logical unit number from the logical I/O table.[1]

   Bits 4-7 = The partition number in which the IOB is stored.

F   Device Status: See *Device Status* for a description.

G   Data Set Name[1]

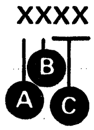
H   Number of Duplicate Errors: Maximum is X'FF'.

---

[1] This field contains all 0s for the keyboard/display MPU.

[2] For the keyboard/display MPU, this field points to the foreground partition associated with this keyboard. If the partition is a background partition, this field points to the foreground partition with which this background is associated.

Error Code Format



A Device Identification as Follows:

0 = Main microprocessor
1 = Keyboard/display microprocessor
2 = Printer attachment microprocessor
3 = Diskette microprocessor
4 = SNA
5 = BSC
6-8 Not used
9 = Application program
C = Previous data set (SNA)
D = Previous data set (BSC)

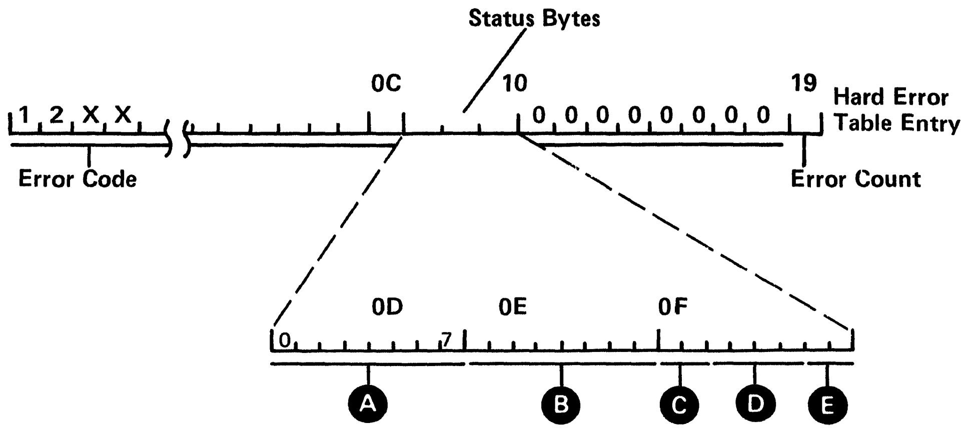
B Error Category as Follows:

1 = Intervention required
2 = Hard error (operation is not retried)
3 = Retriable error (retried x times)
4 = IOB error (user error)
5 = Soft error (retried successfully)
6 = Exception status (such as the Cancel key pressed on the 5256 printer)
7 = Warning error (user can continue)
8   Not used
9 = User program terminated

C Specific Error Condition: See the *IBM 5280 Message Manual,* GA21-9354, for a description of specific conditions.

Device Status

For the Keyboard/display MPU: The device status bytes have the following meaning for error codes 1200, 1201, and 1202. For 1204 all status bytes are undefined.



A For error codes 1200 and 1201, status 0D has the following meaning:

Bit(s)	*Meaning*
0	1 = A keyboard/display feature card is installed.
1	1 = Keyboard/display storage selected is on a feature storage card. (see Note)
2	1 = Keyboard/display storage selected is on the keyboard/display MPU card. (see Note)
3-7	Keyboard/display storage access status as follows:

01111 = Accessed by the keyboard/display MPU or by a translate cycle.

10111 = Storage accessed by display 1 hardware.

11011 = Storage accessed by display 2 hardware.

11101 = Storage accessed by display 3 hardware.

11110 = Storage accessed by display 4 hardware.

For error code 1202, byte 0D contains the invalid scan code.

B For error codes 1200 and 1201, byte 0E has the following meaning:

Bit(s)	*Meaning*
0-2	High-order bits of the keyboard/display storage address when the error occurred.
3	0 = The error occurred when translating and writing to the display refresh buffer.
4	0 = The last storage access was for a read operation.
	1 = The last storage access was for a write operation (diagnostic use only).
5	Parity is even (should be even for a read; can be either for a write).
6-7	Indicates model as follows: 00 = 5288 01 = Not Used 10 = 5286 11 = 5285

For error code 1202, byte 0E contains the EBCDIC translation for the invalid scan code.

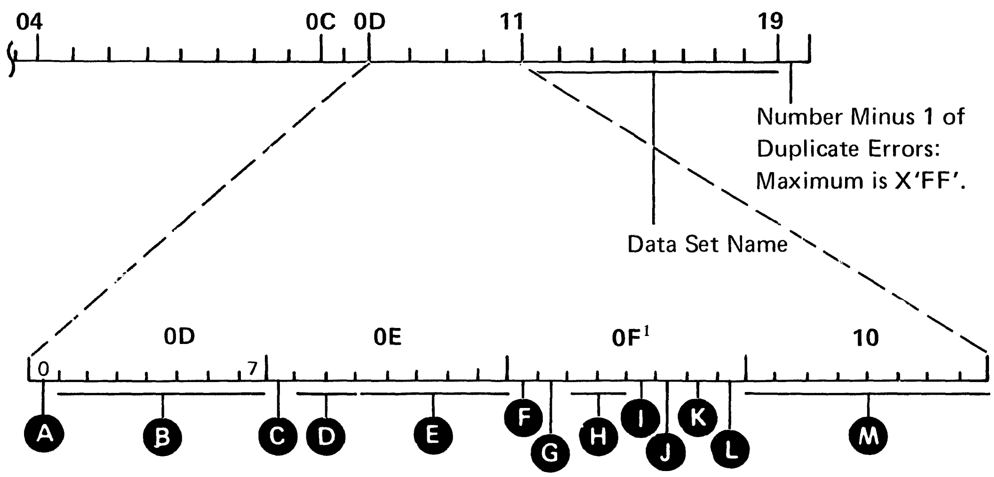
C Not Used

D 0000

E Number of Keyboards Detected (as attached) By the Keyboard/Display MPU

Note: For error codes 1200 and 1201, if bit 1 and bit 2 of status 0D are both 0, an invalid address was accessed.

For the Diskette MPU: The device status bytes have the following meaning.



A Failing Head Number:

0 = Head 0
1 = Head 1

B Failing Track Number

C 0 = FM
1 = MFM

D Sector Size:

00 = 128
01 = 256
10 = 512
11 = 1024

E Failing Sector Number—valid for the following codes:

3301	3501
3302	3502
3303	3503
3306	3506

F CRC error occurred

G ID found during search

H 01 = Control address mark (AM) was detected
10 = Missing address mark
11 = Bad track accessed

I Storage overrun: The diskette MPU was unable to obtain the required storage cycles to transfer data.

J Error during a verify read operation.

K Command not complete: The diskette MPU has not completed the operation requested.

L When 1, the write or erase gate was active during a read operation; or the write or the erase gate was not active during a write operation.

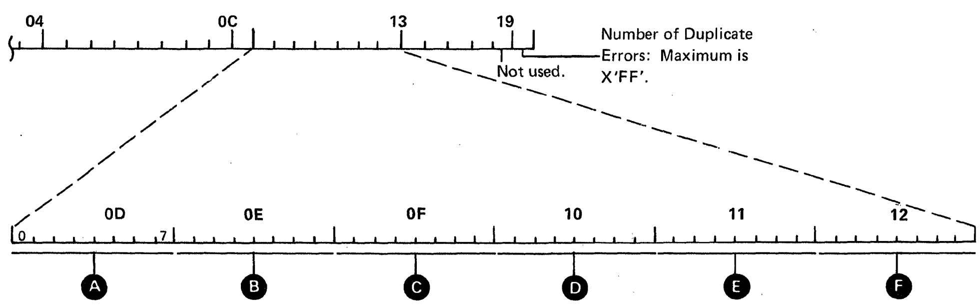
M Command sent to the diskette adapter by the diskette MPU.[2]

---

[1] If byte 0F is equal to FF, the track contains no IDs.
[2] If the command is hex Ax or 2x, bytes 0D and 0E may not be valid.

For the Printer Attachment MPU:

The status bytes have the following meaning for the twinaxial printer attachment.



A Not used.

B First Poll Response Byte

Bit(s)	*Meaning*
0	The printer MPU is busy.
1	The printer received bad data—parity error.
2	The printer is not ready.
3	The printer has outstanding status, which must be read by the printer attachment MPU.

B 4-6 *Exception status from the printer:*

000 = No exception status.

010 = The printer received an invalid activate command. A read command must be followed by a read activate command and a write command must be followed by a write activate command.

011 = Undefined exception status.[1]

100 = The printer received an invalid command.

101 = Printer storage overrun: The printer received too much data or too many commands.

110 = Undefined exception status.[1]

111 = The printer was powered off and then powered on.

7 Not used by the 5280.

C Second Poll Response Byte

Bit	*Meaning When 1*
0	The printer received an invalid SCS character (usually a programming error).
1	The printer received an invalid SCS parameter (usually a programming error).
2	The printer receive buffer is full.
3	The printer operation is complete.
4	The Cancel Request key was pressed on the printer.
5	The printer mechanism is not ready (usually a voltage missing at the printer).
6	End of forms
7	The printer received an unprintable character (this bit should only be on if the SGEA command is set to stop).

D Outstanding Status from Printer

Bit	*Meaning When 1*
0	Print wire check
1	Emitter slow speed check
2	Emitter fast speed check
3	Emitter sequence check
4	No emitter pulses
5	Emitter overrun: Printer MPU cannot keep up with the emitter pulses.
6	Forms stopped
7	Forms position check

E Encoding Type:

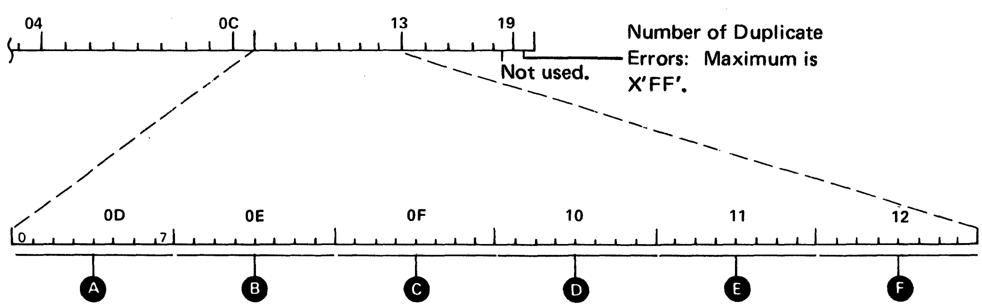
A0 = bit encoding
20 = byte encoding

F Adapter type

00 = Twinaxial printer attachment

[1]This exception status should not be received from the printer. If it is, it usually indicates a line hit.

The status bytes have the following meaning for the start-stop printer attachment.



A Not used.

B Device status.

Bit	*Meaning*
0	Interface check
1	Device check
2	Busy
3	Device exception
4	Receive block pending
5	Reserved
6	Power on transition
7	Reserved

C Device sense 0

Bit	*Meaning*
0	Framing error
1	Overrun error
2	Parity error
3	Graphic error
4	Invalid SCS command
5	Invalid SCS parameter
6	End of Forms
7	Always 0

D Device sense 1

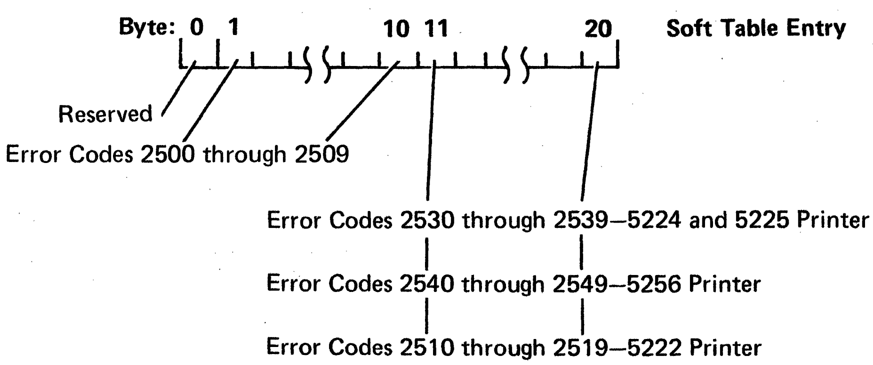
Bit	*Meaning*
0	Buffer overrun
1	Power supply error
2	Left margin error
3	End of forms switch error
4	CPI/LPI switch error
5	Buffer read error
6	Invalid CPI/LPI switch setting
7	Always 1

E Encoding type
A0 = bit encoding

F Adapter type
02 = Start-stop printer attachment

Soft Error Table Format

The printer soft error recording table contains a count for each printer soft error that occurred. The first byte in the table is always 0, followed by one entry for each printer on the system. Each entry is 21 bytes long, and each byte is assigned to a specific error code as follows:



Resource Allocation Table

The resource allocation table defines the physical address of each logical device that can be used by each partition. The table is created and initialized as a user option during the system configuration portion of the SCP. If a resource allocation table has been created and placed into the common area, the system flag at address hex D0, bit 4 is 1; the address of the table is at hex D6-D7 in the system control block.

The resource allocation table consists of a 4-byte partition header for each partition, followed by a 4-byte device entry for each device that can be used by that partition. When the main microprocessor attempts to open an IOB that specifies a logical device ID instead of a physical address, it uses the resource allocation table to find the physical address. The main microprocessor searches the table until it finds the first entry for that partition or the first global partition entry. It then searches the device entries for a matching device ID. If no match is found, it continues searching the partition headers for another entry for the partition or another global partition entry. The search continues until the matching device ID is found or until the table is exhausted. If no match is found, an error is reported. If a match is found, the device at the physical address specified in the table is used to open the data set.

The format of the partition header records and the device entries are as follows.

Partition Header

Byte:	0	1	2	3
	Partition ID	Number of Entries		

Bytes **Meaning**

0 Partition ID Number:

FO = Global entry (each device entry applies to all partitions)
FF = (see the description for bytes 2 and 3)

Bit(s)		*Meaning*
3	1 =	The partition number in bits 4 through 7 is not valid.
	0 =	A valid partition number is in bits 4 through 7.
4-7		The number (0 through 7) of the partition to which the entries apply.

1 The number (0 through 255) of device entries for this partition.

2-3 If bytes 0 and 1 contain hexadecimal FFFF (indicating the end of the table), bytes 2 and 3 indicate the number of bytes still available in the table.

If byte 0 is hex FF and byte 1 is not, byte 1 contains the page number and bytes 2 and 3 contain the remainder of the address of the next section of the resource allocation table.

Device Entries

Byte: 0	1	2	3
Device ID		Device Physical Address	

Bytes	Meaning
0-1	*Device ID:* The EBCDIC code for the logical device ID. This ID is compared to the ID specified in the IOB during an open, and when they are equal, the device with that physical address is opened.
2-3	*Physical address:* Byte 2 is the address of the IOB pointer for this device. During an open, the main microprocessor moves byte 2 into the logical I/O table, and byte 3 to the IOB.

ASCII Translate Table

The ASCII translate table contains two 256-bytes sections. The first section is used for input, to translate EBCDIC notation to ASCII. The second 256-byte section is used for output, to translate ASCII notation to EBCDIC. The hex value of each character is used as an offset into the appropriate translate table, and the original hex value is replaced with the hex value at that offset.

PARTITION AREA

The partition area contains the program executed by the main microprocessor and the information required to execute these programs.

All addresses shown in the following description are relative to the beginning of the partition area.

Hex Displacement	Length in Bytes (in Hex)	Description
0000	40	Partition IOB (see *Partition IOB*).
0040	40	Logical I/O table (see *Logical I/O Table*).
0080	80	Keyboard/display IOB (see *Keyboard/Display IOB*).
0100	80	Indicators I000 through I254, binary registers BR0 through BR15, and/or decimal registers R0 and R1. (See *System Indicators Within a Partition* for a list of indicators that are used by system microprocessors.)
0120	Variable (224 if all binary registers are used)	Binary register BR16 through BR127 and/or decimal register R2 through R15. (See *System Registers Within a Partition* for a list of registers that are used by system microprocessors.)
Variable (0200 if all binary registers are assigned)	Variable (3584 if all decimal registers are used)	Decimal registers R16 through R239.
Variable (pointed to in the partition IOB)	Variable	Object code, buffers, tables, diskette and printer IOBs (see *Diskette IOB* and *Printer IOB* later in this chapter), work areas, and other user program areas.
Variable	256	The last 256 bytes of a partition area are used as a microprocessor work area.

Partition IOB

The following is a general description of the partition IOB. Following this general description is a complete description of each field of the IOB. All addresses shown are hexadecimal displacements from the beginning of the partition. No validity checking is made on any of the values in the bytes of the following IOB. If any of these bytes are modified by the application program, unpredictable results may occur.

00	Program Name 4							
08	Partition Length 5	Control Flags 3,6		Main Micro-processor Error Code 2,3,6	System Use Only 6	Program Start Address, High 3,4	Absolute Address of Program 3,6	System Use Only 6
10	Instruction Address Pointer 3,4		Common Area Page Number 1,3,5	Page and Current Instruction Flags 3,5	Partition Page Number 2,3,6	Program Length 2,3,4	Address of Program Check Routine 2,3,4	
18	Address of System Table for Data Tables 1,3,4		Main Microprocessor Save Area 3,6		Program Execution Timer 2,3,4	Number of Last Edit Format 2,3,6	Currency Edit Characters 3,4	
20	Decimal Edit Character 3,4	Comma Edit Character 3,4	Edit Count 3,4	Partition Number 2,3,6	Address of System Table for Edit Formats 1,3,4		Address of Self Check Control Block 1,3,4	
28	System Use Only 6		Load Flags 3,6		Save Area For Subroutine Return Address 3,6		Save Area for Trace 3,6	Remaining Number of Bytes to Load 3,6
30	Page of Partition Being Loaded 3,6	IOB Address of Partition Being Loaded 3,6	Address of Partition Work Buffer 3,6	Part. Number of Partition Being Loaded 3,6	IOB Pointer Address for Diskette 3,6	I/O Flags 3,6	Current Instruction Address 3,6	
38	Page Number of Data to Dump 3,6	Address of Data to Dump, High 3,6	Number of Bytes to Dump 3,6	Trace Flags 3,6	Address-Stop Instruction Address 3,6		Configuration Information 3,6	System Use Only 6

1. Application program can read or write this field.
2. Application program can only read this field.
3. Used by the main microprocessor.
4. This field must be initialized by the object module.
5. This field must be initialized at IPL time.
6. This field must be zero in the object module.

Hex Displace-ment	Length in Bytes (in Hex)	Description
00	8	Program Name (eight EBCDIC characters that identify the program in this partition).
08	1	Partition length in number of 256-byte blocks minus 1.
09	1	Control Flags: *Bit(s)* *Meaning* 0 1 = IOB is initialized (a program is loaded). 1 1 = Keyboard is attached to this partition. 2-7 System use only.
0A	1	Control Flags: *Bit(s)* *Meaning* 0 1 = Tracing through a Call or Return instruction, to or from the common function area. 1 System use only. 2 1 = Processing a newly invoked Cmd, C key sequence. (Waiting for keystroke after the Cmd and C keys have been pressed.) 3-6 System use only. 7 1 = Waiting for a response (ENTR) for the global load prompt.
0B	1	Main microprocessor error code.
0C	1	System use only.
0D	1	High-order part of the program start address.
0E	1	Absolute program start address. Used by the microprocessor when returning from a common area subroutine.
0F	1	System use only.
10	2	Points to the next instruction to be executed when the microprocessor begins executing code in the partition. When the microprocessor begins executing code in this partition for the first time, it adds the value in byte 0D of this IOB to this address to make it an absolute address. The microprocessor then updates this address before leaving the partition.

Hex Displacement	Length in Bytes (in Hex)	Description
12	1	Page number of the common functions as follows: *Bit(s)* *Meaning* 0-3 Page number of common function area 1. 4-7 System use only.
13	1	Page and current instruction flags as follows: *Bit(s)* *Meaning* 0-1 01 = Instructions being executed are in the common function area. 10 = Instructions being executed are in the partition. 11 = System use only. 2-3 System use only. 4-7 Page number for the instruction currently being executed.
14	1	Number of the page where this partition is located (range 0-2) plus system flags.
15	1	Length of the program in this partition (in 256-byte blocks).
16	2	Address of program-check subroutine.
18	2	Address of the system table that contains 8-byte entries, each of which defines a table in this partition. (See *System Table for Data Tables* under *System Tables* for the format of the table entries.)
1A	2	Microprocessor save area
1C	1	Program execution time (time slice timer) as follows: *Bit(s)* *Meaning* 0 1 = Ignore attentions. 1 1 = Keyboard external status occurred after a RESUME or CNENTR operation. 2 1 = Keyboard external status occurred during a nonoverlapped, nonkeyboard operation. 3 System use only. 4-7 Length of time divided by 4 (in milliseconds) to execute instructions in the partition (initialized by the assembler).
1D	1	Binary number assigned to the last edit format index used.

Hex Displacement	Length in Bytes (in Hex)	Description
1E	2	Characters used as the edit currency characters during formatted read or write operations.
20	1	Character used as the edit decimal character during formatted read or write operations.
21	1	Character used as the edit comma character during formatted read or write operations.
22	1	Number of characters between edit commas during formatted read or write operations.
23	1	The partition number assigned to this partition (00-07; set by the microprocessor at load time).
24	2	Address of the edit format system table (table that contains 2-byte entries that point to the local edit format strings stored within the partition).
26	2	Address of the self check control block.
28	2	System use only.
2A	2	Load Flags as follows:

Byte 2A

Bit		*Meaning*
0	1 =	Foreground partition is loading the program.
	0 =	Background partition is loading the program.
1	1 =	Program is being loaded in a foreground partition.
	0 =	Program is being loaded in a background partition.
2	0 =	Program is loading a program into this same partition.
	1 =	Program is loading a program into another partition.
3	1 =	The loader issued an ENTR command.
4	1 =	Partial load.
	0 =	Regular load.
5	1 =	Attach a background partition if possible.
6		System use only.
7	1 =	User error recovery specified.

Hex Displacement	Length in Bytes (in Hex)	Description
2A (cont.)		Byte 2B

Bit	Meaning When 1
0	User external status routines are not available.
1	One automatic retry was attempted.
2	Close was issued by the loader.
3	Closing open data sets.
4	Error message requested by the loader.
5	Global screen format used.
6	EXIT in foreground partition.
7	Detach the background partition at the end of the load operation.

Hex Displacement	Length in Bytes (in Hex)	Description
2C	2	Microprocessor save area.
2E	1	Trace save area.
2F	1	Number of 256-byte blocks left to load.
30	1	Storage page number in which partition is being loaded.
31	1	Address of partition IOB for partition being loaded (used only while loading a program).
32	1	Address of partition work buffer for partition being loaded (used only during load operation).
33	1	Partition pointer address of the partition being loaded.
34	1	Address of diskette IOB Pointer for diskette doing the load operation (used only while loading a program).
35	1	I/O Flags:

Bit	Meaning When 1
0	Nonoverlapped I/O pending.
1	Nonoverlapped ENTR pending.
2	Formatted read requested.
3	System use only.
4	Keyboard operation pending.
5	During SCS conversion, the logical buffer has data remaining to be converted.
6	Console function request pending.
7	ENTR issued by loader.

Hex Displacement	Length in Bytes (in Hex)	Description
36	2	Address of current instruction (used during trace).
38	1	Page number of data to dump.
39	1	High-order address of data to dump.
3A	1	Number of 256-byte blocks of data to dump.
3B	1	Trace Flags: *Bit* — *Meaning When 1* 0 — Address-stop address reached. 1 — Address-stop request pending. 2 — First time through trace or address-stop. 3 — Dump flag. 4 — Request trace of binary instructions. 5 — Request trace of miscellaneous instructions. 6 — Request trace of decimal instructions. 7 — Request trace of branching instructions.
3C	2	Instruction address after which execution stops during step-stop mode.
3E	1	Configuration information: *Bit(s)* — *Meaning* 0-3 — Number of partition pointers remaining to scan. 4-7 — Number of the partition pointer at which the main microprocessor begins scanning.
3F	1	Preliminary work station lock byte. This byte applies to foreground partitions assigned to work stations. When a main processor makes a KB/CRT request, it attempts to lock this byte, by inserting the main processor number, in order to coordinate multiple KB/CRT requests from various partitions. If the main processor is successful in locking this byte, it proceeds to byte 7F of the keyboard IOB in the same foreground partition and attempts to lock it by inserting the requesting partition number. If either lock attempt fails, because of another partition number in byte 7F of the keyboard IOB or another main processor number in 3F, the main processor retries until successful.

Logical I/O Table

The logical I/O table is located at relative displacement hex 40 through hex 7F of each partition. Each data set IOB is represented with a 4-byte entry in the logical I/O table. The table entries are stored within the table in the order of the data set numbers.

The logical I/O table entries have two formats: one format is used for the keyboard/display IOB and the other format is used for diskette IOBs and printer IOBs.

The following is a general description of the logical I/O table. Following the general description is a complete description of the two formats that are used for the logical I/O table entries. The address of each table entry is the data set number times 4 plus hex 40.

Keyboard/Display Format

Byte	**Meaning**
0	Not used (initialized to hexadecimal 00).
1	Flags:

Bit(s)		*Meaning*
0	1 =	Special processing is required. This bit is set on when an external status condition is detected during a RESUME, CANCEL, or ENTR operation and indicates that external status processing is required after these operations have completed.
1	1 =	An ENTR command is pending.
2-3		Not used, set to zero.
4	1 =	A keyboard/display operation is pending.
5-7		Not used, set to zero.

2-3	Address of the keyboard/display IOB (always 0080).

Diskette and Printer Format

Byte	Meaning
0	Address of the device IOB printer
1	I/O Class:

Bit(s)		*Meaning*
0-1		I/O type:
	01 =	Output only
	10 =	Input only
	11 =	Input and output
2	1 =	The main microprocessor is waiting to remove an IOB from an IOB chain.
3	1 =	The main microprocessor is waiting to add an IOB to an IOB chain.
4	1 =	The main microprocessor is waiting to lock the first IOB on a chain during an open.
5		Not used
6	1 =	The IOB is on an IOB chain.
7	1 =	An I/O request is pending for this device.

Byte	Meaning
2	The high-order address of the IOB.
3	Flags:

Bit(s)		*Meaning When 1*
0		Low-order address of the IOB.
		Device type as follows:
1	1 =	Diskette
2		Not used
3	1 =	Printer
4	1 =	Not used
5	1 =	Communications
6-7		Not used

Note: Only one of bits 1-7 may be on at any one time.

Keyboard/Display IOB

The keyboard/display IOB is located at relative displacement hex 80 through hex FF of each partition. There are two separate formats for the IOB, one for when a partition is in IBM 3270 emulation mode and one for IBM 5280 (not IBM 3270 emulation) mode.

IBM 5280 Mode

The following is a general description of the IBM 5280 mode of the keyboard display IOB. Following this general description is a complete description of each field of the IOB. All addresses shown are hexadecimal displacements from the beginning of the IOB. To find the address relative to the beginning of the partition, add hex 80 to the displacement. No validity checking is made on any of the values in the bytes in the following IOB. If any of these bytes are modified by the application program, unpredictable results may occur.

00	IOB System Status 2	Foreground Background Flags 2,7,8,9	Partition IOB Pointer 2,8,9	IOB Lockout 2	Error Code 2	Next Instruction Address 2
08	Command Op Code 2	Current Screen Format Control String Byte Address 2	Current Prompt Table Address 2	Partition Prompt Table Address 3,6,7	External Status 2	
10	External Status Routine Address 2,7	Keyboard Flags 3270, 2	Keyboard Flags 2	Keyboard Flags 3270	Last Diacritic Character 2	Save Area for Address of Current Screen Format Control String Byte 2
18	Keyboard Bit Map 1,7	Return Key Code 2	Operation Code 2			
20	Operation Parameter 1 2	Operation Parameter 2 2	Operation Parameter 3 2	Last Key Scan Code 2	Last Key EBCDIC 2	
28	Current Field Address in Main Storage 3270, 2	Current Field Address in Keyboard/Display Storage 2	Current Record Buffer Address 3,4,7	Previous Record Buffer Address 3,4,7		
30	Displacement to Current Character in the Buffer 2	Address of the Current Cursor Position 2	Alphabetic Right-Adjust Character 6,7	Numeric Right-Adjust Character 6,7	Address of Storage Duplication Table 3,4,7	
38	Keyboard Flags 5	Keyboard Flags 2	Keyboard Flags 5	Keyboard Flags 2	Keyboard Flags 5	
40	Picture Check Displacement 3270, 2	Information from Screen Format Control String 3270, 2				
48	Information (Continued)	Picture Check Subfield 3270, 2	Fixed Prompt Line 3,4,7	Keystroke Counter 6,8	Verify Correction Keystroke Counter 6,8	
50	Address of Storage Area in Keyboard/Display Storage 2,8	Address of Diacritic Translate Table 2,8	Address of Status Line Refresh Buffer 2,8	Address of Katakana Trans. Tbl. 2,8	Address of Scan Code Trans. Tbl. 2,8	
58	Address of Screen Refresh Buffer 2,8	Number of Lines on Screen 2,8	Number of Characters per Line 2,8	Keyboard Configuration Information 2,8	Address of Validity Table 2,8	Display Line Map 2,8
60	Display Line Map (continued) 2,8	Language Group 2,8	Address of Cursor Address Register 2,8	Address of Control Area 2,8	Address of Display Control Register 2,8	System Use Only
68	Current Character Position within the Field 3270, 2	Current Field Number 3270, 2	Address of the Fixed Prompt Line 3270, 2	Current Position Counter 3270, 2		

70	Positions Remaining in the Field 3270, 2		Current Record Buffer Position 3270, 2		Normal Display Attribute 3,4,7	High Intensity Display Attribute 3,4,7	Microprocessor Save Area 2	
78	EBCDIC for Blank Check 3,4,7	Address of Partition Screen Format Control String Table 3,4,7		EBCDIC for Verify Mismatch 2	EBCDIC for Duplication Mismatch 2	Microprocessor Save Area 2	Microprocessor Work Area 2	Main Microprocessor Lockout 2

1. An application program can change this field at any time.
2. An application program should not change this field.
3. Normally, an application program will not change this field.
4. An application program can change this field, but only when an ENTR command is not being processed.
5. See field descriptions for restrictions.
6. An application program can change this field, but only when an ENTR command is not being processed or when EXTR processing is suspended, such as during external status processing (before a resume is issued).
7. Initialized by the assembler.
8. Initialized during IPL.
9. Initialized by the program loader.

3270. Field is redefined for 3270 Emulation Mode.

Hex Displacement	Length in Bytes (in Hex)	Description
00	1	IOB System Status:

Bit(s) *Meaning*

0-1 11 = Main microprocessor sent a command to the keyboard/display microprocessor: It cannot send another until the keyboard/display microprocessor sets the bits to 00.

01 = Keyboard/display microprocessor accepted the command; however, processing is not yet complete.

00 = No command pending.

2 1 = Keyboard/display microprocessor is awaiting an operator response to a keyboard operation. The keyboard/display microprocessor sets this bit on if bit 4 of this byte is on and the operation code is hexadecimal 09 (place key-entered data in main storage).

3 1 = External status sensed; the keyboard/display microprocessor sets this bit to 1 when it senses an external status condition. The main microprocessor clears the bit when it begins processing the external status. See also bit 7 in this byte.

4 1 = Main microprocessor has requested a keyboard/display operation. The keyboard/display microprocessor clears the bit after it completes the operation.

Hex Displacement	Length in Bytes (in Hex)	Description
00 (cont.)		*Bits* / *Meaning* 5 — System use only. 6 — 1 = Current command processing has been temporarily interrupted. The keyboard/display microprocessor sets this bit on when a command or keystroke is interrupted (time slice elapsed) and clears the bit when it resumes processing the command or keystroke. 7 — 1 = An external status condition is pending or is being processed. The keyboard/display microprocessor sets the bit when it senses an external status. The main microprocessor clears the bit after it has processed the external status condition, or the keyboard/display microprocessor clears the bit when it receives a RESUME operation that requests enable external status.
01	1	Foreground and Background Flags: *Bits* / *Meaning* 0 — 0 = Keyboard data is for the foreground partition. 1 = Keyboard data is for the background partition. Bit 0 is meaningless in a background partition. 1 — 1 = Keyboard operation in progress that requires input from the keyboard. When the operation is complete, the keyboard/display microprocessor sets the bit to 0. Bit 1 is meaningless in a background partition. 2 — 1 = Background partition is attached; meaningless in a background partition. 3 — 1 = Bits 4-7 do not contain a valid partition number. 4-7 — In a foreground partition, bits 4-7 contain the number of an attached background partition (bit 2 = 1 and bit 3 = 0) or the number of the background partition that has a keyboard operation in progress (bit 2 = 1 or 0 and bit 3 = 0). In a background partition, bits 4-7 contain the foreground partition number with which this background is associated.

Hex Displacement	Length in Bytes (in Hex)	Description
02	1	The low-order byte of the address (in the system control area) of the 4-byte partition IOB pointer.
03	1	IOB Lockout: *Bit(s)* / *Meaning*: 0 — 1 = Keyboard/display microprocessor is using this IOB. The main microprocessor cannot use this IOB while this bit is on. 1-3 — System use only. 4-7 — When bits 4-7 are not 0, the main microprocessor is using the IOB.
04	2	The keyboard/display microprocessor uses these 2 bytes to store keyboard status codes. (Status codes are stored in 4-digit, zone-stripped format.)
06	2	The absolute address of the next sequential instruction following the command or operation issued to the keyboard/display microprocessor.
08	1	The op code of the command currently being processed by the keyboard/display microprocessor. When this byte = 00, no ENTR command is being processed.
09	2	During the processing of the ENTR command, bytes 09 and 0A contain the address (relative to the beginning of the partition or to the beginning of the page that contains the global table) of the first byte in the screen format byte group that is currently being processed. Before the keyboard/display microprocessor begins processing the ENTR command, bytes 09 and 0A have the following meaning: Byte 9 — *Bit* / *Meaning*: 1 — 0 = Screen format control string is in the partition. 1 = Screen format control string is in the global area. Byte 0A — The table entry number of the screen format control string to be used for this ENTR command.

Hex Displacement	Length in Bytes (in Hex)	Description
0B	2	While an ENTR command is being processed, these bytes contain the address of the first byte of the current prompt table. If the prompt table is in the partition, the address is relative to the beginning of the partition. If the prompt table is in the global area, the address is relative to the beginning of the storage page that contains the global area.
0D	2	Address of the partition prompt table relative to the start of the partition.
0F	1	External Status Information:
10	2	Address, relative to the beginning of the partition, of the table or subroutine that is used when processing external status conditions.
12	1	Keyboard Flags:

Byte 0F, External Status Information:

Bit(s)		*Meaning*
0-1		System use only.
2	1 =	Indicates that the keyboard/display and main microprocessors are operating in diagnostic mode, such as dump or trace.
3-7		External status condition number (see the *Assembler Language Reference Manual* for a description of external status conditions).

Byte 12, Keyboard Flags:

Bit(s)		*Meaning*
0	0 =	There is more than one external status subroutine. They are accessed via a subroutine table.
	1 =	External status is handled by one subroutine.
1-4		System use only.
5	0 =	If byte 13, bit 5 is 1, Katakana keyboard lock is alphameric lowercase.
	1 =	If byte 13, bit 5 is 1, Katakana keyboard lock is Katakana lowercase.
6-7	00 =	Katakana keyboard shift default is alphameric lowercase.
	01 =	Katakana keyboard shift default is alphameric uppercase.
	10 =	Katakana keyboard shift default is Katakana lowercase.
	11 =	Invalid value.

Hex Displacement	Length in Bytes (in Hex)	Description
13	1	Keyboard Flags:

Bit(s)		*Meaning*
0	0 =	Katakana Shift Lock key is up.
	1 =	Katakana Shift Lock key is held down.
1	0 =	Katakana Uppershift key is up.
	1 =	Katakana Uppershift key is held down.
2	0 =	Katakana Lowershift key is up.
	1 =	Katakana Lowershift key is held down.
3	0 =	For Katakana, alphameric uppershift key is up. For non-Katakana, numeric shift key is up.
	1 =	For Katakana, alphameric uppershift key is held down. For non-Katakana, numeric shift key is held down.
4	0 =	For Katakana, alphameric lowershift key is up. For non-Katakana, alpha shift key is up.
	1 =	For Katakana, alphameric lowershift key is held down. For non-Katakana, alpha shift key is held down.
5	0 =	For Katakana, keyboard shift is not locked. For non-Katakana, shift default is lowercase.
	1 =	For Katakana, keyboard shift is locked. The type of lock is specified in byte 12, bit 5. For non-Katakana, shift default is uppercase.
6-7		Current shift for all keyboards:
	00 =	Alphameric lower
	01 =	Alphameric upper
	10 =	Katakana lower
	11 =	Katakana upper

Hex Displacement	Length in Bytes (in Hex)	Description
14	1	Keyboard flag byte:

Bit	*Meaning*
0	Mode flag: 0 = 5280 mode. 1 = 3270 mode.
1.	Error buzz flag: 0 = No buzz on error detected by microcode. 1 = Buzz on error detected by microcode.
2	Return-to-program exit keystroke buffering flag: 0 = Do not buffer keystrokes during return-to-program exit processing. 1 = Buffer keystrokes during return-to-program exit processing.
3-7	Reserved, must be 0.

Hex Displacement	Length in Bytes (in Hex)	Description
15	1	EBCDIC of the last diacritic character entered.
16	2	Save area for the address of the current format control string (bytes 09 and 0A) while a secondary format control string is being processed.
18	6	Keyboard bit map: contains a bit for each function key that can be processed either partially or totally by the keyboard/display microprocessor or by an object code program. If the bit is 1, the corresponding function key is processed by the object code program. See Appendix C, *Keyboard Functions: EBCDIC Codes and Bit Numbers* for a description of the bit map and corresponding functions.
1E	1	EBCDIC of the key that caused a return from screen format processing to the object code program.
1F	1	Op code of the keyboard/display operation issued by the main microprocessor (see Chapter 4).
20	2	Parameter 1 for the op code in byte 1F.
22	2	Parameter 2 for the op code in byte 1F.
24	2	Parameter 3 for the op code in byte 1F.
26	2	Contains the scan code (byte 26) and EBCDIC value (byte 27) of the last key pressed as follows: • The function key during external status condition 1. • The first character of a hexadecimal pair. • The keystroke following the Command key during external status condition 2 and 3. • The keystroke that caused the error during external status condition 8. • The function key when the microprocessor processes a function key other than the Command, Reset, or Shift key. • When the main memory keystroke buffer is overrun and an 1171 error is posted, byte X'26' is set to X'75' to indicate main memory buffer overrun rather than keyboard hardware buffer overrun.
28	2	Address in main storage (relative to the beginning of the partition) of the first byte of the field currently being entered or processed.

Hex Displacement	Length in Bytes (in Hex)	Description
2A	2	Address in the refresh buffer (keyboard/display storage) of the first byte of the field currently being entered or processed.
2C	2	Address (relative to the beginning of the partition) in main storage of the first byte of the current record buffer for data being entered.
2E	2	Address (relative to the beginning of the partition) in main storage of the previous record buffer that normally contains the previous record entered (used for record duplication).
30	2	Displacement from the beginning of the current record buffer to the current character position.
32	2	The absolute address of the current cursor position or screen position pointer within the refresh buffer in keyboard/display storage. (The cursor is displayed within data entry fields only. The screen position pointer is maintained between fields.)
34	1	The EBCDIC character that is inserted into the nondata positions of an alphabetic, right-adjust field when the right-adjust is performed.
35	1	The EBCDIC character that is inserted into the nondata positions of a numeric, right-adjust field when right-adjust is performed.
36	2	Address in main storage, relative to the beginning of the partition, of the storage duplication table.

Hex Displace-ment	Length in Bytes (in Hex)	Description
38	1	Keyboard Flags:

Bit(s)		*Meaning*
0	1 =	Operation is continued; the keyboard/display microprocessor sets this bit on when a keyboard operation (such as a data movement) is executed by separate, successive operations. The application program should not change this bit.
1		Set by the keyboard/display microprocessor to indicate that the key code is from an object code program instead of the keyboard. Indicates that the microprocessor must perform functions that are not performed when the code is from the keyboard. The application program should not change this bit.
2	1 =	At least one field of the record has been processed. Used to determine if a record advance operation should be performed. The application program should not change this bit.
3-5		Used by the keyboard/display microprocessor to keep track of format control string processing when check indicator for bypass specifications are encountered in the string. The application program should not change these bits.
6-7		Meaning of the current position displayed on the status line. Normally, no change is made in these 2 bits by the application program. If the application program does change these bits, it should not change them while an ENTR command is being processed.
	00 =	Position of the next character to be entered relative to the first character of the record.
	01 =	Position in the current record buffer in main storage (relative to the beginning of the buffer) in which the next character will be stored.
	10 =	Relative position of the cursor on the screen (from the first position).
	11 =	Position in the current field (relative to the beginning of the field) in which the next character will be stored. For format level 0, the position of the current 1-byte field relative to the beginning of the format level 0 field.

Hex Displacement	Length in Bytes (in Hex)	Description
39	1	Keyboard Flags:

Bit		Meaning
0		Set to 1 by the keyboard/display microprocessor when the object code program issues the request for error operation (KERRST). Reset to 0 when the object code program issues the request error reset operation (KERRCL). The application program should not change this bit.
1	1 =	The keyboard/display microprocessor detected a keying error. The bit is turned off when the reset key is pressed. The application program should not change this bit.
2	1 =	Keyboard is open for data entry. Set when an ENTR command or RESUME instruction is executed. Cleared when a CNENTR command is executed or when an external status condition is detected. The application program should not change this bit.
3	1 =	The cursor is within a field.
4	1 =	If a keying error occurs, the keyboard/display microprocessor checks the status line. If the status line is not displayed, it displays it. When the error is reset, it replaces the status line with the extra line from the refresh buffer.
	0 =	Do not check the status line. Normally, no change is made in this bit by the application program. If the application program does change this bit, it should not change it while an ENTR command is being processed.
5	1 =	Status line is displayed. Indicates that the extra line must be displayed when the error is reset. The application program should not change this bit.
6	1 =	A mismatch error occurred while verifying a constant insert field. The application program should not change this bit.
7		Set by the keyboard/display microprocessor when the perform keyboard operation (hex 11) is issued by the object program. It indicates that the EBCDIC code came from the object code program; therefore, the microprocessor does not check the keyboard bit map. The application program should not change this bit.

Hex Displacement	Length in Bytes (in Hex)	Description
3A	1	Keyboard Flags:

Bit	*Meaning When 1*
0	System use only.
1	The command key was the last key pressed.
2	The last two keys pressed formed a command key sequence.
3	Data being entered is in hexadecimal format following a hexadecimal command key sequence.
4	One hexadecimal digit has been entered following a hexadecimal command key sequence.
5	Manual field found in format.
6	One hexadecimal digit has been entered into the current position of a hexadecimal field.
7	The last key entered was diacritic.

Hex Displacement	Length in Bytes (in Hex)	Description
3B	1	Keyboard Flags:

Bit(s)		*Meaning*
0		Set by the keyboard/display microprocessor when it sets external status condition 11 (magnetic stripe reader data in buffer). Reset when the object code program reads the data or resets the reader.
1-3		Indicates the screen size for which the program was written:
	1	1 = 1920
	2	1 = 960
	3	1 = 480
4	1 =	Special verify mode.
5-7		Displacement minus 2 from the address of the first byte of the picture check screen format group to the address of the first picture check subfield byte.

Hex Displace-ment	Length in Bytes (in Hex)	Description
3C	1	Keyboard Flags:

Bit(s)		*Meaning When 1*
0	1 =	Activate the clicker for function keys. Normally, no change is made to this bit by the application program. If the application program does change this bit, it should not change it while an ENTR command is being processed.
1	1 =	The home (Record Backspace) key was pressed with the cursor in the first position of the record. The application program should not change this bit.
2	1 =	Secondary screen format being processed. The application program should not change this bit.
3	1 =	Screen format control string is outside the partition. The application program should not change this bit.
4-7		When bit 3 = 1, bits 4 through 7 contain the page number of storage in which the screen format control string is stored. The application program should not change this bit.

Hex Displace-ment	Length in Bytes (in Hex)	Description
3D	1	Keyboard Flags:

Bit	*Meaning When 1*
0	During a verify operation, the digit entered in the last position of a field exit required field in which the Field– key is allowed does not match the digit currently in the record.
1	*Dup key enable flag:* The Dup key is not allowed. (See note.)
2	*Monocase enabled flag:* Characters that may be monocase, as defined in the validity table, are displayed and stored in the buffer in uppercase. See note.
3	*Field exit minus key enable flag:* The Field– key is not allowed in a numeric field. (See note.)
4	*Special verify enable flag:* If the 5280 is in verify mode, data entry is allowed without verify checking against the current record contents. When the field is exited, normal verify mode is restored. (See note.)

Note: This flag is set to 0 when the keyboard/display microprocessor begins executing an ENTR command but can be changed by the change-keyboard-control-flag control group in the screen format control string.

Hex Displace-ment	Length in Bytes (in Hex)	Description
3D (cont.)		

Bit		Meaning
5		When screen format processing is interrupted by a return to the object program, this bit indicates the direction the format should be processed when format processing resumes, as follows:
	0 =	Forward processing when interrupt occurred.
	1 =	Backward processing when interrupt occurred.

Meaningless if byte 1E is 0.

Bit		Meaning
6		During a verify operation:
	0 =	The sign of the last position of a field exit required field has *not* been verified.
	1 =	The entire last position of a field exit required field has been verified.
7	1 =	Indicates to the microprocessor not to perform character edit checks or perform checks for data required, mandatory enter, mandatory fill, and blank check fields. The bit is turned on when keyboard operation hexadecimal 06 is executed. Resets to 0 when each field is advanced into or backspaced into.

Hex Displace-ment	Length in Bytes (in Hex)	Description
3E	1	Keyboard Flags:

Bit	*Meaning When 1*
0	Keyboard is in enter mode. (See note.)
1	Keyboard is in update mode. (See note.)
2	Keyboard is in rerun mode. (See note.)
3	Keyboard is in verify mode. (See note.)
4	Keyboard is in insert mode. The application program should not change this bit.
5	Keyboard is in field correct mode. The application program should not change this bit.
6	Keyboard is in display mode. (See note.)
7	Fixed prompts are not displayed. Normally, no change is made to this bit by the application program. If the application program does change this bit, it should not change it while an ENTR command is being processed.

Note: An application program can change bits 0, 1, 2, 3, and 6, but only when an ENTR command is not being processed. After program load, these bits are maintained by the application program to determine the current mode for formatted data entry. When an ENTR is outstanding, one and only one of bits 0, 1, 2, 3, and 6 must be set.

Hex Displacement	Length in Bytes (in Hex)	Description
3F	1	Keyboard Flags:

Bit		*Meaning*
0		Set to 0 when the cursor enters a field. Set to 1 when data is entered into the field. When the cursor leaves the field, the microprocessor ORs this bit with the modified data indicator that is assigned to this field: See *System Indicators within a Partition.* (See Note 1.)
1	1 =	The last position of a field exit required field has been entered. A nondata key is required to exit the field. The application program should not change this bit.
2	1 =	Awaiting a record advance key. The application program should not change this bit.
3	1 =	Auto dup/skip is enabled. (See Note 1.)
4	1 =	Auto enter is enabled. (See Note 1.)
5	1 =	Alternate record advance is enabled. (See Note 1.)
6	1 =	Data is displayed when in rerun mode. (See Note 2.)
7	1 =	A verify mismatch error is pending. The application program should not change this bit.

Hex Displacement	Length in Bytes (in Hex)	Description
40	1	Displacement from the first byte of the current screen format picture check group to the current subfield format byte.

Notes:

1. The application program can change this bit, but only while an ENTR command is not being processed or when ENTR processing is suspended, as during external processing before the RESUME is issued.
2. The application program can change this bit, but only while an ENTR command is not being processed.

Hex Displacement	Length in Bytes (in Hex)	Description
41	8	Contains information about the current field as shown in the following bytes (from the format control string) while the field is being processed: (See *Screen Format Control Strings* for more information.) *Byte* — *Meaning* 41 — First byte of the field group. 42-43 — Field length minus 1. 44 — Field attribute byte. 45 — Field attribute extended byte. 46-47 — Storage duplicate table displacement. 48 — Screen format picture check (PIC) byte.
49	1	The number of bytes accumulated in a picture-check subfield; picture check processing ends when bits 1 through 3 of this byte equal the subfield length in bits 1 through 3 of the picture check byte.
4A	1	Screen line on which fixed prompts are displayed.
4B	3	Nonverify-correction keystroke counter.
4E	2	Verify-correction keystroke counter.
50	2	Address, in keyboard/display storage, of the storage area that contains keyboard control information (see Chapter 3).
52	2	Address, in keyboard/display storage, of the diacritic translate tables.
54	2	Address, in keyboard/display storage, of the status line refresh buffer.
56	1	High-order byte of the address, in keyboard/display storage, of the Katakana translate table.
57	1	High-order byte of the address, in keyboard/display storage, of the scan code translate table.
58	2	Address, in keyboard/display storage, of the main refresh buffer.
5A	1	Number of lines on the screen.
5B	1	Number of characters per screen line.

Hex Displace-ment	Length in Bytes (in Hex)	Description
5C	1	Keyboard Configuration Information:

Bit(s)		*Meaning*
0	0 =	Single screen
	1 =	Dual screen
1	0 =	Single screen or station 0 of dual screen.
	1 =	Dual screen, station 1.
2-3		System use only.
4	1 =	Katakana keyboard.
5	1 =	Proof keyboard.
6	1 =	Typewriter keyboard.
7	1 =	Data entry keyboard.

5D	1	Keyboard Configuration Information:

Bit(s)	*Meaning When 1*
0	Not used.
1	Maximum screen size is 1920.
2	Maximum screen size is 960.
3	Maximum screen size is 480.
4-7	Not used.

5E	1	High-order byte of the address in keyboard/display storage of the validity table.
5F	4	Display line map: Bits 0-25 of the 4-byte group indicate which screen lines are displayed (lines 0-25 respectively). Bits 26-31 are 0.
63	1	Language group; the number selected from the language/keyboards-type table during configuration.
64	1	Low-order byte of the address in keyboard/display storage of the cursor address register.
65	1	High-order byte of the address in keyboard/display storage of the control area.
66	1	Low-order byte of the address in keyboard/display storage of the display control register.
67	1	System use only.
68	2	Displacement into the current field (0 to field length minus 1) to the current character position.

Hex Displacement	Length in Bytes (in Hex)	Description
6A	2	The relative field number (0 to maximum number of fields minus 1) of the field within the screen format control string currently being processed. A format level 0 specification equals one field.
6C	2	Address, in keyboard/display storage, of the fixed prompt line.
6E	2	Value of the current position counter (4-digit, zone-stripped format) displayed on the status line during keyboard entry.
70	2	Number of positions (4-digit, zone-stripped format) remaining in the field. The low-order two digits are displayed on the status line.
72	2	The relative position (in binary format) minus 1 in the current record buffer where the next character entered, if valid, will be stored.
74	1	Normal display attribute from .KBCRT (NMIN) statement.
75	1	Highlight display attribute from .KBCRT (HLIN) statement.
76	2	Microprocessor save area.
78	1	EBCDIC value used to check blank-check fields (usually hexadecimal 40).
79	2	Address, relative to the start of the partition, of the screen format control string table that is used to locate the format control strings with the partition.
7B	1	The EBCDIC character for the key that caused the last verify mismatch error.
7C	1	The EBCDIC character for the dup data that caused a verify mismatch.
7D	1	Microprocessor save area.
7E	1	Microprocessor work area.
7F	1	Partition number lockout byte. When nonzero, this byte contains the number of the partition currently requesting KB/CRT operations. (See byte 3F of partition IOB.)

IBM 3270 Emulation Mode

The following is a description of the keyboard/display IOB fields that have been redefined for the IBM 3270 emulation mode. These are the fields of the IOB that contain different information than for the IBM 5280 mode. The fields not described here are listed for the IBM 5280 mode.

Hex Displace-ment	Length in Bytes (in Hex)	Description
12	1	Keyboard flags

Bits	*Meaning*
0, 5, 6, 7	See IBM 5280 mode for definition.
1, 3	Reserved, must be 0.
2	IBM 3270 KEYOP time slice flag: 0 = KEYOP not time sliced. 1 = KEYOP time sliced.
4	Numeric lock flag: 0 = Numeric lock off. 1 = Numeric lock on.

Hex Displace-ment	Length in Bytes (in Hex)	Description
14	1	Keyboard flags:

Bits	*Meaning*
0	IBM 5280 mode/IBM 3270 mode flag 0 = IBM 5280 mode 1 = IBM 3270 mode
1	Error buzz flag 0 = No buzz on microcode - detected error 1 = Buzz on microcode - detected error
2	Return-to-program exit keystroke buffering flag 0 = Do not buffer keystrokes during return-to-program exit processing 1 = Buffer keystrokes during return-to-program exit processing
3-7	Reserved - must be 0.

Hex Displace-ment	Length in Bytes (in Hex)	Description
28	2	Initial cursor address. Holds the position of the cursor after a write assist to the display specifies the SNA session is SSCP-SLU owned. This initial cursor address is used in the read buffer assist for an SNA SSCP-SLU owned session. These bytes are initialized to 0 when the operation to clear and initialize the screen is executed.

Hex Displacement	Length in Bytes (in Hex)	Description
40	2	Next attribute address (NA@). Offset (0-1919) into the device buffer of the attribute that defines the start of the field following the one where the cursor is currently positioned.
42	2	Current attribute address (CA@). Offset (0-1919) into the device buffer of the attribute that defines the field where the cursor is currently positioned. When CA@ = NA@, there is only one field on the screen. When NA@ $<$ CA@, the current field wraps from the bottom of the screen to the top of the screen.
44	1	Current attribute (CA). The attribute of the field where the cursor is currently positioned. When CA = 0, the screen is unformatted. CA@, NA@ and CA will be recalculated or initialized: 1. When a write assist to the screen is executed. 2. When an erase all unprotected assist for the screen is executed. 3. When the operation to clear and initialize the screen is executed. 4. Whenever a keystroke causes a field boundary to be crossed.
45	1	Keyboard flags: *Bit* *Meaning* 0 System available: 0 = System available indicator off. 1 = System available indicator on. 1 Insert mode: 0 = Not insert mode - insert mode indicator off. 1 = Insert mode - insert mode indicator on. 2 Input inhibited: 0 = Not input inhibited - input inhibited indicator off. 1 = Input inhibited - input inhibited indicator on.

Hex Displacement	Length in Bytes (in Hex)	Description
		Bit *Meaning*
		3 Hard lock: 0 = Keyboard not hard locked. 1 = Keyboard hard locked.
		4-7 Reserved, must be 0.
46	1	Keyboard flags:
		Bits *Meaning*
		0-6 Reserved, must be 0.
		7 One field on screen: 0 = Screen is unformatted or screen is formatted with more than one field. 1 = Screen is formatted with exactly one field.
47	3	Reserved
68	2	Device buffer address. Address relative to the start of the partition for the left-most byte of the device buffer. This buffer must be at least 2048 bytes long.
6A	2	Work buffer address. Address relative to the start of the partition for the left-most byte of the work buffer. This buffer must be at least 1920 bytes long.
6C	2	Current buffer address. Offset (0-1919) into the device buffer or work buffer of the current position of the buffer pointer used on read and write data stream assists.
6E	2	Current cursor position. Offset (0-1919) into the device buffer of the current cursor position.
70	1	EBCDIC - Internal code table address high. Absolute address high of table which translates IBM 3270 data stream EBCDIC codes to internal codes.

Hex Displacement	Length in Bytes (in Hex)	Description
71	1	Flags and table page number. *Bit(s)* *Meaning* 0 Numeric lock feature installed. 0 = Numeric lock feature not installed. 1 = Numeric lock feature installed. 1 Audible alarm feature installed. 0 = Audible alarm feature not installed. 1 = Audible alarm feature installed. 2 Numeric lock feature enabled flag. 0 = Numeric lock feature enabled. 1 = Numeric lock feature disabled. **Note:** This bit must be set to zero each time a switch is made from IBM 5280 mode to IBM 3270 mode. 3 BSC/SNA flag: 0 = BSC. 1 = SNA. 4-7 Page number of absolute address of translate table specified in byte F1.
72	1	Internal code - EBCDIC table address high. Absolute address high of table which translates internal codes to IBM 3270 data stream EBCDIC codes.
73	1	Reserved. **Note:** Device buffer address, work buffer address, current buffer address, current cursor address, and translate table address described above are also defined for IBM 3270 printer emulation. However, for IBM 3270 printer emulation this information is located in a printer control block.

System Indicators Within a Partition

The first one hundred indicators within a partition may be used as the user wishes. The other indicators, however, are assigned a specific purpose for use during program execution. Indicators effected by an instruction should be set to 0 by the programmer before use of the instruction. The indicator assignments are as follows:

Indicator	Condition	Meaning If Set to 1
I100		System use only
I101	Table search	Result is higher
	TRT	Byte not found
	CLC	String 1 greater than string 2
I102	Table search	Result is lower
	TRT	Byte is found
	CLC	String 1 is less than string 2
I103	Table search	Result is equal
	TRT	Byte found in last position (EOF)
	CLC	String 1 is equal to string 2
I108	External status	Restricted external status processing
I109	Program check	Program check error
I110		Background partition
I115	SCS	LSTLN overflow
I116		System use only
I117	Self check	A self-check digit of X'10' was generated by a GSCK instruction using standard modulus 11.
I118	SRAT	Resource allocation table search error
I119	HEXBIN	Attempt to convert invalid hex EBCDIC to binary
I120	Decimal divide	Divide error (denominator=0)
I121	Edit format	Invalid edit format conversion request
I122	Arithmetic	Decimal to binary conversion error
I123	Decimal multiply	Multiply overflow (+, *, /)
I124	Decimal arithmetic	Decimal arithmetic overflow
I125	Table search	Entry not found

Indicator	Condition	Meaning If Set to 1
I126	Table write	Attempt to extend table beyond its limit
I127	Table instruction	Table instruction error
I128-159		Reserved
I160-191	ENTR	Field modification indicators. Each indicator represents a field in the screen format, up to 32 fields. If there are more than 32 fields in the screen format, each indicator represents every 32nd field. I160 represents field 0, field 32 and so on. A format level zero specification is represented with one indicator for the entire group of 1-byte fields. All field modification indicators are set to 0 when an ENTR is encountered. While the ENTR is being processed, each time the cursor is advanced or backspaced into a field, bit 0 of byte hex BF of the keyboard/display IOB in the partition is set to 0. If data is entered into the field, bit 0 of the byte at hex BF is set to 1. When the cursor exits the field, bit 0 of the byte at hex BF is ORed with the field modification indicator that represents the field.
I192-254		Used by SYSKEU, DE/RPG, and other programs to communicate with common function routines.

System Registers Within a Partition

Several binary registers are used by the system during program execution. These registers are listed below, with the conditions or instructions that affect each register.

Register	Condition	Register Contents
BR16	LOAD	Relative record number for relative record read; also contains error code after a load error.
BR16	TRT	Address of the last position that translated to a non-zero character.
BR17	TRT	Function byte.
BR18	Subroutine	Address of next available entry position in the partition subroutine stack.
BR19	Keyboard external status	Current field starting address, relative to the beginning of the partition, of the field within the current record buffer.
BR20	Keyboard external status	Current field starting address within the screen refresh buffer in keyboard/display control storage.
BR21	Keyboard external status	Field definition and field length minus 1 of the current field.
BR22	External status	Relative address of the last data set IOB to report external status. Not used for keyboard/display external status.
BR23	External status	External status condition code, to be used as the index into the external status error table of subroutine addresses.
BR24		Used by SCP for PTF log.
BR25	LOAD	Physical device address of the device performing the load.
BR26-31		System use only.

Diskette IOB

Following is a general description of the diskette IOB. Following this general description is a complete description of each field of the IOB. Addresses shown are hexadecimal displacements from the beginning of the IOB. No validity checking is made on any of the values in the bytes of the following IOB. If any of these bytes are modified by the application program, unpredictable results may occur.

00	IOB System Status 1	IOB Chaining Information 1	Page Data and Flags	Error Code 1	Next Instruction Address 1	
08	Command Op Code 1	Command Operands 1	Logical Buffer Address	Translate Table Number 1,2	External Status	
10	Address of External Status Subroutine or Subroutine Table	Main Microprocessor Flags 1,2,3	Data Set Flags 1,2,3	Address of Data Set Name 1,2	System Use Only	Partition Address, High 1
18	Physical I/O Buffer 1 (PB1) Address and Length 1,2	PBI Track 1	PBI Sector 1	Logical Record Length 1,2,3	Block Length 1,2,3	
20	Physical I/O Buffer 2 (PB2) Address and Length 1,2	PB2 Track 1	PB2 Sector 1	Defective Sector Count 1,3	Microprocessor Save Area 1,3	
28	Displacement to Next Record Space 1,3	Microprocessor Save Area 1,3				
30	Pointer to HDR1 Label Address 1,3	Sector Length 1,3	Number of Additional Index Cylinders 1,3	Number of Sectors per Block 1,3	Number of Sectors per Track 1,3	Track and Sector Number of Beginning of Extent (BOE) 1,3
38	Relative Record Number of End of Data (EOD) 1,3	Relative Record Number of End of Extent (EOE) 1,3	Track and Sector Number of End of Data (EOD) 1,3			
40	System Use Only 4	Table Number of Key Index File 1,2,4	Number of Records Between Keys 1,2,3,4	Key Position 1,2,4	Key Length Minus 1 1,2,4	System Use Only 4
48	Microprocessor Save Area 1,3	Data Set Type 1,2	Adapter Error Status 1	Microprocessor Save Area 1		
50	Number of Bytes to Read or Write (PB1) 1	Microprocessor Save Area 1,3	Seek Count 1	Microprocessor Save Area 1,3		

<table>
<tr><td>58</td><td>Number of Bytes to Read or Write (PB2)
1</td><td colspan="2">Number of Nulls Between Blocks</td><td colspan="3">Microprocessor Save Area
1,3</td></tr>
<tr><td>60</td><td>Device Identification</td><td>Diskette IOB Identifier</td><td>Deleted Record Character
1,3</td><td colspan="2">Microprocessor Save Area
1,3</td><td>Current Record Pointer
1,3</td></tr>
<tr><td>68</td><td>Current Record Pointer (continued)
1,3</td><td colspan="5">Microprocessor Save Area
1,3</td></tr>
<tr><td>70</td><td colspan="6">Microprocessor Save Area
1,3</td></tr>
<tr><td>78</td><td colspan="4">Microprocessor Save Area
1,3</td><td colspan="2">System Use Only
1,3</td></tr>
</table>

1. An application program must not alter this field while the IOB is active.
2. Initialized by the assembler.
3. Initialized by the device at open time.

   If both 2 and 3 are specified for a field, it indicates that the field can be initialized by either the assembler or the device, except for bytes 12 and 13, which are initialized by both the assembler and the device.

4. These values apply only to keyed data sets. For SCS conversion data sets, these bytes have a different meaning. See the complete description of the fields for the SCS values.

Hex Displacement	Length in Bytes (in Hex)	Description
00	1	IOB System Status:

Bit(s)		*Meaning*
0-1	11 =	The main microprocessor sent a command to the diskette MPU. It cannot send another command until the diskette microprocessor sets the bits to 00.
	10 =	System use only.
	01 =	Diskette is executing the command; buffers are now in use.
	00 =	No command pending.
2	1 =	The diskette microprocessor has work to do.
3	1 =	The diskette microprocessor sets this bit on when it senses an error or external status. The main microprocessor clears the bit after the external status or the error condition has been processed.
4	1 =	The diskette microprocessor is performing a physical operation for this data set.
5		System use only.
6	1 =	The IOB is first in chain.
7		System use only.

Hex Displacement	Length in Bytes (in Hex)	Description
01	1	IOB Chaining Information: *Bit(s)* *Meaning* 0 1 = Diskette microprocessor is processing the chain pointer. The main microprocessor cannot use the chaining information when this bit is on. 1-3 System use only. 4-7 When nonzero, the main microprocessor is accessing the chain pointer flags.
02	1	High-order byte of the address of the next IOB in the chain.
03	1	Page Data and Flags: *Bit(s)* *Meaning* 0 Low-order address of the next IOB in the chain. 1-3 System use only. 4-7 Number of the page in main storage where the next IOB on the chain is located.
04	2	External status error code in 4-byte packed decimal format (not reset by the system).
06	2	The absolute address of the next sequential instruction following the operation issued to the diskette MPU.
08	1	Op code, see Chapter 4.
09	3	Instruction operand. These bytes contain the rightmost 3 bytes of the object code instruction. See Chapter 4 for the meanings of these bytes.
0C	2	Address of the logical I/O buffer relative to the beginning of the partition.
0E	1	The number of the table used to translate EBCDIC characters to ASCII, ASCII characters to EBCDIC, or other character set translations. Hex FF indicates no translation requested.
0F	1	External status category.
10	2	Address of the external status subroutine table.

Hex Displacement	Length in Bytes (in Hex)	Description
12	1	Main Microprocessor Flags:
		Bit(s) *Meaning*
		0 0 = There is more than one external status subroutine. They are accessed via a subroutine table.
		1 = External status conditions are handled by one subroutine.
		1 1 = An error occurred when opening a data set.
		2 1 = SCS conversion data set; logical buffer is empty.
		3 1 = SCS conversion is in progress for this IOB.
		4 1 = SCS last line status flag.
		5 1 = An error detected by the main microprocessor is outstanding.
		6 1 = CLOZ operation logically complete.
		7 1 = SCS purge in progress, set during CLOZ operation.
13	1	Data Set Flags:
		Bit *Meaning When 1*
		0 The IOB is open.
		1 Logical buffer is within the physical buffer.
		2 Diskette is using double physical buffers.
		3 Diskette microprocessor is waiting for a shared data set conflict to be resolved. The shared data set is being used by another IOB.
		4 On open, the logical record and block size are set to equal the sector size.
		5 I/O MPU requires repeat of last command. The main MPU decrements the external status table return address for repeat when a RETURN instruction is used.
		6 Not used.
		7 SCS continuation of transparent data across physical buffers, or data set keys are in ascending order.
14	2	Address of data set name.
16	1	Device subaddress, must be 0.
17	1	Partition address, high-order byte: The value in byte 17 is added to each address in the IOB to convert it to an absolute storage address. This byte also points to the beginning of the partition IOB and is used to find table addresses.

Hex Displacement	Length in Bytes (in Hex)	Description
18	4	Physical I/O Buffer 1: Byte 18 and bit 0 of byte 19 contain the address, relative to the beginning of the partition, of the beginning of physical I/O buffer 1. Byte 19, bits 1 through 7 contain the number of 128-byte blocks allocated to the buffer in main storage. Byte 1A contains the head and track number where physical I/O buffer 1 starts on diskette (bit 0 = head number). Byte 1B contains the sector number where physical I/O buffer 1 starts on diskette (set to hexadecimal 00 anytime the buffer is invalid, such as: quick release, early write, or if an error occurs).
1C	2	The logical record length of the records in the data set. Not used by diskette MPU in SCS conversion processing.
1E	2	Block length for blocking logical records on diskette.
20	4	Physical I/O Buffer 2: Byte 20 and bit 0 of byte 21 contain the address, relative to the beginning of the partition, of the beginning of physical I/O buffer 2. Byte 21, bits 1 through 7 contain the number of 128-byte blocks allocated to the buffer in storage. Byte 22 contains the head and track number where physical I/O buffer 2 starts on diskette (bit 0 = head number). Byte 23 contains the sector number where physical I/O buffer 2 starts on diskette (set to hexadecimal 00 anytime the buffer is invalid, such as: quick release, early write, or if an error occurs).

Hex Displacement	Length in Bytes (in Hex)	Description
24	2	The number of defective sectors encountered.
26	2	Microprocessor save area.
28	2	Negative displacement to the next available record space from the end of the last block.
2A	6	Microprocessor save area.
30	2	Relative record number of the HDR1 address label for this data set.
32	1	The diskette sector length as follows: *Hex* — *Meaning* 01 — 128-byte sector length for diskette 1 or 2. 02 — 256-byte sector length for diskette 1, 2, or 2D. 04 — 512-byte sector length for diskette 1, 2, or 2D. 08 — 1024-byte sector length for diskette 2D.
33	1	The number of additional index cylinders on the diskette. For example, if this number is 4, there are five index cylinders on this diskette.
34	1	The number of sectors per block, which is block length divided by sector length plus 1 if there is a remainder.
35	1	The value 26, 15, or 8 to indicate the number of sectors per track.
36	2	The BOE track and sector number: For diskette 1, byte 36 = cylinder number and byte 37 = sector number. For diskette 2 and 2D; byte 36, bits 0-6 = cylinder number, and bit 7 = head number; byte 37 = sector number.
38	3	The relative record number of the last logical record in the data set.
3B	3	The relative record number of the last logical record space available in the data set.
3E	2	The EOD track and sector number: For diskette 1, byte 3E = cylinder number and byte 3F = sector number. For diskette 2 and 2D; byte 3E, bits 0-6 = cylinder number, and bit 7 = head number; byte 3F = sector number.

Hex Displacement	Length in Bytes (in Hex)	Description
40	1	Used only for SCS conversion data sets; a pointer into the physical I/O buffer where the data is formatted.
41	1	For keyed data sets, the table number of the keyed index file in main storage. Hex FF cannot be used. See *Addressing Through a System Table*, in Chapter 4, for information about finding tables in storage. For SCS conversion data sets, the line number of the current line.
42	2	For keyed data sets, the number of logical records between key entries on indexed files. For SCS conversion data sets, the line that generated external status (42) and the page size (43).
44	2	For keyed data sets, the location of the index key within the logical record. For SCS conversion data sets, the address of the format table entry being processed on open, which contains the SGEA (set graphic error action) parameters. After open, byte 44 has the number of blanks processed, and byte 45 has the number of bytes processed in the logical buffer.
46	1	For keyed data sets, the length minus one of the index key. For SCS conversion data sets, the number of characters processed in the line.
47	1	Used only for SCS conversion data sets; the number of characters per line.
48	4	Microprocessor save area.

Hex Displace- ment	Length in Bytes (in Hex)	Description
4C	2	Data set types as follows:

Byte 4C:

Bit	*Meaning When 1*
0	Read allowed.
1	Write allowed.
2	Read shared.
3	Write shared.
4	Label update data set.
5	Diskette microprocessor builds an index table when opening keyed data sets.
6	Keyed data set.
7	Set EOD equal to BOE when opening.

Byte 4D:

Bit(s)	*Meaning When 1*
0	Early write.
1	Quick release.
2	Translation of HDR1 labels required.
3	Diskette MPU does not check for overlapped extents or duplicate data set names.
4	Standard character string conversion is requested.
5	Pointer mode data set.
6-7	System use only.

Hex Displace- ment	Length in Bytes (in Hex)	Description
4E	1	Used to store temporary status information.
4F	1	Microprocessor save area.
50	2	Number of bytes to read or write; used in conjunction with physical buffer 1.
52	2	Microprocessor save area.
54	1	The number of tracks to seek as follows:

Bit(s)		*Meaning*
0	1 =	Seek high.
	0 =	Seek low.
1-7		The number of remaining tracks to seek for this data set. (Seek operations can be overlapped with either a read or a write operation.)

Hex Displace-ment	Length in Bytes (in Hex)	Description
55	3	Microprocessor save area.
58	2	Number of bytes to read or write; used in conjunction with physical buffer 2.
5A	2	Number of nulls between blocks.
5C	4	Microprocessor save area.
60	2	Logical device identification from the resource allocation table.
62	1	Diskette IOB Identifier: *Bits* — *Meaning* 0-3 — The logical I/O table number. 4-7 — The partition number for the partition in which this IOB is located.
63	1	The user specified character that indicates a logically deleted record for I or E exchange data sets.
64	3	Microprocessor save area.
67	3	A record number used as a pointer to keep track of positions within the data set. It is not necessarily the same as the record number of the record in the logical buffer.
6A	14	Microprocessor save area.
7E	2	System use only.

Printer IOB

There are two separate formats for this IOB, one for twinaxial printers and one for start-stop printers.

Twinaxial Printers IOB

Following is a general description of the printer IOB when used with twinaxial printers (IBM 5224, IBM 5225, IBM 5256). Following this general description is a complete description of each field of the IOB. The addresses shown are hexadecimal displacements from the beginning of the IOB. No validity checking is made on any of the values in the bytes of the following IOB. If any of these bytes are modified by the application program, unpredictable results may occur.

00	IOB System Status 1,2,3	IOB Chaining Information 1,2	Page Data and Flags	Error Code 1,3	Next Instruction Address 1	
08	Command Op Code 1,2	Command Operands 1,2,3	Logical Buffer Address 1,2,3	Translate Table Number 2	External Status 1,3	
10	Address of External Status Subroutine Table 1	Main Microprocessor Flags 1	Data Set Flags 1,2,3	Address of Data Set Name 1	Printer Subaddress 1,2,3	Partition Address, High 1,2
18	Physical I/O Buffer 1 Address and Length 1,2,3	Number of bytes to be sent in last transmission for physical buffer 1 2,3,4	Logical Record Length 1,2	Block Length 1,2,3,4		
20	Physical I/O Buffer 2 Address and Length 2,3	Number of bytes to be sent in last transmission for physical buffer 2 2,3,4	Microprocessor Save Area 2,3,4			
28	Information From the Global Configuration Table	Reserved for configuration table information				
30	System Use Only	Physical Record Length 1,2,3,4	Printer Line Length 2,3,4	Busy Timer 2,3,4	Close Timer 2,3,4	
38	Microprocessor Save Area	Number of Records Remaining to fill the Physical Buffer 2,3,4	Number of Printer Buffers to Transmit 2,3,4	Number of Logical Records to Transfer to Buffer 2,3,4		
40	SCS Parameters 1					
48	Microprocessor Save Area	Data Set Type 1,2	Last Poll Response Before an Error 2,3,4			
50	Status from Printer 2,3,4	Response to Last Poll 2,3,4	Status from Last Read 2,3,4	Microprocessor Save Area 2,3,4	Command Flags	

<table>
<tr><td>58</td><td colspan="4">System Use Only</td><td colspan="2">Number of Bytes of Physical Buffer Not Being Used</td></tr>
<tr><td>60</td><td>Printer Identification
1</td><td>Printer IOB Identifier
1</td><td>Microprocessor Save Area</td><td>Error Code Build Area
2, 3, 4</td><td>System Use Only</td><td>Current Record Number
1, 2, 3, 4</td></tr>
<tr><td>68</td><td>Current Record Number (continued)</td><td colspan="2">Microprocessor Save Area
2, 3, 4</td><td>Number of Logical Records Remaining in Pointer Mode
2, 3, 4</td><td colspan="2">Microprocessor Save Area</td></tr>
<tr><td>70</td><td>Microprocessor Save Area</td><td colspan="5">System Use Only</td></tr>
<tr><td>78</td><td colspan="3">System Use Only</td><td>Number of Transmits to the Printer Required to Empty the Physical Buffer</td><td colspan="2">System Use Only</td></tr>
</table>

1. Accessed by the main microprocessor.
2. Read by the printer attachment microprocessor.
3. Written by the printer attachment microprocessor.
4. Initialized by the printer attachment microprocessor.

Hex Displacement	Length in Bytes (in Hex)	Description
00	1	IOB System Status:

Bit(s) *Meaning*

0-1 11 = The main microprocessor sent a command to the printer attachment microprocessor. The main microprocessor cannot send another command until the printer microprocessor sets the bits to 00.

10 = The printer attachment microprocessor has completed logical work for the command but is still doing physical work.

01 = System use only.

00 = No command pending. (Printer may still be busy.)

2 1 = The printer attachment microprocessor has physical work to do.

3 1 = The printer attachment microprocessor sets this bit on when it detects an error or external status. The main microprocessor clears the bit and processes the external status with the subroutine indicated.

4-5 System use only.

6 1 = This is the first IOB on the chain.

7 System use only.

Hex Displacement	Length in Bytes (in Hex)	Description
01	1	IOB Chaining Information: *Bit(s)* *Meaning* 0 The printer attachment microprocessor is processing the chain pointer. The main microprocessor cannot use the chaining information when this bit is 1. 1-3 System use only. 4-7 When nonzero, the main microprocessor is accessing the chain pointer.
02	1	High-order byte of the address of the next IOB in the chain.
03	1	Page Data and Flags: *Bit(s)* *Meaning* 0 The low-order address bit of the next IOB in the chain. 1-3 System use only. 4-7 Page number where the next IOB in the chain is located.
04	2	External status error code in 4-byte packed decimal format (only valid if byte 0, bit 3 is 1, but remains valid until the next I/O command is issued to the printer attachment MPU by the main MPU.
06	2	The absolute address of the next sequential instruction following the operation issued to the printer attachment MPU.
08	1	Command op code. See Chapter 4.
09	3	Command operand. These bytes contain the rightmost 3 bytes of the object code instructions. See Chapter 4 for the meanings.
0C	2	Address of the logical buffer, relative to the beginning of the partition.
0E	1	Number of the table used to translate EBCDIC characters to ASCII, ASCII characters to EBCDIC, or other character set translation. Hex FF indicates no translation required.
0F	1	External status category.
10	2	Address of the external status subroutine table.

Hex Displacement	Length in Bytes (in Hex)	Description
12	1	Main Microprocessor Flags:

Bit	*Meaning When 1*
0	All external status conditions handled by one subroutine.
1	An error that cannot occur on any other I/O operation has occurred while opening the data set.
2	SCS conversion data set; logical buffer is empty.
3	SCS conversion is in progress for this IOB.
4	SCS last line status flag.
5	An error detected by the main microprocessor is outstanding.
6	CLOZ operation is logically complete.
7	SCS purge in progress, set during CLOZ operation.

Bits 2-7 are set and maintained by the main microprocessor.

Hex Displacement	Length in Bytes (in Hex)	Description
13	1	Data Set Flags:

Bit	*Meaning When 1*
0	IOB is open.[1]
1	Logical buffer is within physical buffer.
2	Double physical buffers are used.
3-4	Not used.
5	I/O MPU requires repeat of last command. Main MPU decrements the external status table return address to cause the repeat when a RETURN instruction is used.
6	System use only.
7	For main MPU, SCS continuation of transparent data across physical buffers. For diskette, indicates ascending keys.

Hex Displacement	Length in Bytes (in Hex)	Description
14	2	Address of the storage area that contains the data set name

[1] If you issue a second open to a data set without closing the data set and an error occurs during this reopen, another open or a close is required to recover from the error since the data set remains flagged as open. The printer attachment microprocessor will not automatically close the data set because an automatic close precludes error recovery without loss of data. (Also, see note 2.)

[2] For open commands this bit is not set. This allows programs the option of recovery or exit using a return command in external status subroutines. Recovery requires that another open command or a close command follow an error during open. This is not an option to be determined from bit 0 of this byte (see note 1).

Hex Displace-ment	Length in Bytes (in Hex)	Description
16	1	Device Subaddress: *Bit(s)* *Meaning* 0-2 Not used. 3-4 Port address. 5-7 Station address.
17	1	High-order byte of the address of the beginning of the partition. The printer attachment microprocessor adds this address to all relative addresses to form the absolute address.
18	2	Byte 18 and byte 19, bit 0 contain the address of the beginning of the physical I/O buffer 1 relative to the beginning of the partition. Byte 19, bits 1-7 contain the number of 128-byte blocks allocated to the buffer in main storage.
1A	2	Number of bytes to be sent in the last transmission for physical I/O buffer 1.
1C	2	Logical record length of records in the data set.
1E	2	Block length; can be either 128 or 256. If not specified in program, the block length is set to physical I/O buffer 1 size (maximum length is 256).
20	2	Address of the start of physical I/O buffer 2 relative to the beginning of the partition, and buffer length; same format as bytes 18-19.
22	2	Number of bytes to be sent in the last transmission for physical I/O buffer 2.
24	4	Microprocessor save area.
28	6	Information for the printer attachment MPU from the global configuration table: Byte 28 Displacement from the beginning of the soft error log to the first entry for this printer. Byte 2A Number of entries allocated to the soft error log for this printer. Byte 2B Error encoding type as follows: A0 = Bit encoding 20 = Byte encoding Byte 2C Adapter type: 00 = Twinaxial printer attachment 02 = Start-stop printer attachment Byte 2D Number of 128-byte blocks in device physical buffer (2).

Hex Displacement	Length in Bytes (in Hex)	Description
2E	2	Reserved for configuration table information.
30	2	System use only.
32	1	Physical record length.
33	1	Printer line length; set to logical record length at open time. If the logical record length is longer than the maximum print line, zero record length is transmitted to cause the printer to use its default line length.
34	2	Busy timer (busy time-out results in 2291 error).
36	2	Close timer (close time-out results in a 2292 error).
38	2	Microprocessor save area.
3A	2	Number of logical records remaining to be transferred to fill the physical buffer.
3C	2	Number of printer buffers that will be transmitted.
3E	2	Number of logical records that will be transferred to the physical buffer.
40	8	SCS conversion parameters, used only with SCS conversion data sets.

Byte(s)	*Meaning*
40	A pointer into the physical I/O buffer where the data is formatted.
41	The line number of the current line.
42	The line that generates external status.
43	The page size.
44-45	The address of the format table entry being processed on open, which contains the SGEA (set graphic error action) parameters. After open, byte 44 has the number of blanks processed, and byte 45 has the number of bytes processed in the logical buffer.
46	The number of characters processed in the line.
47	The number of characters per line.

Hex Displacement	Length in Bytes (in Hex)	Description
48	2	Busy timer count value used to delay while waiting for a response from the printer.
4A	2	Pointer to the data buffer containing the data to be transmitted. This pointer is incremented by the value of byte 75 when a block of data has been successfully transmitted.

Hex Displacement	Length in Bytes (in Hex)	Description
4C	1	Data Set Type: *Bit(s)* *Meaning* 0 1 = Read allowed (causes error code 2402). 1 1 = Write allowed. 2 Not used. 3 1 = Write shared. (A printer may be used by more than one IOB.) 4-7 Not used.
4D	1	Data Set Type: *Bit(s)* *Meaning* 0 1 = Early write data set. (Transmit a logical record each time it is transferred to the physical buffer.) 1 Not used. 2 Always 0. 3 Not used. 4 1 = SCS conversion requested. 5 1 = Pointer mode data set. 6-7 Not used.
4E	2	Last poll response that occurred before an error was detected; also placed in the system hard error table.
50	1	Status from the printer; also placed in the system hard error table.
51	2	The response to the last poll command.
53	2	Status from the last read status command.
55	2	Microprocessor save area.
57	1	Command flag; indicates the last command issued.
58	6	System use only.
5E	2	Number of bytes of the physical buffer not being used.
60	2	Printer ID.
62	1	Printer IOB identifier.

Hex Displacement	Length in Bytes (in Hex)	Description
63	1	Microprocessor save area.
64	2	Used to build the error code before it is transferred to bytes 04-05.
66	1	System use only.
67	3	Current record number: initialized to hexadecimal 00 at open time and used during pointer mode to indicate the number of records transferred to the buffer since open.
6A	2	Microprocessor save area.
6C	2	The number of logical records remaining to be transferred to the physical buffer in pointer mode.
6E	4	Microprocessor save area.
72	10	System use only.
7C	2	Number of transmissions to the printer physical buffer remaining to be done before the physical I/O buffer will be empty.
7E	2	System use only.

Start-Stop Printers IOB

Following is a general description of the printer IOB for start-stop printers (IBM 5222). Following this general description is a complete description of each field of the IOB. The addresses shown are hexadecimal displacements from the beginning of the IOB. No validity checking is made on any of the values in the bytes of the following IOB. If any of these bytes are modified by the application program, unpredictable results may occur.

00	IOB System Status 1, 2, 3	IOB Chaining Information 1, 2	Page Data and Flags	Error Code 1, 3	Next Instruction Address 1	
08	Command Op Code 1, 2	Command Operands 1, 2, 3	Logical Buffer Address 1, 2, 3	Translate Table Number 2	External Status 1, 3	
10	Address of External Status Subroutine Table 1	Main Micro-processor Flags 1	Data Set Flags 1, 2, 3	Address of Data Set Name 1	Printer Subaddress 1, 2, 3	Partition Address, High 1, 2
18	Physical I/O Buffer 1 Address and Length 1, 2, 3	Microprocessor Save Area 1, 2, 3, 4	Logical Record Length 1, 2	Block Length 1, 2, 3, 4		
20	Physical I/O Buffer 2 Address and Length 2, 3	Microprocessor Save Area	Microprocessor Save Area			
28	Information From the Global Configuration Table	Device Physical Buffer Size 2, 3	Reserved for Configuration Table Information			
30	System Use Only	Physical Record Length 1, 2, 3, 4	Printer Line Length 2, 3, 4	Microprocessor save area		
38	Microprocessor Save Area	Number of Records Remain-ing to fill the Physical Buffer 2, 3, 4	Microprocessor Save Area	Number of Logical Records to Transfer to Buffer 2, 3, 4		
40	SCS Parameters 1					
48	Busy Timer 2, 3, 4	Buffer Address Pointer 2, 3, 4	Data Set Type 1, 2	Status From Printer 2, 3, 4	Sense 0 From Printer 2, 3, 4	
50	Sense 1 From Printer 2, 3, 4	Microprocessor Save Area 2, 3, 4	Command Flag			

<table>
<tr><td>58</td><td colspan="2">Relink Address # 1
2, 3, 4</td><td colspan="2">Relink Address # 3
2, 3, 4</td><td colspan="2">Relink Address # 4
2, 3, 4</td><td colspan="2">Number of Bytes of Physical Buffer Not Being Used</td></tr>
<tr><td>60</td><td colspan="2">Printer Identification
1</td><td>Printer IOB Identifier
1</td><td>Microprocessor Save Area</td><td colspan="2">Error Code Build Area
2, 3, 4</td><td>Relink Address # 2
2, 3, 4</td><td>Current Record Number
1, 2, 3, 4</td></tr>
<tr><td>68</td><td colspan="2">Current Record Number (continued)</td><td colspan="2">Microprocessor Save Area
2, 3, 4</td><td colspan="2">Number of Logical Records Remaining in Pointer Mode
2, 3, 4</td><td>Converted Printer Address
2, 3, 4</td><td>Last Interface Command
2, 3, 4</td></tr>
<tr><td>70</td><td colspan="2">Number of Bytes Remaining to be Transmitted
2, 3, 4</td><td>Retry Counter
2, 3, 4</td><td>Line Band Rate
2, 3, 4</td><td>Block Byte Ctr
2, 3, 4</td><td>Block Size
2, 3, 4</td><td>Last Adapter Status
2, 3, 4</td><td>Last Adapter Data
2, 3, 4</td></tr>
<tr><td>78</td><td>Read ID 1</td><td>Read ID 2</td><td colspan="4">Microprocessor Save Area</td><td colspan="2">System Use Only</td></tr>
</table>

1. Accessed by the main microprocessor.
2. Read by the printer attachment microprocessor.
3. Written by the printer attachment microprocessor.
4. Initialized by the printer attachment microprocessor.

Hex Displacement	Length in Bytes (in Hex)	Description
00	1	IOB System Status:

Bit(s) *Meaning*

0-1 11 = The main microprocessor sent a command to the printer attachment microprocessor. The main microprocessor cannot send another command until the printer microprocessor sets the bits to 00.

10 = The printer attachment microprocessor has completed logical work for the command but is still doing physical work.

01 = System use only.

00 = No command pending. (Printer may still be busy.)

2 1 = The printer attachment microprocessor has physical work to do.

3 1 = The printer attachment microprocessor sets this bit on when it detects an error or external status. The main microprocessor clears the bit and processes the external status with the subroutine indicated.

4-5 System use only.

6 1 = This is the first IOB on the chain.

7 System use only.

Hex Displacement	Length in Bytes (in Hex)	Description
01	1	IOB Chaining Information: *Bit(s)* *Meaning* 0 The printer attachment microprocessor is processing the chain pointer. The main microprocessor cannot use the chaining information when this bit is 1. 1-3 System use only. 4-7 When nonzero, the main microprocessor is accessing the chain pointer.
02	1	High-order byte of the address of the next IOB in the chain.
03	1	Page Data and Flags: *Bit(s)* *Meaning* 0 The low-order address bit of the next IOB in the chain. 1-3 System use only. 4-7 Page number where the next IOB in the chain is located.
04	2	External status error code in 4-byte packed decimal format (only valid if byte 0, bit 3 is 1, but remains valid until the next I/O command is issued to the printer attachment MPU by the main MPU.
06	2	The absolute address of the next sequential instruction following the operation issued to the printer attachment MPU.
08	1	Command op code. See Chapter 4.
09	3	Command operand. These bytes contain the rightmost 3 bytes of the object code instructions. See Chapter 4 for the meanings.
0C	2	Address of the logical buffer, relative to the beginning of the partition.
0E	1	Number of the table used to translate EBCDIC characters to ASCII, ASCII characters to EBCDIC, or other character set translation. Hex FF indicates no translation required.
0F	1	External status category.
10	2	Address of the external status subroutine table.

Hex Displacement	Length in Bytes (in Hex)	Description
12	1	Main Microprocessor Flags: *Bit* — *Meaning When 1* 0 — All external status conditions handled by one subroutine. 1 — An error that cannot occur on any other I/O operation has occurred while opening the data set. 2 — SCS conversion data set; logical buffer is empty. 3 — SCS conversion is in progress for this IOB. 4 — SCS last line status flag. 5 — An error detected by the main microprocessor is outstanding. 6 — CLOZ operation is logically complete. 7 — SCS purge in progress, set during CLOZ operation. Bits 2-7 are set and maintained by the main microprocessor.
13	1	Data Set Flags: *Bit* — *Meaning When 1* 0 — IOB is open.[1] 1 — Logical buffer is within physical buffer. 2 — Double physical buffers are used. 3-4 — Not used. 5 — I/O MPU requires repeat of last command. Main MPU decrements the external status table return address to cause the repeat when a RETURN instruction is used. 6 — System use only. 7 — For main MPU, SCS continuation of transparent data across physical buffers. For diskette, indicates ascending keys.
14	2	Address of the storage area that contains the data set name.

[1] If you issue a second open to a data set without closing the data set and an error occurs during this reopen, another open or a close is required to recover from the error since the data set remains flagged as open. The printer attachment microprocessor will not automatically close the data set because an automatic close precludes error recovery without loss of data. (Also, see note 2.)

[2] For open commands this bit is not set. This allows programs the option of recovery or exit using a return command in external status subroutines. Recovery requires that another open command or a close command follow an error during open. This is not an option to be determined from bit 0 of this byte (see note 1).

Hex Displace-ment	Length in Bytes (in Hex)	Description
16	1	Device Subaddress: *Bit(s)* — *Meaning* 0-1 — Not used (must be 0). 2-4 — Port address (must be 1, 2, 3, or 4). 5-7 — Station address (must be 0).
17	1	High-order byte of the address of the beginning of the partition. The printer attachment microprocessor adds this address to all relative addresses to form the absolute address.
18	2	Byte 18 and byte 19, bit 0 contain the address of the beginning of the physical I/O buffer 1 relative to the beginning of the partition. Byte 19, bits 1-7 contain the number of 128-byte blocks allocated to the buffer in main storage.
1A	2	Microprocessor save area.
1C	2	Logical record length of records in the data set.
1E	2	Block length; can be either 128 or 256. If not specified in program, the block length is set to physical I/O buffer 1 size (maximum length is 256).
20	2	Address of the start of physical I/O buffer 2 relative to the beginning of the partition, and buffer length; same format as bytes 18-19.
22	6	Microprocessor save area.
28	6	Information for the printer attachment MPU from the global configuration table: Byte 28 — Displacement from the beginning of the soft error log to the first entry for this printer. Byte 2A — Number of entries allocated to the soft error log for this printer. Byte 2B — Error encoding type as follows: A0 = Bit encoding 20 = Byte encoding Byte 2C — Adapter type: 00 = Twinaxial printer attachment 02 = Start-stop printer attachment Byte 2D — Number of 128-byte blocks in device physical buffer (2).

Hex Displacement	Length in Bytes (in Hex)	Description
2E	2	Reserved for configuration table information.
30	2	System use only.
32	1	Physical record length.
33	1	Printer line length; set to logical record length at open time. If the logical record length is longer than the maximum print line, zero record length is transmitted to cause the printer to use its default line length.
34	6	Microprocessor save area.
3A	2	Number of logical records remaining to be transferred to fill the physical buffer.
3C	2	Microprocessor save area.
3E	2	Number of logical records that will be transferred to the physical buffer.
40	8	SCS conversion parameters, used only with SCS conversion data sets.

Byte(s)	*Meaning*
40	A pointer into the physical I/O buffer where the data is formatted.
41	The line number of the current line.
42	The line that generates external status.
43	The page size.
44-45	The address of the format table entry being processed on open, which contains the SGEA (set graphic error action) parameters. After open, byte 44 has the number of blanks processed, and byte 45 has the number of bytes processed in the logical buffer.
46	The number of characters processed in the line.
47	The number of characters per line.

48	2	Busy timer count value used to delay while waiting for a response from the printer.
4A	2	Pointer to the data buffer containing the data to be transmitted. This pointer is incremented by the value of byte 75 when a block of data has been successfully transmitted.

Hex Displace-ment	Length in Bytes (in Hex)	Description
4C	1	Data Set Type: *Bit(s)* *Meaning* 0 1 = Read allowed (causes error code 2402). 1 1 = Write allowed. 2 Not used. 3 1 = Write shared. (A printer may be used by more than one IOB.) 4-7 Not used.
4D	1	Data Set Type: *Bit(s)* *Meaning* 0 1 = Early write data set. (Transmit a logical record each time it is transferred to the physical buffer.) 1 Not used. 2 Always 0. 3 Not used. 4 1 = SCS conversion requested. 5 1 = Pointer mode data set. 6-7 Not used.
4E	1	Last status from printer when error condition was detected; also placed in system hard error table.
4F	1	Printer sense 0 data byte; also placed in the system hard error table.
50	1	Printer sense 1 data byte; also placed in the system hard error table.
51	6	Microprocessor save area.
57	1	Command flags; indicates the last command issued.
58	2	Relink #1 address.
5A	2	Relink #3 address.
5C	2	Relink #4 address.
5E	2	Number of bytes of the physical buffer not being used.
60	2	Printer ID.
62	1	Printer IOB identifier.

Hex Displacement	Length in Bytes (in Hex)	Description
63	1	Microprocessor save area.
64	2	Used to build the error code before it is transferred to bytes 04-05.
66	1	Relink #2 low address.
67	3	Current record number: initialized to hexadecimal 00 at open time and used during pointer mode to indicate the number of records transferred to the buffer since open.
6A	2	Microprocessor save area.
6C	2	The number of logical records remaining to be transferred to the physical buffer in pointer mode.
6E	1	Converted device address 20 = Device address 8008 10 = Device address 8010 08 = Device address 8018 04 = Device address 8020
6F	1	Last command to printer over the start-stop interface.
70	2	Number of bytes remaining to be transmitted.
72	1	Retry counter.
73	1	Adapter baud rate: Hex 80 = 1200/2400 baud Hex 81 = 4800/9600 baud
74	1	Block byte counter - the number of bytes remaining to be transmitted from this block.
75	1	Block size - Defines number of bytes to transmit in a block (16).
76	1	Last adapter status read.
77	1	Last data read from adapter.
78	1	Read ID byte 0.
79	1	Read ID byte 1.
7A	4	Microprocessor save area.
7E	2	System use only.

SYSTEM TABLES

System tables contain the addresses of certain data areas. When an assembler source program allocates and labels one of these data areas, the system stores the address of the area in the appropriate system table. When a source program instruction refers to one of these data areas, the instruction specifies the label assigned to the area. Then when the source program is assembled, the assembler converts the label to the index into the system table where the address of that data area is stored. During program execution, when an object code instruction contains a system table index, the system finds the address of the area at that index into the appropriate system table.

System tables may be located within a main storage partition or within the common area. System tables within the partition contain addresses of data areas within the partition. System tables within the common area contain addresses of global data areas located in the common area. The partition or device IOB contain the addresses of the system tables within the partition. The system control block contains the addresses of the system tables in the common area.

The data areas that are addressed through a system table are the:

- Data tables
- Edit format control strings
- Screen format control strings
- Prompts and constant inserts
- Main storage duplicate areas (cannot be in the common area)

System Table for Data Tables

The system table for data tables is built by the assembler when it processes the .TABLE control statements; one system table entry is generated from each .TABLE control statement. The address of the system table for data tables that are located within the partition is in the partition IOB at relative address hex 18. The address of the system table for global data tables is in the system control block at absolute address hex F9.

The system table for data tables within the partition consists of one 8-byte entry for each data table. The format of the 8-byte entry is as follows:

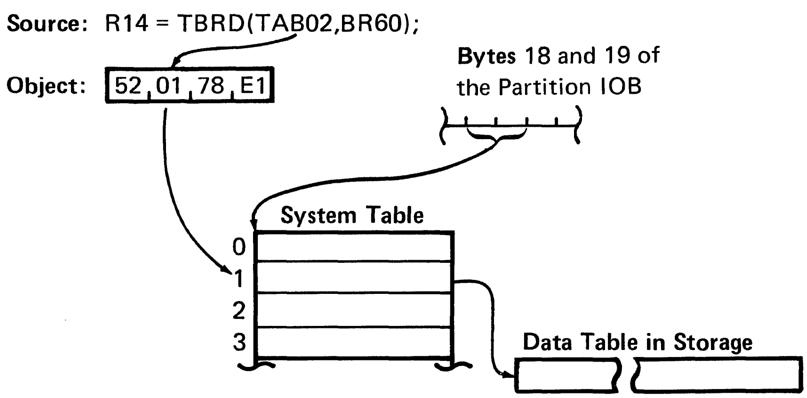
Bytes	Meaning
0-1	Table address: the relative address of the data table
2-3	Entry number: the number of the last table entry used
4	Entry length: the number of bytes minus 1 of a table entry
5	Bypass length: the length of the bypass portion of the table entry
6-7	Maximum entries: the maximum number of entries the table can have

The index for the system table for tables within the partition must be in the range 0 through 127. The index for the system table for global tables must be in the range 128 through 254. The first two global tables are reserved for system error tables; one global table may be an ASCII translate table.

The system table for global tables must always be located on storage page zero. The entries are 10 bytes long, in the following format:

Bytes	Bits	Meaning
0	0	Lock bit 0 = Table locked only for 1 table instruction. 1 = Table locked by TLCK instruction until TUNLCK instruction is issued.
	1-2	Not used
	3	0 = Valid partition number in bits 4-7. 1 = No valid partition number in bits 4-7.
	4-7	Partition number of partition using the table
1	0-3	Storage page number where the table is located
	4-7	0001 = First main processor is accessing the table. 0010 = Second main processor is accessing the table.
2-9		As for bytes 0-7 of system table for data tables within the partition.

An object code table instruction contains the system table index for the table to access in the second byte of the 4-byte instruction. The following illustration shows how the system table index is used to access a data table within the partition. The data table labeled TAB02 was the second table set up with a .TABLE control statement.



System Table for Edit Format Control Strings

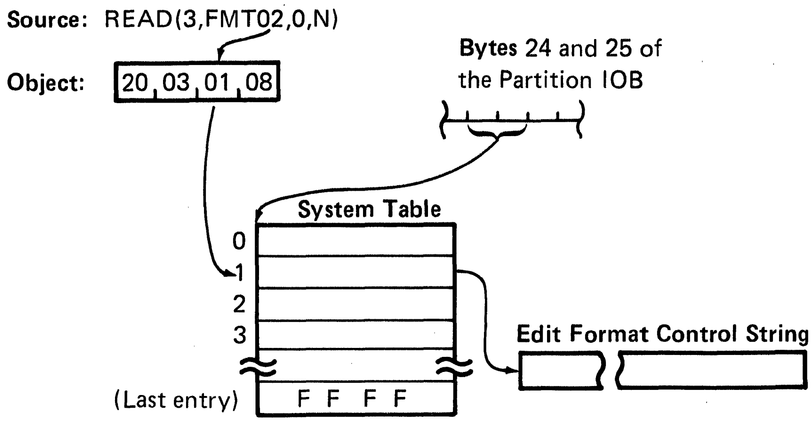
The system table for edit format control strings is built by the assembler when it processes the .FMT control statements; one system table entry is generated by each series of .FMT control statements. The address of the system table for edit format control strings that are located within the partition is stored in the partition IOB, at relative address 24. The address of the system table for global edit format control strings is stored in the system control block at absolute address hex EE. The system table for global edit format control strings must always be located on storage page 0.

The system table for edit format control strings located within a partition consists of one 2-byte entry for each control string. The 2-byte entry contains the address, relative to the beginning of the partition, where the control string is located. There may be up to 127 edit format control strings within a partition, represented by system table indexes 0 through 126. The last entry in the system table for edit format control strings always contains hex FFFF. If no edit formats are set up with the .FMT control statement series in a source program, a system table for edit format control strings is built; the only 2-byte entry in the table contains FFFF.

The system table for global edit format control strings consists of one 3-byte entry for each global edit format control string. The 3-byte entry contains the storage page number in the first byte, and the control string address (relative to the beginning of the storage page) in the second and third bytes. There may be up to 127 global edit format control strings (numbered 128 to 254), represented in the system table with indexes 0 through 126, where index 0 represents format 128. The last entry in the system table always contains hex FFFF.

When a source program instruction refers to an edit format, it includes the format label. The assembler converts the label to a format number from 0 to 127.

The following illustration shows how the system table is used to find an edit format control string that is located within the partition. In the illustration, FMT02 is the second edit format set up with a .FMT control statement series.



System Table for Screen Format Control Strings

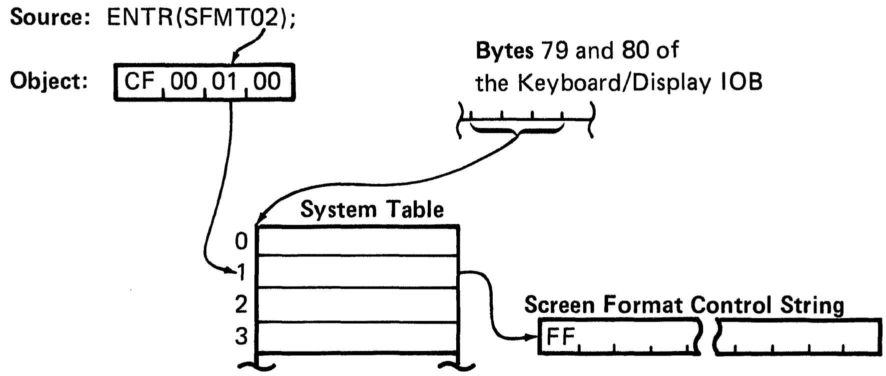
The system table for screen format control strings is built by the assembler when it processes the .SFMT control statements; one system table entry is generated from each series of .SFMT control statements. The address of the system table for screen format control strings that are located within the partition is stored in the keyboard/display IOB at hex 79, relative to the start of the IOB. The address of the system table for global screen format control strings is stored in the system control block, with the storage page number at hex FB and the address at hex FC.

The system table for screen format control strings that are located within the partition consists of one 2-byte entry for each control string. The 2-byte entry contains the address, relative to the beginning of the partition, where the control string is located. There may be up to 256 control strings within a partition, represented by system table indexes 0 through 255.

The system table for global screen format control strings consists of one 2-byte entry for each global control string. The 2-byte entry contains the address, relative to the beginning of the storage page (in hex FB), where the control string is located. There may be up to 256 global control strings represented by system table indexes 0 through 255. The first global screen format control string is used by the system for the standard load prompt.

The ENTR command in the source program includes the label of the screen control format to use. The assembler converts the label to the system table index, and also determines whether the control string is within the partition or in the common area. If the control string is within the common area, bit 9 of the 4-byte object code instruction is set to 1. During program execution, if bit 9 equals 1 the address of the system table is taken from the system control block. If bit 9 equals 0 the address of the system table is taken from the keyboard/display IOB within the partition.

The following illustration shows how the system table is used to find a screen format control string that is located within the partition. In the illustration, the screen format labeled SFMT02 was the second screen control format set up with a series of .SFMT control statements.



System Table for Prompts and Constant Inserts

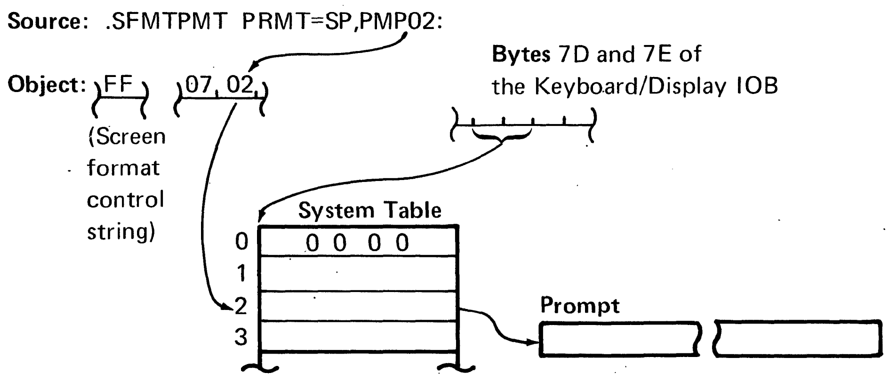
The system table for prompts and constant inserts is built by the assembler when it processes .DC control statements with the parameter TYPE=PRMT. The address of the system table for prompts and constant inserts that are located within the partition is stored in the keyboard/display IOB at hex 7D, relative to the start of the IOB. The address of the system table for global prompts and constant inserts is stored in the system control block at absolute address hex FE. The storage page number where the system table is located is stored in the system control block at hex FB. (It must be on the same storage page as the system table for global screen format control strings.)

The system table for prompts and constant inserts that are located within the partition consists of one 2-byte entry for each prompt or constant insert. The 2-byte entry contains the address, relative to the beginning of the partition, where the prompt or constant insert is located. The first entry in the system table always contains 2 bytes of zeros. The address of the first prompt or constant insert is at index 1 in the table.

The system table for global prompts and constant inserts consists of one 2-byte entry for each global prompt and constant insert. The 2-byte entry contains the address, relative to the beginning of the storage page, where the prompt or constant insert is located. The first entry contains 2 bytes of zeros. The first prompt or constant insert is at index 1 in the table. During program execution, if the screen format control string that referred to the prompt or constant insert is a global screen format control string (indicated by bit 9 of the object code ENTR command), the system table for global prompts and constant inserts is used.

In a source program, a prompt is referred to in a .SFMTPMT control statement; a constant insert is referred to in a .SFMTCNS control statement. The assembler converts the labels included in the control statements to system table indexes. During program execution, when a screen format control string refers to a prompt or constant insert system table index, the system finds the address of the prompt or constant insert in the system table at that index.

The following illustration shows how the system table is used to find a prompt that is located within the partition. The prompt labeled PMP02 was the second prompt set up by a .DC control statement with the TYPE=PRMT parameter.



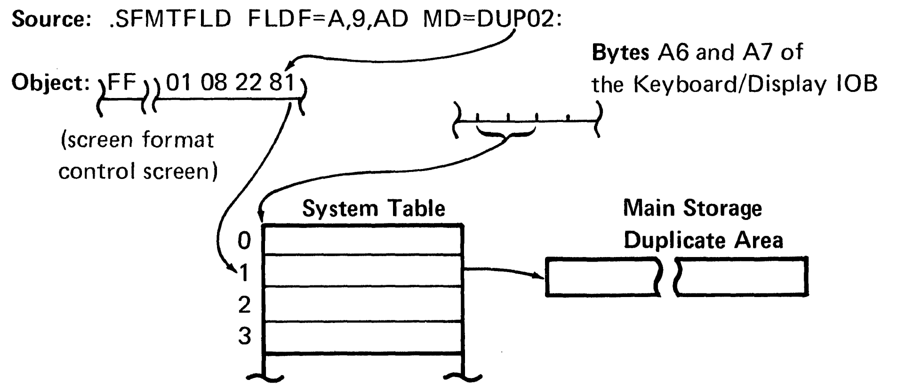
System Table for Main Storage Duplicate Areas

The system table for main storage duplicate areas is built when the assembler processes the .DC control statements that have the parameter TYPE=MDUP. The address of the system table for main storage duplicate areas that are located within the partition is stored in the keyboard/display IOB at hex displacement A6. Global main storage duplicate areas cannot be specified.

The system table for main storage duplicate areas consists of one 2-byte entry for each main storage duplicate area within the partition. The 2-byte entry contains the address, relative to the beginning of the partition, where the area is located. The address of the first main storage duplicate area is in the system table at index 0.

In a source program, a main storage duplicate area is referred to in an .SFMTFLD control statement with an MD=label (duplicate from the label) or an MS=label (store to the label) parameter. The assembler converts the labels to system indexes. During program execution, when a screen format control string refers to a system table index, the system finds the address of the main storage duplicate area in the system table at that index.

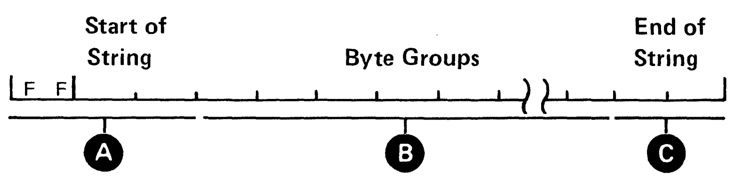
The following illustration shows how the system table is used to find a main storage duplicate area. In the illustration, the area labeled DUP02 is the second main storage duplicate area set up by a .DC control statement with a TYPE=MDUP parameter.



SCREEN FORMAT CONTROL STRINGS

The keyboard/display microprocessor uses screen format control strings to format and check data that is entered via the keyboard, displayed on the screen, and stored in the current record buffer in main storage. Screen format control strings are assembled as specified in the source program. For example, with the assembler language, screen formats are specified by the .SFMTST, .SFMTCNS, .SFMTPMT, .SFMCTL, .SFMTFLD, and .SFMTEND statements.

Control information, data fields, prompts, and display attributes are specified by a byte or a byte group in the control string. The order in which the control string is assembled is the order in which the string is processed. The following diagram is a generation description of the contents of the control string. Following this general description is a complete description of each type of specification that can be in the control string.



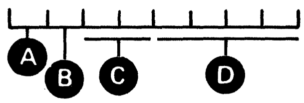
A Each screen format control string must begin with hex FF, followed by a byte group ID and control byte that indicates the start of the screen format control string. See *Start of Control String* under *Control Byte Group.*

B Each byte group contains an ID (see *Byte Group ID*) and other bytes to describe a control specification (see *Control Byte Group*), data field (see *Data Field Byte Groups*), prompt (see *Constant Insert Data and Prompts*), or display attribute (see *Display Attributes*).

C A byte group ID and control byte that indicates the end of the screen format control string. See *End of Control String* under *Control Byte Group.*

Byte Group ID

The type of format specification in each byte group in the control string is identified by the first byte of the group as follows:



A 1 = This is the last byte of the group.[4]

B 1 = Return control to the object code program.[3]

C
00 = Field is neither right-adjust nor field exit required.
01 = Field is right-adjust, alphabetic fill.[1]
10 = Field is field exit required.
11 = Field is right-adjust, numeric fill.[1]

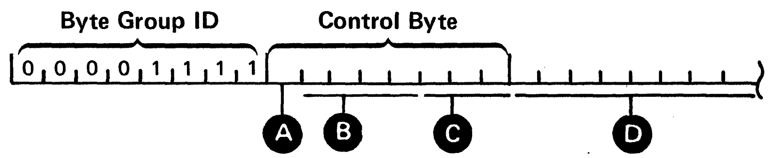
D
0000 = Field is picture check field.[1]
0001 = Field is alphabetic.
0010 = Field is numeric.
0011 = Field is hex.
0100 = Field is Katakana.
0101 = Format level zero.
0110 = Fixed position prompt.
0111 = Standard prompt or constant insert data.
1000 = Invalid specification.[2]
1001 = Field is alphabetic only.
1010 = Field is numeric only.
1011 = Field is digits only.
1100 = Field is Katakana only.
1101 = Invalid specification.[2]
1110 = Display attribute.
1111 = Control specification (see *Control Byte Group*).

---

[1] If picture check is specified, the field cannot be right-adjust or processed right to left.
[2] Bit values 1000 and 1101 cause external status for invalid format control string to be posted.
[3] If bit 1 is on, the keyboard/display microprocessor returns control to the object code program. When the control string is processed forward, control returns after the format group is processed. When the control string is processed backward (a backspace key was pressed), control returns before the format group is processed.
[4] Bit 0 of each byte in the control string indicates whether this byte is the last byte of a group.

Control Byte Group

Control (such as start of control string and end of control string) is specified in the control string by one or more control bytes. The control byte(s) always follow a control string byte group ID.



A 1 = Last byte of this control byte group.

B Control Code Modifiers: See *Control Code Description.*

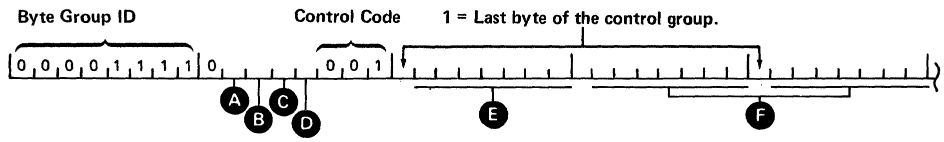
C Control Code (see *Control Code Description*):

000 = Invalid code.
001 = Change pointer position.
010 = Start of control string.
011 = End of control string.
100 = Check indicator for bypass.
101 = Execute secondary format.
110 = Invalid code.
111 = Change keyboard flags.

D Additional Control Bytes: Used for codes 001, 100, 101.

000 Invalid Code: Control code 000 or 110 causes external status for invalid control string to be posted.

001 Change Pointer Position: Control code 001 causes the microprocessor to change the screen position pointer and/or the current record buffer pointer as follows:



A 1 = Change the screen position pointer.

B 1 = Change the current record buffer position pointer.

C 0 = Add the number of positions to the pointer if the string is processed forward; subtract the number of positions if the string is processed backward.

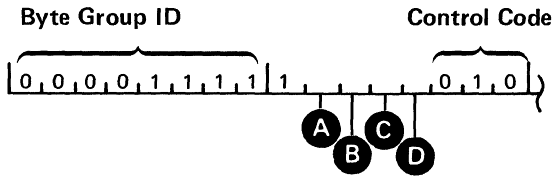
1 = Subtract the number of positions from the pointer if the string is processed forward; add the number of positions if the string is processed backward.

D Not used.

E Number minus 1 of positions to move the pointer if less than 128; otherwise this byte contains 7F and the next 2 bytes indicate the number minus 1 to move the pointer.

F Number minus 1 of positions to move the pointer if the previous byte = 7F.

010 Start of Control String: Control code 010 indicates the start of a screen format control string, as follows:



A 1 = Begin this screen format at the current screen position.

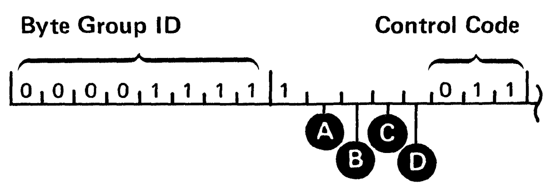
0 = Begin this screen format at row 2, column 1.

B Not used.

C 1 = In enter mode, move prompts and display attributes to the screen, and move data from the current record buffer to the screen. (In modes other than enter, this function is performed automatically.)

D 1 = Clear the screen (except the status line) before any function is performed.

011 End of Control String: Code 011 indicates the end of the format control string as follows:



A 1 = Buffer keystrokes at end of record.

B 1 = Sound the buzzer.

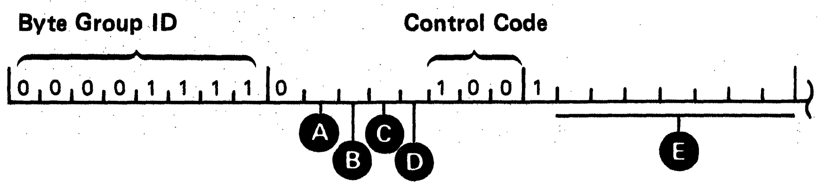
C 1 = Clear the screen except for the status line.

D Not used.

For a primary format, end of control string is processed at record advance time and during a cancel ENTR operation (CNENTR). The status line counters, field shift, and hex display are set to blanks and external status condition 6 is posted to the object program. For a secondary format, end of control string modifiers are ignored; end of control string indicates the end of the secondary format.

100 Check Indicator for Bypass: A check indicator for bypass control group is located at the beginning of and at the end of the end of the section of control string to be conditionally bypassed. If the indicator has the value specified for bypass, all field, display attribute, constant insert, and prompt specifications are bypassed. However, the cursor and current record buffer pointer are moved past the space on the screen and in the current record buffer where the bypassed fields, display attributes, constant inserts, and prompts would have appeared. If the bypass specifications are encountered in a forward direction, the current field counter is incremented by the number of fields bypassed. If the bypass specifications are encountered in a backward direction, the current field counter is decremented. If a return to program (RG), change buffer position pointer (BFPS), change screen position pointer (CSPS), or control specification to change status is encountered during bypass, it is processed as normal. If an execute secondary format (ES) specification is encountered, the fields and control specifications of the secondary format are processed as described above for a bypass.

The check indicator for bypass control group has the following format:



A 1 = Beginning of format string byte groups to bypass.

0 = End of format string byte groups to bypass.

B 1 = Bypass if the indicator is off.

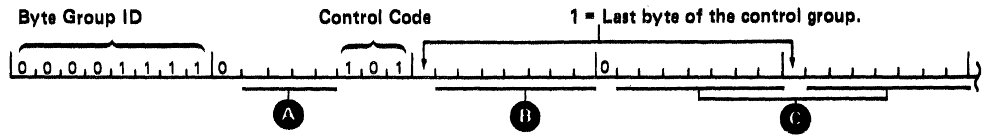
0 = Bypass if the indicator is on.

C Not used.

D Not used.

E Indicator Number (0-127)

101 Execute Secondary Format: The execute secondary format control group causes the keyboard/display microprocessor to interrupt processing this string, process a secondary control string, and return to this string. The format of the execute secondary format control group is as follows:

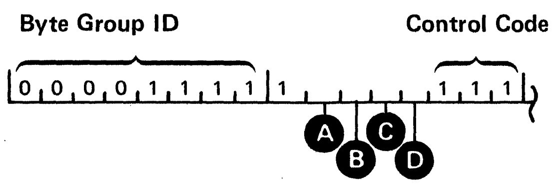


A Not used.

B Index into the system table for screen format control strings, where the address of the secondary format is stored, if the index is less than 128; otherwise this byte contains 7F and the index is specified by the following 2 bytes.

C If the previous byte is 7F, these bits specify the index into the system table, where the address of the secondary format is stored.

111 Change Keyboard Flags: The change keyboard flags control group causes the microprocessor to change the status of the keyboard flags. That is, if the flag is on, it is turned off; if it is off, it is turned on. The keyboard flags are turned off at the start of the processing of each ENTR command.



A 1 = Change the status of the Dup key enable/disable flag.

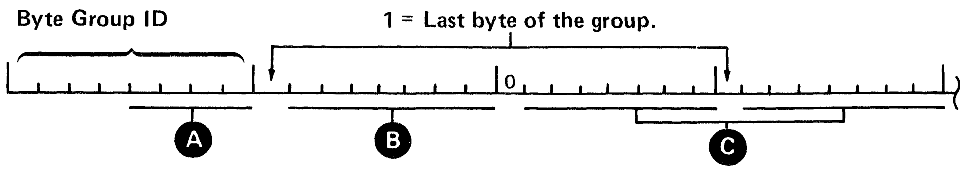
B 1 = Change the status of the monocase enable/disable flag.

C 1 = Change the status of the Field Exit key enable/disable flag.

D 1 = Change the status of the special verify mode enable/disable flag.

Data Field Byte Groups

A data field byte group specifies the format of a data field as it is entered via the keyboard, displayed on the screen, and stored in the current record buffer. The field starts at the current screen position and current record buffer pointer position. Data fields longer than 1 byte require a length specification in the data field format group as shown in the following diagram:



A Byte Group ID—Must specify one of the following:

0000 (picture check)	0101 (format level 0)
0001 (alphabetic)	1001 (alphabetic only)
0010 (numeric)	1010 (numeric only)
0011 (hexadecimal)	1011 (digits only)
0100 (Katakana)	1100 (Katakana only)

B Field length minus 1 if the field length is less than 128; otherwise, this byte contains 7F and the following 2 bytes specify the length minus 1.

C If the previous byte is 7F, these bits specify the length minus 1 of the field.

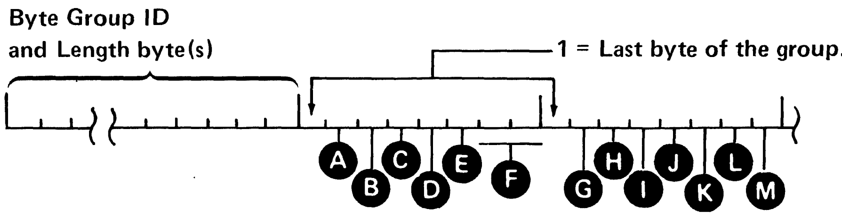
A data field with only the following attributes requires only the byte group ID and (if the field is longer than 1 byte) the field length byte(s) to describe the field in the screen format control string:

- Basic field
- Format level zero field
- Right adjust field (must be at least 2 characters in length)
- Field exit required field
- Manual duplicate field from the previous buffer

A data field with additional attributes requires additional bytes to specify field attributes, storage duplication areas, or picture specifications.

Field Attributes and Storage Duplication Group

Field attributes may be specified with 1 or 2 bytes, as necessary. For store and duplicate fields, the attribute byte(s) must be followed by additional byte(s) that specify where to find the address of the duplicate or store area. The format is as follows:



A 1 = Another attribute byte follows this attribute byte.

B 1 = Main storage duplicate field.[1]

C 1 = Verify bypass field.

D 1 = Signed numeric field.

E 1 = Data required field.

F 00 = Field is not auto dup, auto skip, or bypass.
01 = Auto skip field.
10 = Auto dup field.
11 = Bypass field.

G Not used.

H 1 = Main storage store field.[1]

I 1 = Right to left field.

J 1 = Absolutely automatic field.

K 1 = Blank check field.

L 1 = Mandatory enter field.

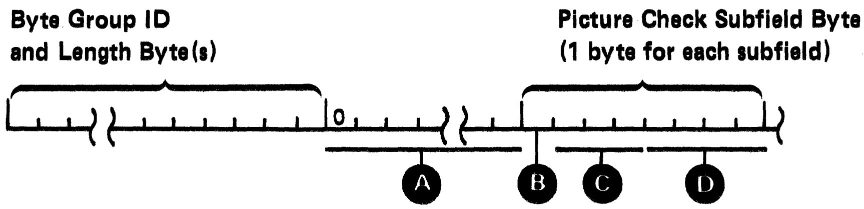
M 1 = Mandatory fill field.

---

[1] For main storage duplicate and store fields, an index specification must follow the attribute byte(s). The index specification is 1 byte long if the index is less than 126; it is 3 bytes long if the index is 126 or greater (see *Execute Secondary Format*) under *Control Byte Group* for the format of the index specification. The index specified is the entry number into the system table for main storage duplicate areas, where the address of the duplicate area is located. The address of the system table is in bytes hex 46 and 47 of the keyboard/display IOB.

Picture Check Subfield Group

Following are the specifications for picture check subfields:



A Field Attribute Byte(s): See *Field Attributes and Storage Duplication Group,* the previous topic in this section.

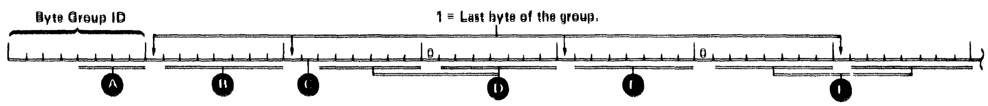
B 1 = Last byte in this group.

C Subfield Length Minus 1 (0-7).

D 0001 = Subfield is alphabetic.
0010 = Subfield is numeric.
0011 = Subfield is hex.
0100 = Subfield is Katakana.
1001 = Subfield is alphabetic only.
1010 = Subfield is numeric only.
1011 = Subfield is digits only.
1100 = Subfield is Katakana only.

Constant Insert Data and Prompts

Constant insert format groups specify the location and the length of constant insert data to be moved to the screen and inserted into the current record buffer. Prompt format groups specify the length and location of a prompt to be moved to the screen fixed prompt line or to current screen position. Following are the control string specifications for constant insert and prompts:



A 0110 = Fixed position prompt.
0111 = Standard prompt or constant insert.

B Index into the system table for prompts, where the address of the prompt is stored if the index is less than 126; otherwise this byte is 7F and the index is specified in the following 2 bytes. For constant inserts, this byte must be 7F.[2]

If this byte is xx000000, the fixed prompt line is cleared.[1]

C 1 = Specification is for constant insert data.
0 = Specification is for prompt.

D If the previous byte is 7F, these bits specify the index into the system table, where the address of the constant insert or prompt is stored.

E Length minus 1 of the constant insert or prompt if the length is less than 128; otherwise, this byte is 7F and the length minus 1 is specified by the following 2 bytes.[1]

F If the previous byte is 7F, these bits specify the length minus 1.[1]

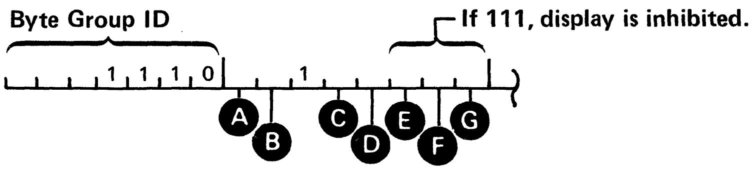
---

[1] If clear the fixed prompt line is specified, the prompt line is cleared (the number of positions specified in the length bytes of the format group) beginning with the first position of the line. If the length is not specified in the format group, the full line is cleared.

[2] If the constant insert or prompt is stored within the partition, the address of the system table is in bytes hex 0D and 0E (address hex 8D and 8E relative to the start of the partition) of the keyboard/display IOB. If the constant insert or prompt is stored within the common area, the address of the system table is in bytes hex FE and FF of the system control block.

Display Attributes

A display attribute format specification consists of 2 bytes, the format identifier and a display attribute byte, as shown below. The display attribute is moved to the screen at the current screen position.



A 1 = Last byte in the group.

B Not used.

C 1 = Column separators displayed.

D 1 = Blink.

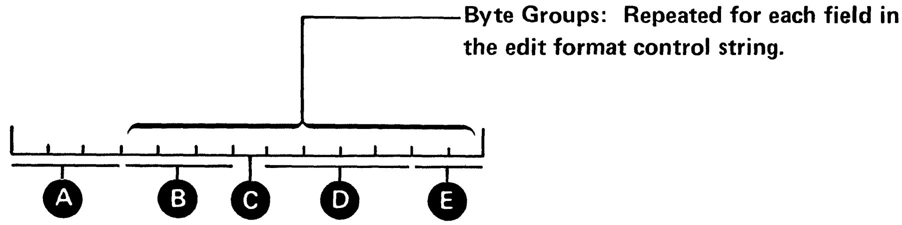
E 1 = Underline.

F 1 = High intensity.

G 1 = Reverse image.

EDIT FORMAT CONTROL STRINGS

Control information and field descriptions are specified by groups of bytes in an edit format control string. The order in which the control string is assembled is the order in which the string is processed. The following diagram is a general description of an edit format control string. Following this general description is a description of each type of specification that can be in the control string.



A Header bytes: 3 header bytes always begin a format control string. If data directed formatting is used, these bytes specify the condition character information.

B End Flag and Displacement: 1 or 3 bytes that indicate the last control string in a series and specify the displacement of the field from the previous field.

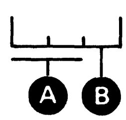
C Edit Flags: 1 byte that indicates data types and edit control information.

D Buffer and Storage Specifications: 4 bytes indicate buffer length and the length and address of the storage area to which, or from which, data is moved.

E Optional Bytes: See *Second Optional Edit Control Byte* and *Picture Specification* under *Byte Groups.*

Header Bytes

The first 3 bytes of a control string are header bytes. If a condition character is used for data directed formatting, the header bytes specify the condition character and the position in the record where the condition character is located.



A Condition Character Position: The displacement minus 1 from the left of the I/O buffer where the character is located. If no condition character is specified, these bytes contain hex FFFF.

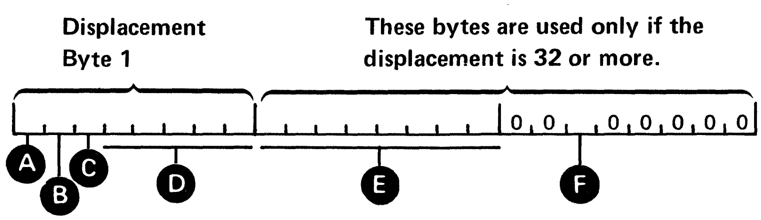
B Condition Character: If no condition character is specified, this byte contains a blank (hex 40).

The header bytes are followed by a series of field description and edit control bytes. Each field in the record is represented by one group of bytes, which begin with the end flag and displacement bytes.

Byte Groups

End Flag and Displacement

One or three bytes specify the displacement from the rightmost position of the previous field to the rightmost position of the current field. The displacement byte also contains a flag that indicates the end of the format control string series. If the displacement is less than 32, 1 byte contains the displacement and the end flag. If the displacement is greater than or equal to 32, 3 bytes are used: the first 2 bytes specify the displacement, and the third byte contains the end flag.



A Displacement Length:

0 = Displacement is less than 32; displacement value is specified by bits 3 to 7 of this byte.
1 = Displacement is 32 or greater; displacement value is specified by bits 3 to 7 of this byte and bits 0 to 7 of the next byte. A third byte is used for the end flag.

B Displacement direction:

0 = Forward displacement.
1 = Backward displacement.

C End flag: 1 = last in this series.

D Displacement: If bit 0 of this byte is 0, this is the displacement. If bit 0 of this byte is 1, this is the high-order 5 bits of the displacement.

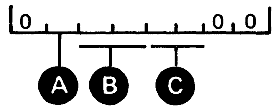
E Displacement Byte 2: The low-order 8 bits of a displacement of 32 or more.

F End Flag:

0 = Not last in series.
1 = Last in this series.

Edit Flags

The edit flags specify the data type of the data that is moved to or from the I/O buffer, and the type of the I/O buffer. They also indicate whether the optional bytes are used to specify edit or picture descriptions.



A Data Type:

0 = Binary.
1 = Decimal.

B I/O Buffer Type:

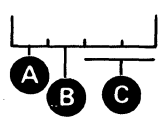
00 = Binary buffer.
10 = Decimal buffer.
11 = Hexadecimal buffer.
01 is not valid.

C Optional Bytes specification:

00 = No optional edit bytes or picture specifications are used.
01 = One optional edit byte is used.
10 = Two optional edit bytes are used.
11 = Picture specification is used.

Buffer and Storage Specifications

Four bytes specify the number of positions in the I/O buffer and in the storage area the field uses, and the address of the storage area.



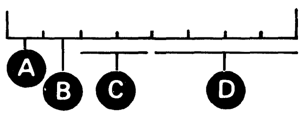
A I/O buffer positions: The number minus 1 of positions the field uses in the I/O buffer.

B Storage positions: The number minus 1 of positions the field uses in the storage area.

C Storage Address: The address of the beginning of the storage area to which, or from which, data is moved.

First Optional Edit Control Byte

This edit control byte may be used only when a decimal buffer is used. If a picture specification is used for the field, this edit control byte is not used, the picture specification follows the storage area address in the edit format control string. The decimal control character, comma control character, and currency control character are found in the partition IOB.



A Comma Control:

0 = No comma control.
1 = Insert the comma control character to separate groups of digits.

B Decimal Control:

0 = Insert blank (hex 40) between the decimal and fraction portions of a number.
1 = Insert decimal control character between the decimal and fraction portions of a number.

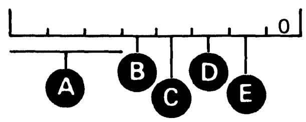
C Fill Character:

00 = Blank fill.
01 = Zero fill.
10 = Asterisk (*) fill.
11 = Floating currency character.

D Displacement from the right of the field to the position where the decimal control character is to be inserted, or 0000 if decimal control is not being used.

Second Optional Edit Control Byte

This edit control byte may be used only when a decimal buffer is used. If a picture specification is used for the field, this edit control byte is not used; the picture specification follows the storage area address in the format control string. The decimal control character, comma control character, and currency control character are found in the partition IOB.



A Sign control:

000 = Do not change sign zone in the buffer.
001 = Change sign zone in the buffer to positive (hex F).
100 = Insert blank or minus sign in the field.
101 = Insert a minus or plus sign in the field.
110 = Insert two blanks or the characters CR in the field.
111 = Insert two blanks or the characters DB in the field.

B Zero Suppress Control: Valid only with insert decimal.

0 = Force 0 to the left of the decimal control character if the field is 0.
1 = Blank fill if result is 0, unless edit characters are specified to appear in the field.

C Date Edit Control:

0 = No date edit.
1 = Date edit (bit 5 may be 0 or 1, and all other bits must be 0).

D Date Edit Control Character:

0 = Use a slash for data edit (mm/dd/yy).
1 = Use a period for date edit (mm.dd.yy).

E Currency Control Character:

0 = No fixed currency character.
1 = Fixed currency character.

Picture Specification

Picture specifications are used only to write to a decimal buffer. If a picture specification is used, the optional edit control bytes are omitted; in the format control string, the first picture byte follows the storage area address.

A picture specification consists of a series of 1-byte hex codes. Each hex code pertains to the corresponding byte in the decimal buffer. Each series of hex codes, ending with an end of string byte, describes one subfield of the current field description. Picture specifications are of variable length; however, a picture specification for a global format is limited to 10 bytes, including the end of string byte.

Hex Code **Meaning**

00 Decimal digit. A decimal digit is accepted in the corresponding position of the buffer. Example:

Subfield Input	*Hex Codes*	*Output to Buffer*
12345	0000000000	12345

01 Suppress leading zeros. If the character in this subfield position is a leading zero, it is replaced with a blank in the buffer. Example:

Subfield Input	*Hex Codes*	*Output to Buffer*
00123	0101010000	123

02 Insert blank. A blank is inserted into this position in the buffer. Example:

Subfield Input	*Hex Codes*	*Output to Buffer*
12345	0000020000	12 345

03 Insert blank if zero. If the character in this subfield position is zero, it is replaced with a blank in the buffer. Example:

Subfield Input	*Hex Codes*	*Output to Buffer*
10203	0303030000	1 203

04 Insert asterisk. If this subfield position is a leading zero, it is replaced with an asterisk in the buffer. Example:

Subfield Input	*Hex Codes*	*Output to Buffer*
00123	0404040404	**123

Hex Code	Meaning
05	Insert comma character. A comma character is inserted into the buffer at this position unless zero suppression has occurred. If zero suppression has occurred, a blank is inserted. Examples:

Subfield Input	Hex Codes	Output to Buffer
00123	010105000000	123
00123	000005000000	00,123

Hex Code	Meaning
06	Insert slash. A slash is inserted into the buffer at this position unless zero suppress has occurred. If zero suppression has occurred, a blank is inserted. Examples:

Subfield Input	Hex Codes	Output to Buffer
000285	0101060101060101	2/85
000285	0000060000060000	00/02/85

Hex Code	Meaning
07	Insert decimal character. A decimal character is inserted into the buffer at this position unless zero suppression has occurred. If zero suppression has occurred, a blank is inserted. Examples:

Subfield Input	Hex Codes	Output to Buffer
123456	0005000000070000	1,234.56
0001	0101070101	1

Hex Code	Meaning
08	Stop zero suppression. Zero suppression is stopped at this position in the buffer. This code must be followed by a 05, 06, or 07 code. The 08 code does not insert a blank or any character into a buffer position. Example:

Subfield Input	Hex Codes	Output to Buffer
0001	010108070000	.01

Hex Code	Meaning
09	Insert currency character. A fixed currency character is inserted into the buffer if only one 09 code is used. If an 09 code is placed into every leading digit position of the subfield, a floating currency character is placed into the buffer at the left of the most significant digit. The currency character requires two bytes of buffer space. Examples:

Subfield Input	Hex Codes	Output to Buffer
01234	09010101070101	$ 12.34
01234	090909070000	$12.34

Hex Code	Meaning
0A	Insert minus sign. If the field value is negative, a minus sign is inserted into this position of the buffer. Example:

Subfield Input	*Hex Codes*	*Output to Buffer*
00012	0A0101010101	- 12

0B	Insert plus sign. If the field value is positive, a plus sign is inserted into this position of the buffer. Example:

Subfield Input	*Hex Codes*	*Output to Buffer*
12345	0B0000000000	+12345

0C	Insert sign. The appropriate sign is inserted into this position of the buffer. Example:

Subfield Input	*Hex Codes*	*Output to Buffer*
12345	0C00000000	-12345

0D	Insert CR. If the value of the subfield is negative, the characters CR are inserted into the buffer. If the value is positive, the two buffer positions are blank. Example:

Subfield Input	*Hex Codes*	*Output to Buffer*
00123	0101010101010D	123CR

0E	Insert DB. If the value of the subfield is negative, the characters DB are inserted into the buffer. If the value is positive, the two buffer positions are blank.
0F	End of string flag. The hex code string for each subfield must end with 0F.

Chapter 3. Keyboard/Display Storage

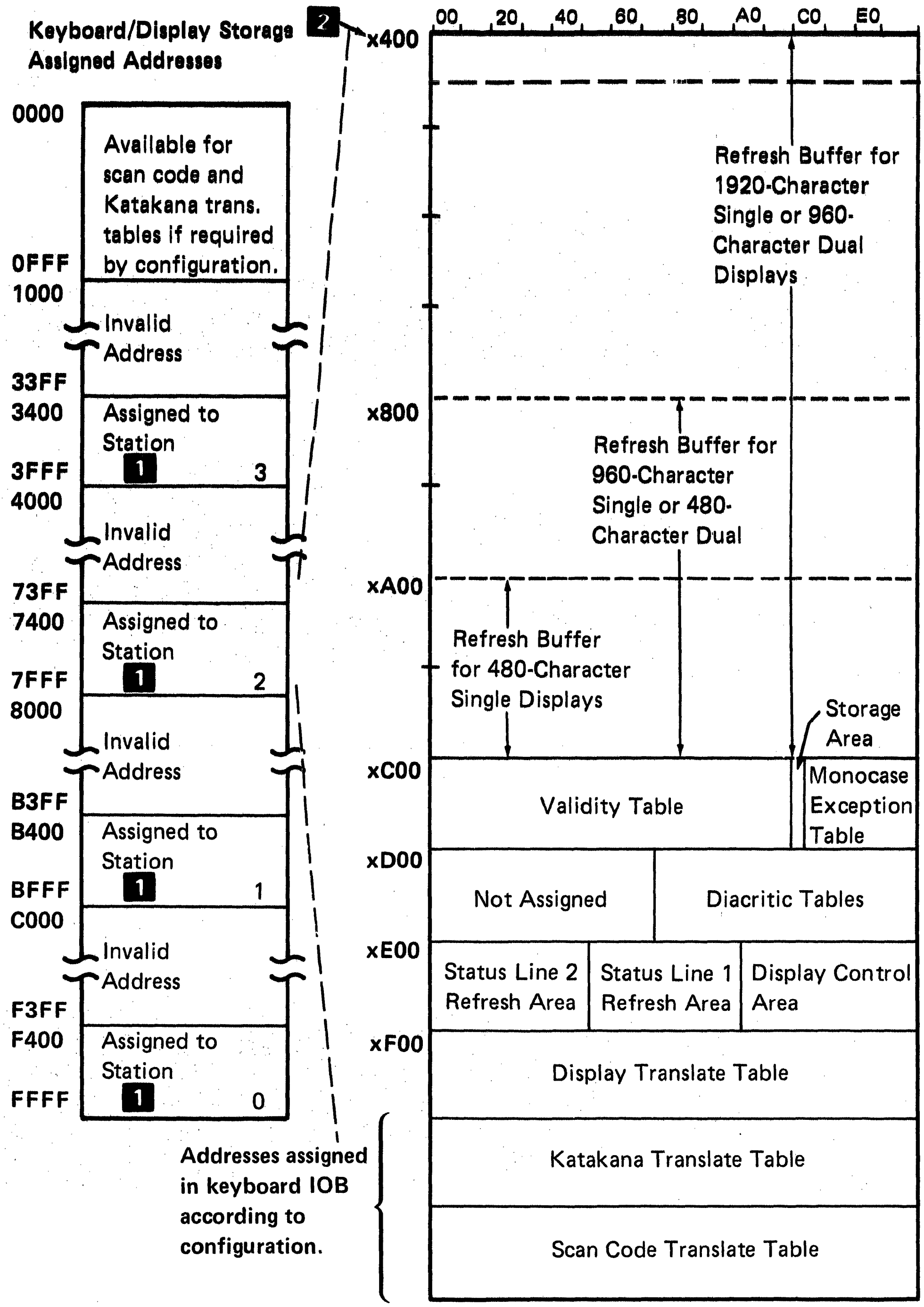
The keyboard/display storage provides control information and refresh buffers for processing keystrokes and for displaying characters on the display screen. Each keyboard/display unit uses a separate portion of keyboard/display storage. The total size of the portion of keyboard/display storage used by each keyboard/display unit depends on the size of the refresh buffer necessary for the keyboard/display unit's screen.

The keyboard/display storage is loaded during system IPL from the IPL diskette. The keyboard/display IOB in each partition contains the addresses of the keyboard/display storage areas used by that partition's keyboard/display unit.

The following is a general description of the data areas and refresh buffer areas within keyboard/display storage. The addresses for each keyboard/display unit begins with an x, which represents hex F, B, 7, and 3 for keyboard/display units 1 through 4 respectively. For example, if all keyboard/display units have a screen size of 1920 characters, the keyboard/display storage for unit 1 begins at hex F400, for unit 2 at hex B400, for unit 3 at hex 7400, and for unit 4 at hex 3400. There is also additional storage in a fifth section, which starts at hex 0000 and which is shared by the four units.

On a dual unit, the two keyboards share the same keyboard/display storage section. The first keyboard (keyboard 0) uses the lower-numbered rows of the refresh buffer, control register 0, cursor address register 0, and status line refresh buffer 1. The second keyboard (keyboard 1) uses the higher-numbered rows of the refresh buffer, control register 1, cursor address register 1, and status line refresh buffer 2.

The following illustration shows the format of keyboard/display storage as it is generated for IPL by the system configuration program (SYSCON).



Notes:

1 Station is either single or dual display. Keyboards for a dual share one block of storage.

2 x = F for station 0; B for station 1; 7 for station 2; 3 for station 3.

Because the keyboard/display IOB in each partition contains pointers into the keyboard/display storage, the validity table, storage area, diacritic table, scan code translate table, and the Katakana translate table (if required) can be located anywhere in keyboard/display storage as long as the tables that require alignment on a 256-byte boundary are properly aligned. However, the refresh buffer, status line refresh area, and display translate table for a particular keyboard must all be located in the same section of keyboard/display storage (section F, B, 7, or 3). The display translate table must always begin at address xF00, and the display control area must begin at address xEA0 of the appropriate section of keyboard/display storage.

REFRESH BUFFER AREA

The keyboard/display storage contains refresh buffers for each keyboard/display unit. These buffers act as refresh areas for display characters. The refresh area for the status line(s) is separated from the refresh area for the remainder of the screen. This separate area is in addition to the refresh area appropriate for a particular screen size.

When a keystroke is processed by the keyboard/display microprocessor, it is translated from the keystroke scan code to EBCDIC code. The EBCDIC code is placed into the current record buffer in main storage within the partition associated with the keyboard, and translated to display code. The display code is then placed into the refresh buffer in order to be displayed on the screen. The hexadecimal representations of screen attributes are also placed into the refresh area.

VALIDITY TABLE

The validity table defines:

- The EBCDIC values used in the alphabetic only, numeric only, and Katakana only character sets.
- The EBCDIC values of keys defined as diacritics.
- The EBCDIC values that have to be translated to uppercase when the monocase function is enabled.
- The scan codes of keys that are not typamatic.
- The scan codes of keys that can be shifted from lowercase alphameric only if a shift key (not including the Shift Lock key) is simultaneously pressed, such as the function keys to the left of the keyboard.

The validity table contains 1-byte entries that are in the following format:

Bit	Meaning When 1
0	Ignore the typamatic action in the scan code.
1	Shift only if the shift key is pressed.
2	System use only (initialized to 0).
3	Translate EBCDIC code to uppercase if monocase function is enabled.
4	EBCDIC code used for diacritic.
5	EBCDIC code belonging to Katakana-only character set.
6	EBCDIC code belonging to numeric-only character set.
7	EBCDIC code belonging to alphabetic-only character set.

Bits 0 and 1 in the table are used when the table is accessed using a scan code. The 7-bit scan code is an index into the validity table to retrieve the corresponding 1-byte entry.

Bits 3 through 7 are used when the table is accessed using an EBCDIC. The value hex 40 is subtracted from the EBCDIC code to establish the offset into the table in order to retrieve the corresponding 1-byte entry.

STORAGE AREA

The storage area holds information needed for interpreting keystrokes and maintaining the status line, and a monocase exception table. Following is a description of the first 16 bytes of this storage area:

Byte	Description
0	Display code for the insert mode indicator.
1	Display code for the alphabetic shift symbol.
2	Display code for the numeric shift symbol.
3	Display code for the hexadecimal shift symbol.
4	Display code for the Katakana shift symbol.
5	Scan code for the Hex key function.
6	Scan code for the Power On Reset key function.
7	Scan code for the Console key function.
8	Not used.
9	Display code for the alphabetic-only shift symbol.
10	Display code for the numeric-only shift symbol.
11	Display code for the digits-only shift symbol.
12	Display code for the Katakana-only shift symbol.
13-15	Not used.

Display codes for the shift symbols are displayed on the status line to show the keyboard shift status of the current field.

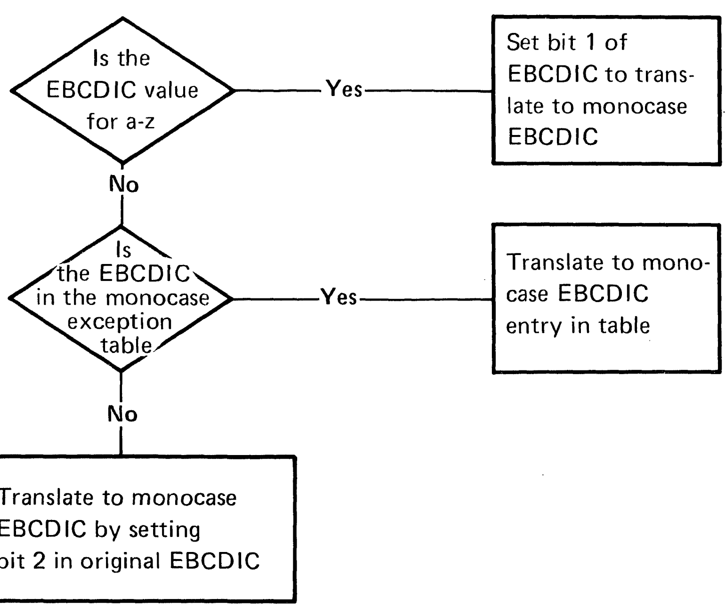
Scan codes for the command (function) keys in bytes 5, 6, and 7 are processed by the system. These functions are initiated by pressing the Cmd key first, then the command key.

Monocase Exception Table

Following the first 16 bytes is a monocase exception table. The monocase exception table contains character values that cannot be conveniently converted from lowercase to uppercase. (See the logic shown below.) The table begins at displacement hex 10 into the storage area. The table contains pairs of bytes (lowercase code/uppercase code) that provide translation from lowercase EBCDIC to uppercase EBCDIC. The byte pairs are in ascending order of the EBCDIC for the lowercase values. The length of the table is variable, depending on the number of entries required. The table always ends with hex FFFF; if the table contains no other entries, it contains only hex FFFF.

Exception EBCDICs, Lowercase	Exception EBCDICs, Uppercase
ae	AE
.	.
.	.
.	.
FF	FF

A bit in the validity table is used to specify that an EBCDIC can be monocase. If the monocase flag is set and an EBCDIC value is entered (by a keystroke or diacritic or hex key sequence during formatted data entry, or by keyboard operation hex 0A [pass scan code] or 0B [pass EBCDIC], or by the KACCPT instruction) that can be monocase, the system translates the lowercase EBCDIC to its corresponding uppercase EBCDIC. The following shows how the system translates the EBCDIC to monocase:



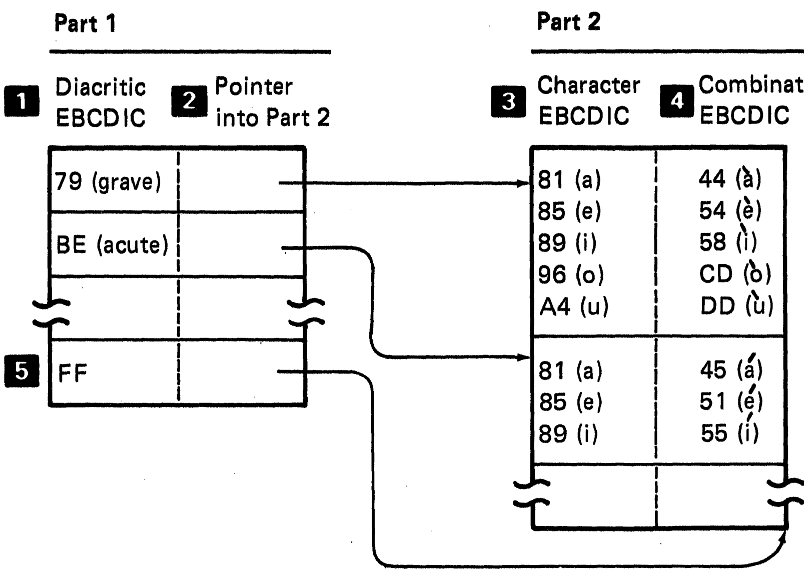
DIACRITIC TABLE

The diacritic table provides composite EBCDIC codes that represent the diacritic-character pairs for characters defined as diacritic in the validity table.

The diacritic table is in two parts. Part 1 contains 2-byte entries for each diacritic defined. Byte 1 is the EBCDIC code for each diacritic and byte 2 is a pointer into part 2 of the table.

Part 2 of the diacritic table contains the EBCDIC code for each character that can be used with a diacritic-character pair and also contains the composite EBCDIC code that represents the diacritic-character pairs.

The following shows how the diacritic table is used:



1 EBCDIC for valid diacritics, arranged in ascending order of diacritic EBCDIC value.

2 Displacement (from the beginning of part 1) into part 2 of the table, where the EBCDIC for the first of the characters that can be validly combined with the diacritic is stored.

3 EBCDIC values for characters that can be validly combined with the diacritic.

4 EBCDIC of the combined character and diacritic. For each diacritic, this section is arranged in ascending order of the character EBCDIC value.

5 The last entry in part 1 contains hex FF, in the first byte, and a pointer to the byte following the last combination EBCDIC in part 2 of the table.

REFRESH AREAS FOR THE STATUS LINES

There are two status line refresh buffers in keyboard/display storage for each unit. These buffers are referred to as status line 1 buffer and status line 2 buffer. The status line 1 buffer is used as a refresh area for the status line of a single data station or station 0 of a dual-display data station. The status line 2 buffer is used as a refresh area for the status line of station 1 of a dual data station. The status line is usually displayed on row one of the screen. However, if a screen format uses all of the rows on the screen, the status line can be removed from the screen so that row one of the format can be displayed on row one of the screen. The status line is maintained in the status line refresh buffer whether or not it is being displayed on the screen.

DISPLAY CONTROL AREA

The display control area contains:

- Display attributes for the beginning of each row on the display screen.
- The refresh buffer address of the first position of the row.
- Control registers that provide control for the upper and lower halves of the display screen.
- Cursor address registers that provide the current refresh buffer address of the cursor.

The display control area begins with strings of 3-byte entries; one entry for each row on the display screen.

The first byte of a 3-byte entry contains the display attributes for each row. The format of the first byte is:

Bits	Attribute Description
0-1	System indicator: 00 = None 01 = None 10 = Dash 11 = Solid rectangle
2	Valid row starting attribute. This bit must be 1 in order for bits 3 through 7 to be effective.
3	1 = Column separator.
4	1 = Blink.
5	1 = Underscore.
6	1 = High intensity.
7	1 = Reverse image.

Note: If bits 5, 6, and 7 are all on (111), no data is displayed.

The second and third byte contain the refresh buffer address of the first position of the row.

The first 3-byte entry in the display control area describes row 1, the second entry row 2, and so on through row 25. Row 0 is described by the twenty-sixth entry.

For dual display stations, rows 0 through 11 are assigned to display station 0; rows 14 through 25 are assigned to display station 1.

Control registers 0 and 1 follow the strings of 3-byte entries. Control register 0 is used for the display screen of a single display station, or for display station 0 of a dual display station. Control register 1 is used for display station 1 of a dual display station.

The format of control register 0 is:

Bits	Meaning When 1
0	Inhibit display of upper half of screen if single, station 0 if dual.
1	Not used (initialized to 0).
2	Blink cursor for display station 0.
3	Blink upper half of the display screen if single, station 0 if dual.
4	Reverse image of upper half of screen if single, station 0 if dual.
5-7	Not used (initialized to 00).

The format of control register 1 is:

Bits	Meaning When 1
0	Inhibit display of lower half of screen if single, station 1 if dual.
1	Not used (initialized to 0).
2	Blink cursor for display station 1.
3	Blink lower half of screen if single, station 1 if dual.
4	Reverse image of lower half of screen if single, station 1 if dual.
5-7	Not used (initialized to 000).

Following the control register bytes there are two 2-byte cursor address registers. These registers contain the current refresh buffer address of the cursor. Cursor address register 0 stores the cursor address for a single display station or for display station 0 of a dual display station. Cursor address register 1 stores the cursor address for display station 1 of a dual display station.

Address	Contents	
xEA0	Row starting attribute	Row 1
	Row starting address high	
	Row starting address low	
xEA3	Row starting attribute	Row 2
	Row starting address high	
	Row starting address low	
xEE8	Row starting attribute	Row 25
	Row starting address high	
	Row starting address low	
xEEB	Row starting attribute	Row 0
	Row starting address high	
	Row starting address low	
xEEE	Not used	
xEF2	Control register 0	
xEF3	Control register 1	
xEF4	Cursor address register 0, high	
xEF5	Cursor address register 0, low	
xEF6	Cursor address register 1, high	
xEF7	Cursor address register 1, low	

DISPLAY TRANSLATE TABLE

The display translate table converts EBCDIC code to display code so characters are displayable on the display screen. The display translate table must be located in the last 256 bytes of the keyboard/display storage area assigned to the unit.

KATAKANA TRANSLATE TABLE

The Katakana translate table is required for a display station with a Katakana keyboard. Some keytops on the Katakana keyboards have more than two characters. The right side of the keytop has Katakana characters; the left side has alphameric symbols.

The translate table converts scan codes to EBCDIC for the Katakana characters.

The table is divided into two 128-byte segments. The lowerhalf of the table (offset hex 00 to 7F) is used when the keyboard is in Katakana lowershift. The upper half of the table (offset hex 80 to FF) is used when the keyboard is in Katakana uppershift.

SCAN CODE TRANSLATE TABLE

The scan code translate table converts scan codes to EBCDIC for all keyboards. Katakana keyboards also use the Katakana translate table.

The scan code translate table is divided into two 128-byte segments. The lower half of the table (offset hex 00 to 7F) is used when the keyboard is in alphameric lowershift. The upper half of the table (offset hex 80 to FF) is used when the keyboard is in alphameric uppershift.

Bits 1 through 7 of the 8-bit scan code are used as an offset into the table, either into the lower half or into the upper half, depending on the keyboard shift status. For example, a scan code of hex 09 locates the EBCDIC in the tenth byte of the lower half of the table if the keyboard is in lowershift.

Chapter 4. Object Code Instruction Format

Each object code instruction is 4 bytes long. The first byte always contains the operation code. The other three bytes contain flags, addresses and other data.

ADDRESSING METHODS WITHIN A PARTITION

In a source program instruction, a storage area or another instruction is referred to by a label. A register is referred to by a label or by a number. When source instruction is converted to object code, these labels and numbers are converted to addresses. An address in an object code instruction is always relative to the beginning of the partition. When the object code instruction is executed, the relative address is added to the absolute address of the beginning of the partition. The absolute address of the beginning of the partition is stored in displacement hex 0D in the partition IOB.

Because instructions and registers must begin on specific boundaries, the 16-bit address can be compressed. The bits in the object code instruction that are not used for the address are used for other purposes, such as flags. A relative address in an object code instruction is in one of the following formats:

- *16-bit address* to locate any byte within a partition
- *14-bit address* to locate an instruction
- *8-bit address* to locate a decimal register
- *7-bit address* to locate a binary register

In addition to the relative addresses, an object code instruction may contain the following types of data:

- *8-bit instruction displacement*, used with certain branch instructions to locate an instruction.
- *8-bit indicator number* to locate an indicator.
- *8-bit index* into a system table to locate the address of a format, prompt, duplication area, or table.
- *Constant.*

Addressing a Byte Within the Partition

The size of the partition cannot be greater than 64 K bytes; therefore, any byte within the partition can be addressed with 16 bits (hex 0000 through FFFF). A 16-bit address is stored in the third and fourth byte of an object code instruction.

Example:

16-Bit Address

Op Code		00100100	01100001

Hexadecimal 2461

Addressing an Object Code Instruction

Because object code instructions begin on 4-byte boundaries, the last 2 bits of the 16-bit address are always zeros. These 2 bits can be used for flags; the high-order 14 bits are used to address the instruction. In an object code instruction, a 14-bit address is stored in the high-order 14 bits of the third and fourth bytes as follows:

Hexadecimal 1394
14-Bit Address

Op Code		00010011	100101 00

Flag Bits

Instruction Displacement

In certain branch instructions, the label in the source instruction is converted to a displacement rather than to an address. An instruction displacement is the number of 4-byte object code instructions from the next sequential instruction to skip if the branch is taken. An instruction displacement is 8 bits long and is stored in the fourth byte of an object code instruction. A positive displacement can cause a forward jump of up to 128 object code instructions. A negative displacement is stored in the twos complement of the displacement value. A negative displacement causes a backward jump of up to 128 object code instructions from the instruction following the branch instruction.

Addressing a Decimal Register

Each decimal register begins on a 16-byte boundary from hexadecimal 0100 to 0FF0 (relative to the beginning of the partition).

In a source program, a decimal register is specified by a register number or a label, which is converted to a 16-bit address in the object code. All 16-bit addresses for decimal registers begin and end with zero, as the following chart shows:

R62 is stored at location hex 04E0.

Hex	00	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80	90	A0	B0	C0	D0	E0	F0
01	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15
02	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31
03	32	33	34	35	36	37	38	39	40	41	42	43	44	45	46	47
04	48	49	50	51	52	53	54	55	56	57	58	59	60	61	62	63
05	64	65	66	67	68	69	70	71	72	73	74	75	76	77	78	79
06	80	81	82	83	84	85	86	87	88	89	90	91	92	93	94	95
07	96	97	98	99	100	101	102	103	104	105	106	107	108	109	110	111
08	112	113	114	115	116	117	118	119	120	121	122	123	124	125	126	127
09	128	129	130	131	132	133	134	135	136	137	138	139	140	141	142	143
0A	144	145	146	147	148	149	150	151	152	153	154	155	156	157	158	159
0B	160	161	162	163	164	165	166	167	168	169	170	171	172	173	174	175
0C	176	177	178	179	180	181	182	183	184	185	186	187	188	189	190	191
0D	192	193	194	195	196	197	198	199	200	201	202	203	204	205	206	207
0E	208	209	210	211	212	213	214	215	216	217	218	219	220	221	222	223
0F	224	225	226	227	228	229	230	231	232	233	234	235	236	237	238	239

Following is an alternative method to convert a register number (using R62 as an example) to a 16-bit address:

1. Multiply the register number by 16: 16 x 62 = 992

2. Convert the product to hexadecimal: decimal 992 = hexadecimal 03E0

3. Add hexadecimal 0100: 03E0 + 0100 = 04E0

When the program is assembled, the 16-bit address is compressed to an 8-bit address:

	16-Bit Address		8-Bit Address
	04E0 →	4E →	E4

1. Remove the zeros from the beginning and end of the 16-bit address.

2. Reverse the remaining two digits.

Addressing a Binary Register

Each binary register begins on a 2-byte boundary from hexadecimal 0100 to 01FE (relative to the beginning of the partition). In a source program, a binary register is specified by a register number or a label, which is converted to a 16-bit address in the object code. All 16-bit addresses for binary registers begin with 01, as the following chart shows:

BR62 is stored at location hex 017C.

Hex	0	2	4	6	8	A	C	E
010	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
011	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15
012	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23
013	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31
014	32	33	34	35	36	37	38	39
015	40	41	42	43	44	45	46	47
016	48	49	50	51	52	53	54	55
017	56	57	58	59	60	61	62	63
018	64	65	66	67	68	69	70	71
019	72	73	74	75	76	77	78	79
01A	80	81	82	83	84	85	86	87
01B	88	89	90	91	92	93	94	95
01C	96	97	98	99	100	101	102	103
01D	104	105	106	107	108	109	110	111
01E	112	113	114	115	116	117	118	119
01F	120	121	122	123	124	125	126	127

Following is an alternative method to convert a binary register number (using BR62 as an example) to a 16-bit address:

1. Multiply the register number by 2: 62 x 2 = 124
2. Convert the result to hexadecimal: decimal 124 = hexadecimal 007C
3. Add hexadecimal 0100: 007C + 0100 = 017C

If a binary double register is referred to in a source instruction, the address in the object code is the address of the rightmost register.

When the source program is assembled, the 16-bit address for a binary register is compressed to a 7-bit address:

$$\underbrace{017C}_{\text{16-Bit Address}} \longrightarrow 7C \longrightarrow \underbrace{0111\ 1100}_{\text{7-Bit Address}}$$

1. Remove 01
2. Because the last bit of the binary representation of the remaining two digits is always 0, that bit can be used as a flag.

Indicator Addressing

An indicator is specified in a source instruction with a label or a decimal number (I0 to I254). This label or decimal number is converted to the hexadecimal representation of the indicator number in the object code.

For example:

Indicator Number	Hex Value	Binary Value Stored in the Instruction
I47	2F	00101111
I06	06	00000110
I126	7E	01111110

Addressing through a System Table

In a source program, a format, prompt, data table, or main storage duplication area is referred to with a label. In the object code, this label is converted to an index into a system table. This system table holds the addresses of the labeled data areas, and the index specifies the position in the system table where the appropriate address is stored. The index for a format or table is stored in one byte of the object code instruction; however, the index for a prompt or main storage duplication area is stored within the screen format control string. Except for prompts, the first address in a system table is at index 0. The following chart shows the valid range for the system table index for each type of data area:

Type	Valid Index Values
Screen format	0-255
Edit format	0-127
Data table	0-127
Prompt	1-(see note)
Duplication area	0-(see note)

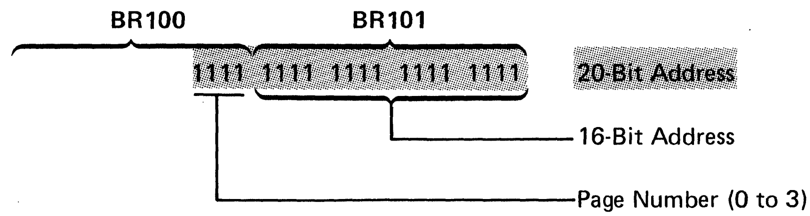
Note: The number of prompts and duplication areas is limited only by storage size and performance considerations.

The formats of the system tables are described in Chapter 2 under *System Tables.*

ADDRESSING METHODS OUTSIDE THE PARTITION

A 20-bit address must be used to address any location outside the partition. The format of a 20-bit address is a 16-bit address preceded by a 4-bit storage page number. Main storage is divided into storage pages; each storage page is 64 K bytes (K = 1024 bytes). A page with less than 64 K bytes is a partial page. The 16-bit address can address any byte within the page; therefore, the 20-bit address that includes the page number can address any byte within main storage.

An instruction never contains a 20-bit address. In a source program, the 20-bit address must be stored in a double binary register. When a source instruction refers to the 20-bit address, it specifies the label or number of the leftmost register of the double binary register that holds the address. The assembler converts the register specification to a 7-bit compressed address of the *rightmost* register of the double register that holds the address. For example, a source program has a 20-bit address stored in BR100 and BR101. The source instruction specifies BR100(4), where the 4 represents a length of 4 bytes. The assembler stores the 7-bit compressed address of BR101 in the object code instruction; the flag bit is set to 1 to indicate that the register is part of a double register that holds a 20-bit address. BR101 holds the 16-bit address and the low-order 4 bits of BR100 specify the page number.



Addressing through a System Table

Format and tables stored in the common area are available to any partition. When a source program specifies that the format or table is in the common area (with an .XTRN control statement), the format or table is assigned a system table index that is greater than a valid index for a table or format within the partition. The following chart shows the range for a system table index for data areas outside the partition:

Type	Valid Index Values
Screen format	256-512
Edit format	128-254
Data table	128-254

For edit formats and data tables, the index is stored in one byte of the object code instruction. For screen formats, a bit is set in the object code for the enter instruction (hex CF) to indicate that the screen format is in the common area.

CONSTANTS

In a source program, a constant can be specified (1) as a decimal, hexadecimal, or binary value, (2) as a character, or (3) with a label that is equated to a value. In the object code, any form of constant is stored in the object code as immediate data. The following list shows the kinds of constants that are used in a source program.

- *Data set number:* The number of the current data set. The number can be any number from hexadecimal 1 to F and requires 4 bits of object code.
- *Length:* The length of data being used by the instruction.
- *Displacement:* The displacement into a data area; usually an optional parameter in a data movement instruction.
- *Mask:* A pattern of bits used in skip operations. Each mask requires 8 bits.

INSTRUCTION FORMAT

Mnemonic to Op Code Conversion Chart

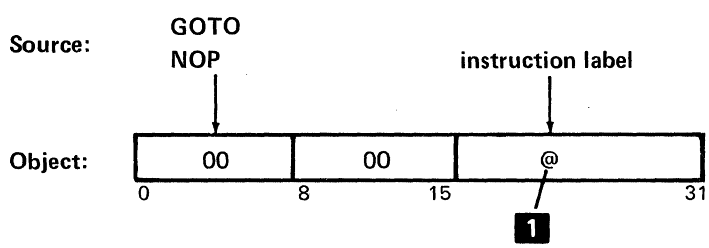
The object code instructions in this chapter are in op code (hexadecimal) order. If it is necessary to find an object code instruction by assembler language mnemonic, use the following chart to find the op code. The mnemonics in the chart are listed in alphabetic order.

Mnemonic	Op Code	Mnemonic	Op Code
ALLOC	34	d(len,BRa) = BRb	A3
AND	42	d(BRn) = constant	B9
BINDEC	A6	d,Rn = constant	44
BINHEX	49	d(len,BRn) = Rn	7L
BRa = BRb	98	DECBIN	A7
BRa <=> BRb	45	DECR BRn	06
BRn = constant	99	DISPEX	C7
BRn(4) -=	96	DISPST	C7
BRn(4) + = nn	95	DUP	BD
BRn(4) - = nn	97	DVCTL	3D
BRn(4) +=	94	ENABLE	OC
BRn [(4)] /=	AB	ENTR	CF
BRn &=	9A	EXIT	2F
BRn &= d(len,BRn)	BA	GOTAB BRn	08
BRn &= nn	9B	GOTO	00
BRn V=	9C	GOTO BRn (indexed)	08
BRn V= d(len,BRn)	BC	GSCK	48
BRn V= nn	9D	HEXBIN	4A
BRn X=	9E	IF BRn EQ	6E
BRn X= d(len,BRn)	BE	IF BRn GE/LE	6F
BRn X= nn	9F	IF BRn GT/LT	6D
BRn +=	90	IF BRn NE	6C
BRn -=	92	IF BRn 0	03
BRn * =	AA	IF FMT	02
BRn + = d(len,BRn)	B0	IF Rn AN	0D
BRn - = d(len,BRn)	B2	IF Rn CK	0E
BRn = (indexed)	B8	IF Rn EQ	62
BRn - = n	93	IF Rn GE/LE	63
BRn + = n	91	IF Rn GT/LT	61
BRn(4) + = d(len,BRn)	B4	IF Rn NE	60
BRn(4) - = d(len,BRn)	B6	IF Rn SN	0F
BRn = Rn	A7	IF Rn 0	01
BUZZ	C7	IF Rn -	05
CALL	OB	IFB IS	BB
CALLTB	OB	IFB OFF	B5
CLC	AE	IFB ON	B7
CLICK	C7	IFC IS	4E
CLOZ	23	IFC NOT	4C
CNENTR	C7	IFD Rn EQ	66
CRTMM	CA		

Mnemonic	Op Code
IFD Rn GE/LE	67
IFD Rn GT/LT	65
IFD Rn NE	64
IFDSI	25
IFH BRn EQ	6A
IFH BRn GE/LE	6B
IFH BRn GT/LT	69
IFHI	42
IFI In	07
IFIR In	04
IFLO	42
INIT	33
INSBLK	32
INXEQ	A5
KACCPT	C7
KATTCH	C4
KDETCH	C5
KERRCL	C7
KERRST	C7
KEYOP	C7
label = BRn	A2
label = constant	44
label = Rn	8L
label = SL n	A1
LCRTC	C8
LOAD	2E
MMCRT	CB
MOFF	1A
MVC	AC
MVC(BRn(4))	A4
MVCR	AC
MVCV	AC
MVER	19
NOP	00
OPEN	22
PAUSE	4F
PDUMP	4F
POSN	26
READ	20
READMG	C7
REBF	21
REPLFD	C3
RESCAL	CD
RESMXT	CD
RESUME	CD
RETEXT	OC
RETURN	OC
RL	A1
Rn =	14
Rn <=>	13
Rn -	11
Rn +	10
Rn *	18
Rn /	17
Rn (32) *	15
Rn (32) /	12
Rn = BRn	A6
Rn = d(len,BRn)	7L
Rn = label	8L
Rn = +nn	46
Rn = -nn	47
RR	A1
RSTMG	C7
RTIMER	C7
RXORW	43
SCRTC	C9
SEARCH	24
SETOFF	B3
SETON	B1
SKIP WHILE	A0
SL (binary)	A1
SL (decimal)	1C
SLS	1D
SOFF	41
SON	40
SR (binary)	A1
SR (decimal)	16
SRAT	2B
SRR	1F
SRS	1E
SYSLCK	2C
SYSUNL	2D
TBBS	55
TBDL	57
TBFH	50
TBFL	54
TBFX	53
TBIN	56
TBRD	52
TBRL	52
TBWE	51
TBWT	51
TCLOZ	3F
TCTL	3F
TINIT	22
TLCK	58
TOPEN	22
TRANS	A8
TREAD	2A

Mnemonic	Op Code	Mnemonic	Op Code
TROFF	4F	WAIT	36
TRON	4F	WFMCRT	3E
TRT	A9	WRBF	3C
TTERM	23	WRT	30
TUNLCK	59	WRTI	31
TWAIT	36	WRTS	35
TWRT	3A	ZONE	1B

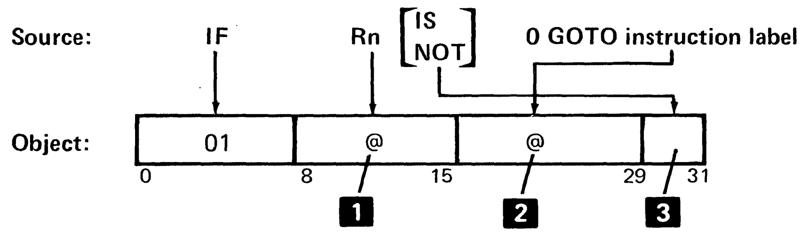
Unconditional Branch (GOTO/NOP)



1 Branch address: Branch to the instruction at this address. For NOP, this is the address of the next instruction.

The microprocessor branches to the branch address.

Test Decimal Register for 0 (Zero) or Blank (IF Rn 0)



1 Test register address: Test the register at this address.

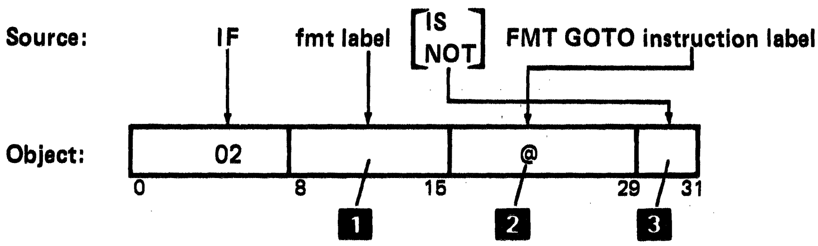
2 Branch address: Branch to the instruction at this address.

3 Bits:
00 = IS
01 = NOT

The microprocessor branches to the branch address if:

- The test register contains zeros (hex F0s) or blanks (hex 40s) and IS is specified.
- Any byte of the test register contains a value other than blank or zero and NOT is specified.

Test Format Number (IF fmt)



1 Format: The number (hex 01-FE) of the format to use.

2 Branch address: Branch to the instruction at this address.

3 Bits:
00 = IS
01 = NOT

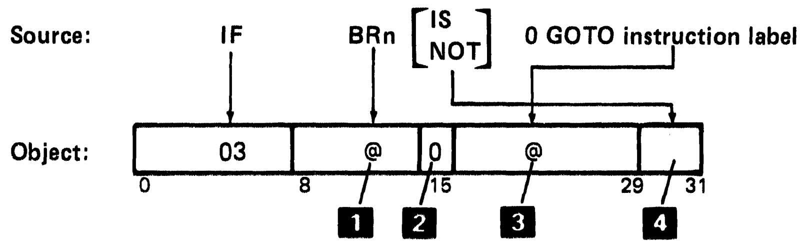
The microprocessor branches to the branch address if:

- The format number is equal to the last format used and IS is specified

- The format number is not equal to the last format used and NOT is specified

The format number of the last format used is in the partition IOB at displacement hex 1D.

Test Binary Register for Zero (IF BRn 0)



1 Test register address: Test the register at this address.

2 Bit 15 is 0.

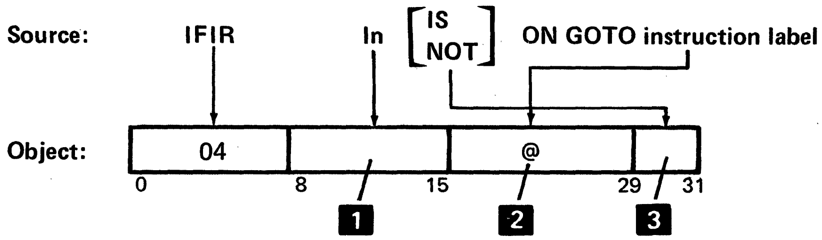
3 Branch address: Branch to the instruction at this address.

4 Bits:
00 = IS
01 = NOT

The microprocessor branches to the branch address if:

- The register contains zeros (hex 00s) and IS is specified
- The register contains a value other than zeros and NOT is specified

Test and Reset Indicator (IFIR In)



1 Indicator: The indicator number (hex 00-FE) of the indicator to test. The indicator number is mandatory.

2 Branch address: Branch to the instruction at this address.

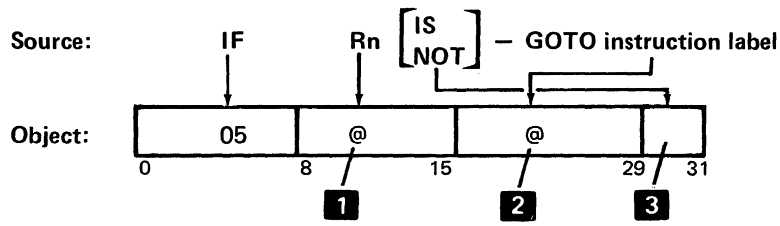
3 Bits:
00 = IS
01 = NOT

The microprocessor branches to the branch address if:

- The indicator is on and IS is specified
- The indicator is off and NOT is specified

The microprocessor turns off (resets) the indicator whether it branches or not.

Test Decimal Register for Negative (IF Rn-)



1 Test register address: Test the register at this address.

2 Branch address: Branch to the instruction at this address.

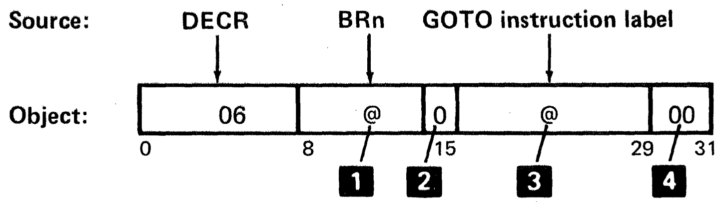
3 Bits:
00 = IS
01 = NOT

The microprocessor branches to the branch address if:

- The zone portion of the rightmost byte in decimal register is hex D and IS is specified

- The zone portion of the rightmost byte in the register is not hex D and NOT is specified

Decrement Binary Register and Test for Zero (DECR BRn)



1 Test register address: Test the register at this address.

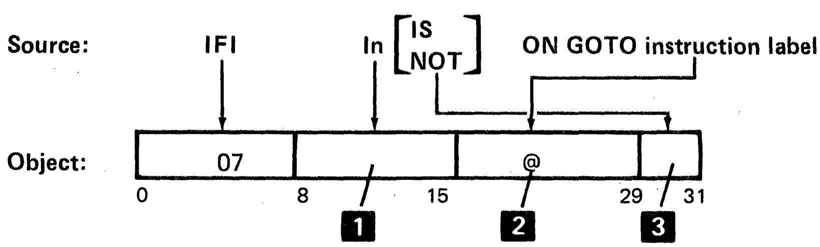
2 Bit 15 is 0.

3 Branch address: Branch to the instruction at this address.

4 Bits 30 and 31 are 00.

Each time this instruction is executed, the contents of the test register decrement by one and are then tested for zero. If the contents are not zero, the microprocessor branches to the branch address.

Test Indicator (IF In)



1 Indicator: The indicator number (hex 00-FE) of the indicator to test.

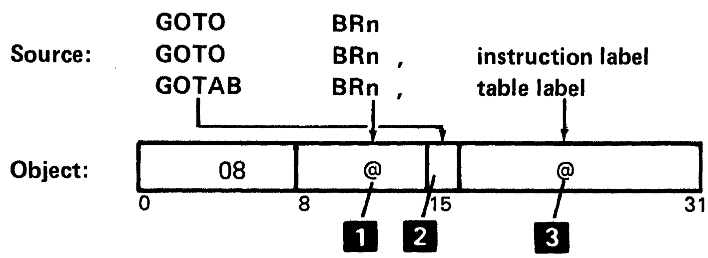
2 Branch address: Branch to the instruction at this address.

3 Bits 30 and 31:
00 = IS
01 = NOT

The microprocessor branches to the branch address if:

- The indicator is on and IS is specified
- The indicator is off and NOT is specified

Indexed Branch (GOTO BRn/GOTAB BRn)



1 Index register address: The address of the register that contains the index. BR0 cannot be used as an index register.

2 Bit 15:
0 = GOTO
1 = GOTAB

Note: If bit 15 is 1, the microprocessor uses the table address and branches via that table.

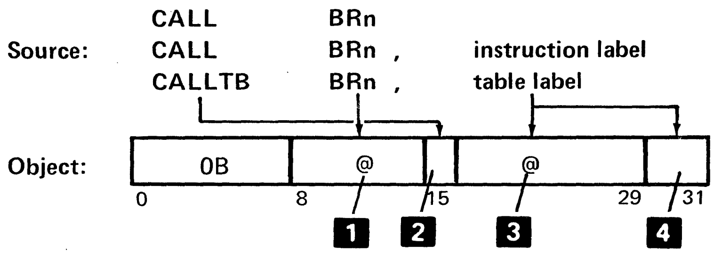
3 Branch address or table address: Branch to the instruction at this address, or use this table to find the branch address.

Note: This address is all zeros if a GOTO is specified with no instruction label operand.

If bit 15 is 0, the microprocessor adds the contents of the index register to the branch address and branches to the resulting address. If no label is specified, an indirect branch is made to the address in the index register **1**.

If bit 15 is 1, the microprocessor branches to the address in the table entry indicated by the index register, using the table indicated by **3**. If the index is 0, the first address in the table is used.

Subroutine Call (CALL/CALLTB)



1 Index register address: The address of the register that contains the index.

2 Bit 15:
0 = CALL
1 = CALLTB

3 Branch address for CALL: Branch to the instruction at this address.

Note: This address is all zeros if no instruction is specified.

Table address for CALLTB: The address of the table.

4 Bits 30 and 31 for CALL:
00 = Current area
01 = Common function area 1
10 = Base area
11 = Common function area 2

Bits 30 and 31 for CALLTB: The last 2 bits of the table address.

Note: Bits 0-15 of the table entry correspond to bits 16-31 of the CALL instruction. Bits 14 and 15 of the table entry may contain the common function flags described for bits 30 and 31 of the CALL instruction.

If bit 15 is 0, the microprocessor adds the contents of the index register to the branch address and branches to the resulting address. If bit 15 is 1, the microprocessor branches to the address in the table entry indicated by the index register, using the table indicated by **3**. If the index is 0, the first address in the table is used.

Execution Sequence

The CALL or CALLTB instruction causes the microprocessor to stop executing instructions in the main program and branch to a subroutine.

Following is the main microprocessor execution sequence for the CALL and CALLTB instructions:

Start

Place the next sequential instruction address into the subroutine stack at the location pointed to by BR18.

Add 2 to the value in BR18.

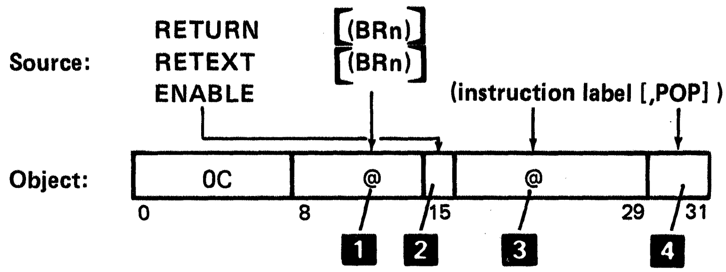
Is the instruction a CALL instruction (bit 15 = 0)?

- **Yes** — Are bits 8 through 15 all zeros?
  - **Yes** — Branch to the instruction addressed in bits 16 through 29.
  - **No** — Add the contents of BRn to the address in bits 16 through 29 and branch to the resulting address.
- **No** — Get the subroutine address from the table addressed in bits 16 through 31. BRn contains the index into the table that contains the subroutine address.

Are common function flags zero?

- **No** — Branch to the common area.
- **Yes** — Branch within the partition.

Subroutine Return or Enable External Status (RETURN/RETEXT/ENABLE)



1 Index register address for RETURN and RETEXT: The address of the register that contains the index.

Note: This address is all zeros if no index register is specified, or if ENABLE is specified.

2 Bit 15:
0 = RETURN
1 = RETEXT or ENABLE

3 Branch address for ENABLE: Branch to the instruction at this address.

All zeros for RETURN and RETEXT.

4 Bits 30 and 31:
00 = RETURN and RETEXT
00 = ENABLE, if POP is specified
01 = ENABLE, if POP is not specified

Execution Sequence

The RETURN instruction causes the microprocessor to stop executing the subroutine and return to the main program. RETEXT causes a return to the main program, and the main microprocessor turns off the external status outstanding bit in the status byte of the keyboard/display IOB. ENABLE causes the microprocessor to turn off the external status bit and, if POP is specified, to decrement the subroutine stack pointer, BR18.

Following is the main microprocessor execution sequence for the RETURN, RETEXT, and ENABLE instructions:

Start

Is this a RETURN instruction?

Yes — No

Turn off the external status bit in the data set IOB.

Is this a RETEXT instruction? (Bits 16 through 29 all zeros?)

Yes — No

Decrement BR18 contents by 2 to point to the return instruction address in the subroutine stack.

Is POP coded? (Bits 29-31=00?)

Yes — No

Is an address in bits 16-29?

Decrement BR18 contents by 2.

Yes — No

Use this address as the base address to return to.

Use the address from the subroutine stack as the base address to return to.

Branch to the address in bits 16-29.

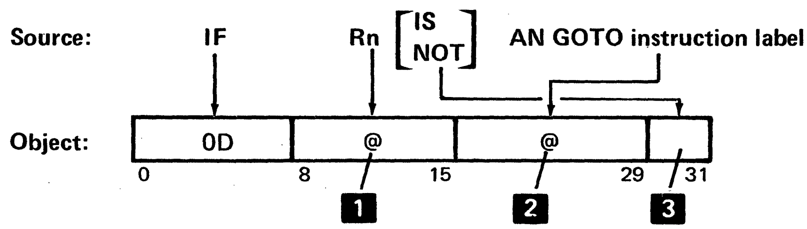
Is this a nonindexed instruction?

Yes — No

Return to the base address.

Add the contents of BRn to the base address and return to the instruction at the resulting address.

Test Decimal Register for Absolute Number (IF Rn AN)



1 Test register address: Test the register at this address.

2 Branch address: Branch to the instruction at this address.

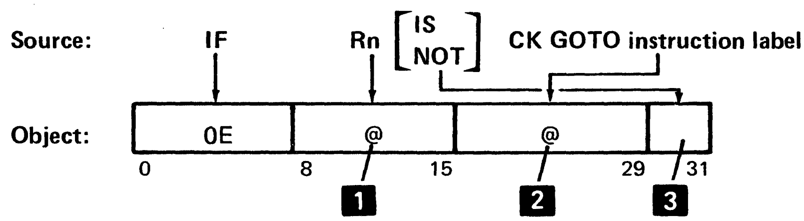
3 Bits:
00 = IS
01 = NOT

The microprocessor branches to the branch address if:

- The test register contains a valid positive number or all blanks (hex 40), and IS is specified

- The test register does not contain a valid positive number, and NOT is specified

Test Decimal Register for Self-Check Digit (IF Rn CK)



1 Test register address: Test the register at this address.

2 Branch address: Branch to the instruction at this address.

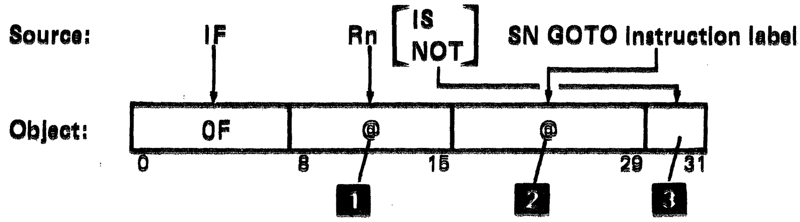
3 Bits:
00 = IS
01 = NOT

The microprocessor branches to the branch address if:

- The self-check number in the test register is correct when it is checked by the self-check algorithm, and IS is specified

- The self-check number in the test register is not correct and NOT is specified

Test Decimal Register for Signed Number (IF Rn SN)



1 Test register address: Test the register at this address.

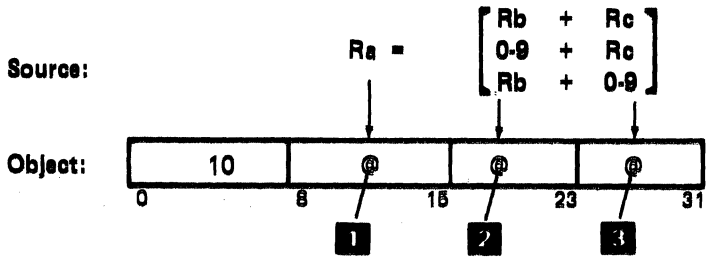
2 Branch address: Branch to the instruction at this address.

3 Bits:
00 = IS
01 = NOT

The microprocessor branches to the branch address if:

- The test register contains a valid signed numeric value and IS is specified
- The test register does not contain a valid signed numeric value and NOT is specified

Decimal Register Add (+)



1 **Result decimal register address: The address of the decimal register that will contain the result of this operation.**

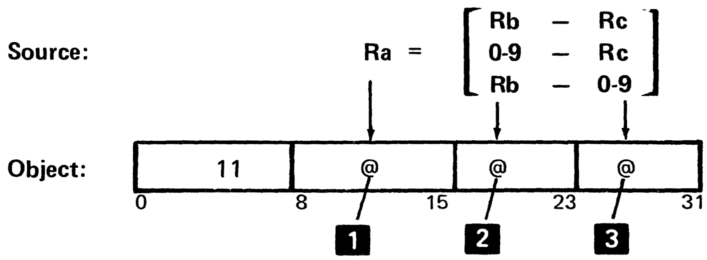
Note: If a carry results out of the high-order position in this register, the overflow indicator I124 is set on.

2 Factor 1 decimal register address: The address of the decimal register that contains factor 1, or a single-digit constant (hex 0-9) followed by hex 0.

3 Factor 2 decimal register address: The address of the decimal register that contains factor 2, or a single-digit constant (hex 0-9) followed by hex 0.

This instruction algebraically adds the factor 1 value to the factor 2 value and stores the sum in the result register.

Decimal Register Subtract (–)



1 Result decimal register address: The address of the decimal register that will contain the result of this operation.

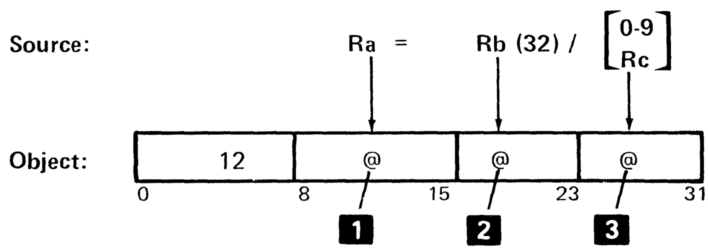
Note: If a carry results out of the high-order position in this register, the overflow indicator I124 is set on.

2 Factor 1 decimal register address: The address of the decimal register that contains factor 1, or a single-digit constant (hex 0-9) followed by hex 0.

3 Factor 2 decimal register address: The address of the decimal register that contains factor 2, or a single-digit constant (hex 0-9) followed by hex 0.

This instruction algebraically subtracts the factor 2 value from the factor 1 value and stores the result in the result register.

Decimal Double-Register Divide (/)



1 Result decimal register address: The address of the decimal register that will contain the quotient of this operation.

2 Factor 1 decimal register address: The address of the double decimal register that contains factor 1.

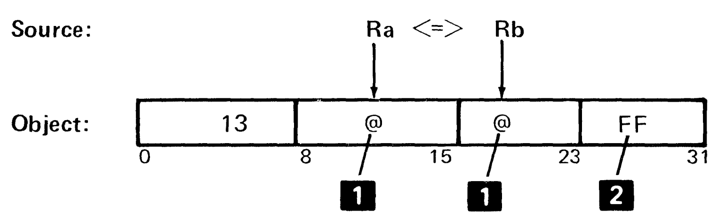
Note: Factor 1 is replaced with the remainder.

3 Factor 2 decimal register address: The address of the decimal register that contains factor 2, or a single-digit constant (hex 0-9) followed by hex 0.

This instruction divides the factor 1 value by the factor 2 value. The result is stored in the result register; the remainder is stored in the factor 1 register.

Note: If division by zero is attempted, the overflow indicator I124 and the divide error indicator I120 are set on.

Decimal Register Exchange (<=>)

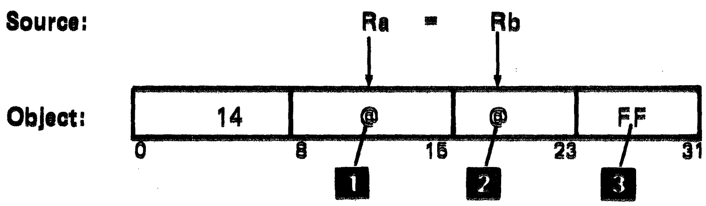


1 Decimal register addresses: The addresses of the decimal registers that exchange contents.

2 Set to hex FF.

This instruction swaps the contents of the specified decimal registers.

Decimal Register Copy (=)



1 Result decimal register address: The address of the copied-to decimal register.

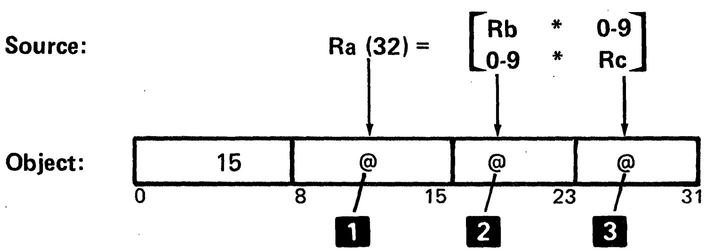
2 Factor 1 decimal register address: The address of the decimal register that contains data to copy or a constant 0-9.

Note: If a constant is used, it is placed in bits 16 through 19, and bits 20 through 23 are filled with zeros.

3 Set to hex FF.

The constant is copied into the result decimal register. The constant is placed into byte 15 of the decimal register, and bytes 0 through 14 are filled with blanks (hex 40s).

Decimal Double-Register Multiply (*)



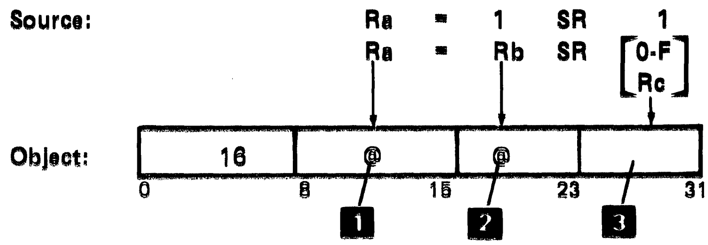
1 Result decimal register address: The address of the double decimal register that will contain the result of this operation.

2 Factor 1 decimal register address: The address of the decimal register that contains factor 1, or a single-digit constant (hex 0-9) followed by hex 0.

3 Factor 2 decimal register address: The address of the decimal register that contains factor 2, or a single-digit constant (hex 0-9) followed by hex 0.

This instruction multiplies the factor 1 value by the factor 2 value and stores the product in the result double decimal register.

Decimal Register Shift Right, Blank Pad (SR)



1 Result decimal register address: The address of the decimal register that will contain the shifted data upon completion of this operation.

2 Shift decimal register address: The address of the decimal register that contains the data to shift, or a constant 1 if you want to blank the result register.

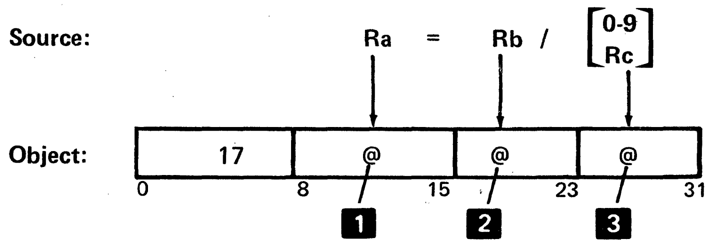
Note: If a constant 1 is used, **3** must also be 1. This is the quickest way to blank a decimal register.

3 Shift count: The number of bytes to shift the data. The shift count can be specified as a constant (hex 0-F) followed by hex 0, or as a decimal register that contains the shift count in the digits portion of the low-order byte of the register.

The bytes of the shift register are shifted right the number of bytes indicated by the shift count, and the shifted result is placed into the result register. The high-order bytes of the shifted result contain blanks (hex 40) for the number of positions shifted. If a negative number is shifted right, the D-zone is shifted out of the register and the register contents are no longer negative.

If a constant 1 is specified for the shift register, the bytes are shifted as though **2** were a decimal register with decimal 1 in the rightmost byte, and bytes 0-14 were blanks. The rightmost byte is shifted out of the register so the register contains only blanks. These blanks replace the contents of the result register.

Decimal Register Divide (/)



1 Result decimal register address: The address of the decimal register that will contain the result of this operation.

2 Factor 1 decimal register address: The address of the factor 1 decimal register.

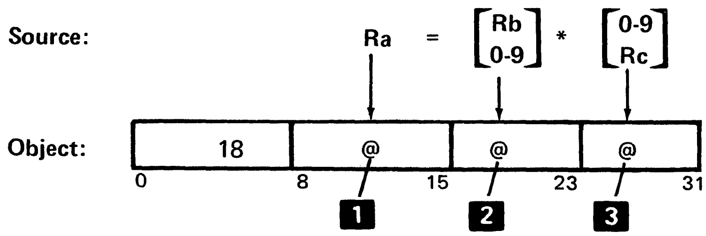
Note: Factor 1 is replaced by the remainder.

3 Factor 2 decimal register address: The address of the decimal register that contains factor 2, or a single-digit constant (hex 0-9) followed by hex 0.

This instruction divides the factor 1 value by the factor 2 value and stores the result in the result register.

Note: If division by zero is attempted, the overflow indicator I124 and the divide error indicator I120 are set on.

Decimal Register Multiply (*)



1 Result decimal register address: The address of the decimal register that will contain the result of this operation.

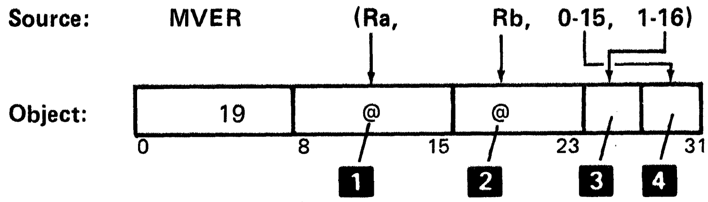
Note: If a carry occurs out of the high-order position in this register, the overflow indicator I124 and the multiply overflow indicator I123 are set on.

2 Factor 1 decimal register address: The address of the decimal register that contains factor 1, or a single-digit constant (hex 0-9) followed by hex 0.

3 Factor 2 decimal register address: The address of the decimal register that contains factor 2, or a single-digit constant (hex 0-9) followed by hex 0.

This instruction multiplies the factor 1 value by the factor 2 value and stores the product in the result register.

Decimal Registers, Move Partial Contents (MVER)



1 Result decimal register address: The address of the decimal register that will contain the moved data upon completion of this operation.

2 From decimal register address: The address of the decimal register from which data is moved. Data is moved left-to-right, starting with the byte that is specified in the MVER instruction. The contents of the from register remains unchanged.

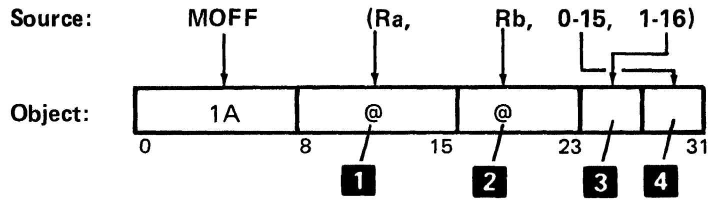
3 Byte count: The number minus 1 (hex 0-F) of bytes to be moved (that is, the length operand minus 1).

Note: If this number of bytes plus the displacement **4** is greater than 16, some of the data is moved into the register that follows the result register.

4 Displacement: The offset (hex 0-F) into both registers of the leftmost byte of data to move.

This instruction moves all or part of the contents of the from register into the result register. The movement is from the specified offset in the from register to the same offset in the result register.

Decimal Registers, Move Partial Contents with Offset (MOFF)



1 Result decimal register address: The address of the decimal register that will contain the moved data.

2 From decimal register address: The address of the decimal register from which data is moved. The contents of the from register remain unchanged.

3 Byte count: The number minus 1 (hex 0-F) of bytes to move. (That is, the length operand, minus 1.)

Note: If this number of bytes, plus the displacement **4** is greater than 16, some of the data is moved into the register that follows the result register.

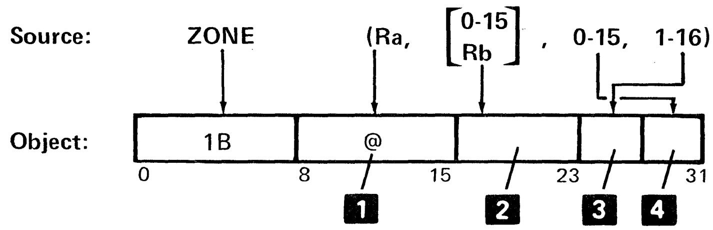
4 Displacement: The offset (hex 0-F) into the result register of the leftmost byte of moved data.

The rightmost number of bytes specified by **3** are moved from the **2** register to the result register. The data is moved from left to right and placed in the result register at the byte specified by offset.

The offset applies only to the result register (Ra), so the move is not limited to corresponding byte positions.

Note: If the sum of offset and length is greater than 16, bytes are moved into the register following the result register.

Decimal Register Zone Modification (ZONE)



1 Result decimal register address: The address of the decimal register that contains bytes to modify. The contents of this register are modified with either the zone modifying digit **2** or the zone portion of the rightmost character in the specified register.

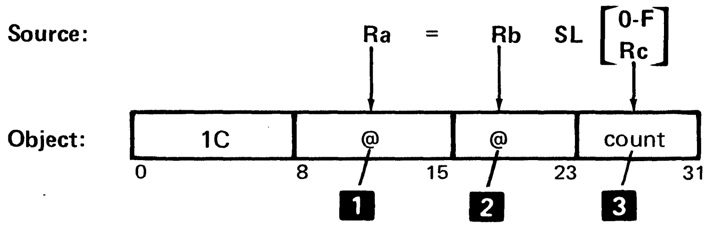
2 Zone modifying digit: The digit (hex 0-F) followed by hex 0, or the address of the decimal register that contains the modifying digit.

3 Length: The number minus 1 (hex 0-F), of bytes to modify.

4 Displacement: The offset (hex 0-F) into the result register of the leftmost byte to modify.

The bytes of the decimal result register (Ra) are modified, starting at the byte specified by offset and continuing to the right for the number of bytes specified by length. The hex character specified by the operand replaces the original zone of each byte specified. If the offset plus length exceeds 16 bytes, the bytes of the next register are also modified.

Decimal Register Shift Left, Blank Fill (SL)



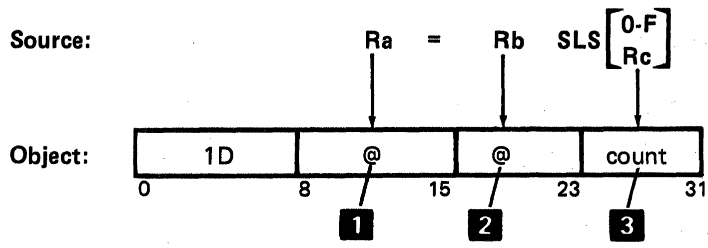
1 Result decimal register address: The address of the decimal register that will contain the shifted data upon completion of this operation. The low-order bytes of the result register are filled with blanks (hex 40). Data that is shifted out of the high end of the register is lost.

2 Shift decimal register address: The address of the decimal register that contains the data to shift. The contents of this register remain unchanged.

3 Shift count: The number of bytes to shift the data. The shift count can be specified as a constant (hex 0-F) followed by hex 0, or as a decimal register that contains the shift count in the digits portion of the low-order byte of the register.

The bytes of the shift register are shifted left the number of bytes indicated by the shift count, and the shifted result is placed into the result register. The low-order positions of the shifted result contain blanks (hex 40s) for the number of positions shifted. If a negative number is shifted left, the D-zone is shifted out of the units position, and the register contents are no longer negative.

Decimal Register Shift Left Signed (SLS)



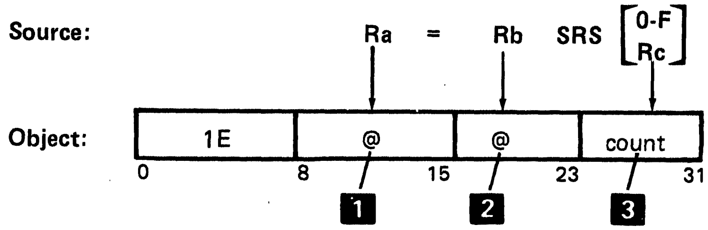
1 Result decimal register address: The address of the decimal register that will contain the shifted data upon completion of this operation. The low-order bytes of the result register are filled with zeros (hex F0). Data that is shifted out of the high end of the register is lost.

2 Shift decimal register address: The address of the decimal register that contains the data to shift. The contents of this register remain unchanged.

3 Shift count: The number of bytes to shift the data. The shift count can be specified as a constant (hex 0-F) followed by hex 0, or as a decimal register that contains the shift count in the digits portion of the low-order byte of the register.

The bytes of the shift register are shifted left the number of bytes indicated by the shift count, and the shifted result is placed into the result register. The low-order bytes of the shifted result contain zeros (hex F0s) for the number of positions shifted. If a negative number is shifted left, the units position of the result register retains the D-zone.

Decimal Register Shift Right Signed (SRS)



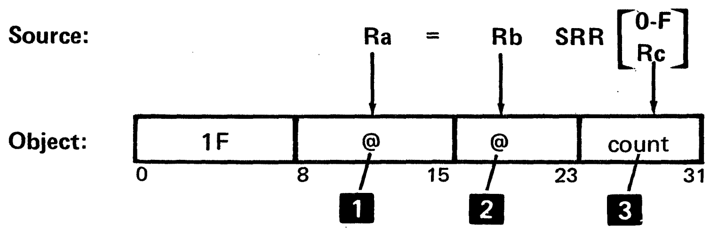
1 Result decimal register address: The address of the decimal register that will contain the shifted data upon completion of this operation. The high-order bytes of the result register are filled with zeros (hex F0). Data that is shifted out of the low end of the register is lost.

2 Shift decimal register address: The address of the decimal register that contains the data to shift. The contents of this register remain unchanged.

3 Shift count: The number of bytes to shift the data. The shift count can be specified as a constant (hex 0-F) followed by hex 0, or as a decimal register that contains the shift count in the digits portion of the low-order byte of the register.

The bytes of the shift register are shifted right the number of bytes indicated by the shift count, and the shifted result is placed into the result register. The high-order bytes of the result register contain zeros (hex F0s) for the number of positions shifted. Any blanks present are shifted without change. If the unshifted contents of the shift register contained a negative value, the result register contains a hex D in the zone portion of the rightmost byte. All other zones remain unchanged.

Decimal Register Shift Right and Round (SRR)



1 Result decimal register address: The address of the decimal register that will contain the shifted data upon completion of this operation. The high-order bytes of the result register are filled with zeros (hex F0). Data that is shifted out of the low end of the register is lost.

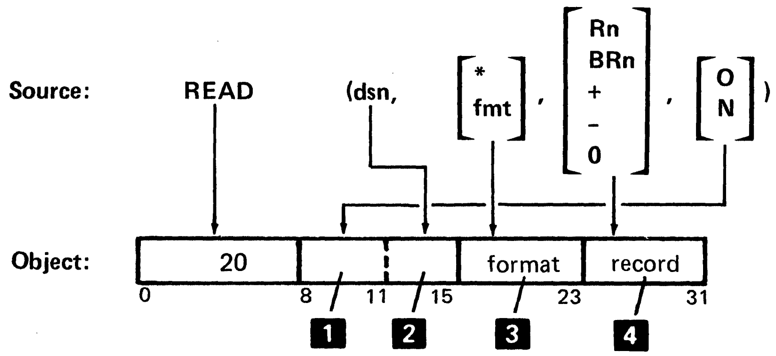
To round the result, a 5 is used with the same sign as the sign that is in the shift register; the 5 is added to the last byte of data that is shifted out of the result register.

2 Shift decimal register address: The address of the decimal register that contains the data to shift. The contents of this register remain unchanged.

3 Shift count: The number of bytes to shift the data. The shift count can be specified as a constant (hex 0-F) followed by hex 0 or as a decimal register that contains the shift count in the digits portion of the low-order byte of the register.

The bytes of the shift register are shifted right the number of bytes indicated by the shift count, and the shifted result is placed into the result register. The high-order bytes of the shifted result contain zeros (hex F0s) for the number of bytes shifted, and the units position of the shifted result retains the zone of the original contents of the shift register. The result is rounded by adding 5 of like sign to the last byte shifted out of the right end of the result register.

Read a Record from a Data Set (READ)



1 Bits:

8	0 = Sequential record access method
	1 = Relative record or key access methods
9	0 = Overlap mode (O specified)
	1 = Nonoverlap mode (N specified)
10	Not used, always zero
11	Not used, always zero

2 Data set number: The number (hex 1-F) of the data set to be read.

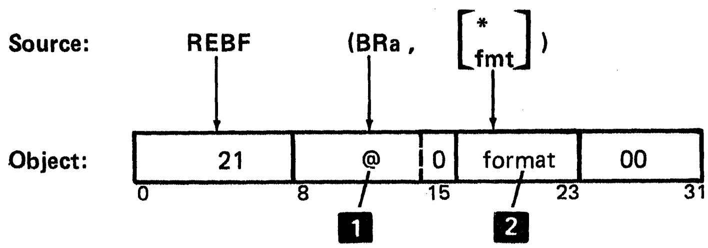
3 Format number: The number (hex 01-FE) of the format to use. If no format number is specified, this is hex FF. For a data directed read, this is hex 00.

4 Record to read: The current record number in the IOB is set to the record number that is to be read. The location of the record to be read can be:

- Rn for the address of the decimal register that contains the key to the record.
- BRn for the address of the binary register that contains the relative record number of the record.
- Hex 07 (– specified) for reading the previous record.
- Hex 08 (0 specified) for reading the current record.
- Hex 09 (+ specified) for reading the next record.

The current record number in the IOB is set to the record number that is to be read. The specified record is read from diskette and put into the logical I/O buffer. If formatting (fmt) is specified, data is formatted, moved from the logical I/O buffer, and put into the storage indicated by the format.

Formatted Read to Storage (REBF)

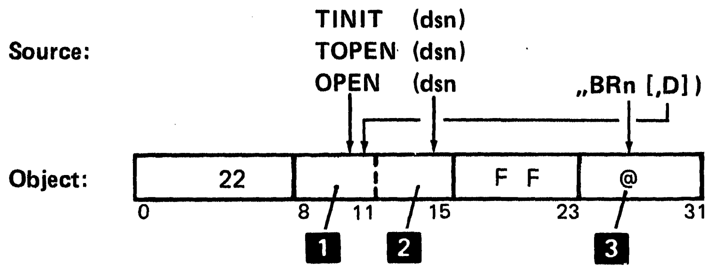


1 Read address: The address of the binary register that contains the address of the leftmost byte of data to read into the storage.

2 Format number: The number (hex 01-FE) of the format to use. For data directed formatting, the * is specified and bits 16 through 23 contain hex 00.

Data is moved into the register specified by the DCLBL parameters of the format. The number of bytes moved is determined by the LEN parameter, with editing controlled by the EDIT parameter of the format.

Open a Data Set or Initialize Communications (OPEN/TOPEN/TINIT)



1 Bits:

8	0 = TINIT, or OPEN for a diskette or printer.
	1 = TOPEN.
9-10	Always 10
11	0 = D is omitted.
	1 = D is specified to OPEN a printer data set for diagnostic purposes.

This option is only available for machines that have the start-stop printer attachment for the IBM 5222 printer.

2 Data set number: The number (hex 1-F) of the data set to be accessed.

3 Binary register address: The ID option for OPEN where the binary register contains the storage address of the owner ID information. This optional owner ID is stored on the volume label and is compared with the owner ID in storage. If the diskette is secure, the ID information in storage must match the owner ID on the volume label in order for the OPEN operation to execute. If the diskette is not a secure diskette, the binary register is ignored. The owner ID information may be up to 14 characters long; if less than 14 characters are used, the owner ID must be followed by a blank (hex 40). If the binary register is omitted, or if this is a TINIT or TOPEN instruction, this byte contains hex 00.

Note: Two commas must precede the binary register if it is included. If the register is omitted, the commas are also omitted.

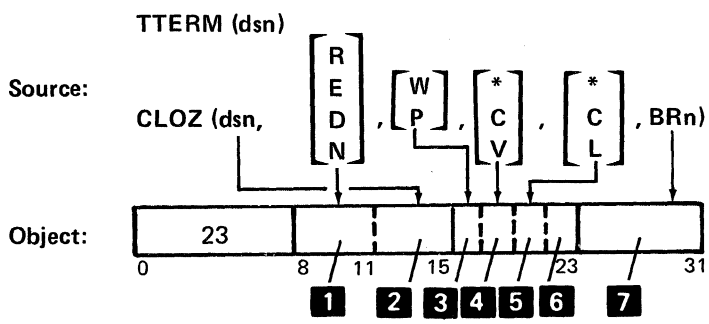
For SNA and MRJE, TINIT establishes the communications link and begins the line connection for communications. For BSC, TINIT establishes the linkage between the application and CAM, but does not establish the link connection.

TOPEN sets the open flag in the communications IOB to indicate that the IOB is open.

OPEN sets the open flag in the diskette or printer data set IOB to indicate that the data set is open. It adds the address of the data set IOB to the IOB chain, and validates the .DATASET parameters in the IOB.

When the open has completed, the data set's HDR1 label will be located in the first 128 bytes of the physical buffer except for pointer I/O and SCS data sets that have the SW or ERS parameter specified in the .DATASET control statement. For a label update data set, the VOL1 label will be saved instead of the HDR1 label. The op code byte in the data set IOB is replaced with hex 00. If there is an external status for insufficient physical buffer size (3430), or two physical buffers specified with unequal sizes (3435), or if any group 7 warning message is presented, the minimum number of 128-byte blocks required for sufficient buffer size is placed into hex 78 of the data set IOB. If any other external status occurs, this number is not placed into the IOB.

Close a Data Set or Terminate Communications (CLOZ/TTERM)



1 Close option for CLOZ

Bits: For a printer, bit 8 = 0 and bits 9-32 are ignored.
- 0100 = No label update, N specified; HDR1 label is not updated.
- 0101 = Normal close, no option specified.
- 0110 = Close and erase, E specified; EOD is set to BOE.
- 1100 = Close and release, R specified; EOE is set to EOD-1.
- 1110 = Close and delete, D specified; label is marked deleted.
- 0100 = TTERM

2 Data set number: The number (hex 1-F) of the data set to be accessed.

3 Write protect option for CLOZ. This affects the write-protect position on the HDR1 label.

Bits 16 and 17:
- 00 = Leave write protect as is, no option specified
- 01 = Clear write protect, W specified
- 10 = Set write protect, P specified
- 00 = TTERM

4 Verify and copy option for CLOZ. This affects the verify/copy position on the HDR1 label.

Bits 18 and 19:
- 00 = Leave verify and copy as is, no option specified
- 01 = Clear verify and copy, * specified
- 10 = Set verify, V specified
- 11 = Set copy, C specified
- 00 = TTERM

5 Multivolume option for CLOZ. This affects the multivolume positions on the HDR1 label.

Bits 20 and 21:
- 00 = Leave multivolume as is, no option specified
- 01 = Clear multivolume, * specified
- 10 = Set continued volume, C specified
- 11 = Set last volume, L specified
- 00 = TTERM

6 Bits 22 and 23: Not used, always 00.

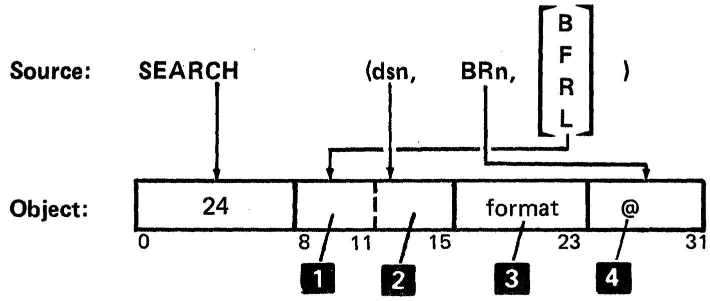
7 Multivolume number for CLOZ: The address of the binary register that contains the volume number, or hex 00 if the multivolume option is not specified. Hex 00 is also for TTERM.

The TTERM instruction terminates the logical connection between the application program and the communications access method.

The CLOZ instruction removes the data set IOB from the IOB chain and resets the open-flag in the IOB. If any records have been added, the EOD is updated as appropriate. Any functions specified in the operand fields of the CLOZ instruction are performed. When the CLOZ is completed, the op code in the IOB is reset to 0.

For an erase type data set, the block length, record length, and EOD are updated on the HDR1 label to the values in the IOB.

Search a Data Set (SEARCH)



1 Type of search

Bits 8 through 11:
- 0100 = Binary search, B specified
- 0101 = Forward search, F specified
- 0110 = Reverse search, R specified
- 1110 = Logical record search, L specified

2 Data set number: The number (hex 1-F) of the data set that the diskette microprocessor is to search for a specified record. When the record is found, it is placed in the I/O buffer.

3 The assembler sets this byte to hex FF; however, you can change it to a format number, or to hex 00 for data directed formatting.

4 Parameters' address: The address of a binary register that contains the address of the search parameters. The search parameters must be prepared and stored in main storage before the SEARCH instruction is issued. The format of the search parameters is described following the purpose statement.

The search operation searches a data set for a record that agrees with the mask specifications. If a match is found, the matching record is placed into the logical record buffer and the search ends. If no match is found, the contents of the logical buffer depend on the type of search performed.

A binary search operation searches for the relative record position within the data set of a logical record that matches the mask. If a match is not found, the record in the relative record position following the position where the record would have been located is placed into the logical buffer and an external status (3702) is reported. If the record would have been beyond EOD, an external status (3703) is reported, and the last record is placed into the logical buffer.

A sequential search operation searches a data set for a record that matches one or more mask specifications. Multiple mask specifications include the relational operators. AND and OR, with AND having priority over OR. If no match is found, the last logical record (for a forward search) or the first logical record (for a reverse search) is placed into the logical record buffer and an external status (3702) is reported.

The format of the search parameters is as follows:

For a Binary Search

Byte	**Contents**
0-1	Length of the mask
2-3	Field position in which to begin search
4-n	Mask

Only one mask specification may be used.

Example: The following mask specification uses a binary search to search a data set for a record containing 137 in position 15.

$$X'\overbrace{0003}^{\textbf{Length}}\underbrace{000F}_{\textbf{Position}}\overbrace{F1F3F7}^{\textbf{Mask}}'$$

For a Forward Search, Reverse Search, or Logical Record Search

Byte	**Contents**
0-1	Length of the mask
2	Relative and logical operators. The 5280 does not check bits 0 and 1 when it processes the first mask specification. However, every following mask specification must have either bit 0 or bit 1 (but not both) turned on. Each mask specification can have one, and only one, of bits 2-7 turned on. If more than one is on, an external status (3417) is presented.

Bit	*Meaning if 1*
0	Logical AND
1	Logical OR
2	LT (less than)
3	GT (greater than)
4	LE (less than or equal)
5	GE (greater than or equal)
6	EQ (equal)
7	NE (not equal)

Byte	Contents
3-4	Field position in which to begin search.
5-6	Field position in which to end search.
7-n	Mask.

The mask specification can be repeated from byte 0. Follow the mask in the last specification with X'0000' to indicate the end.

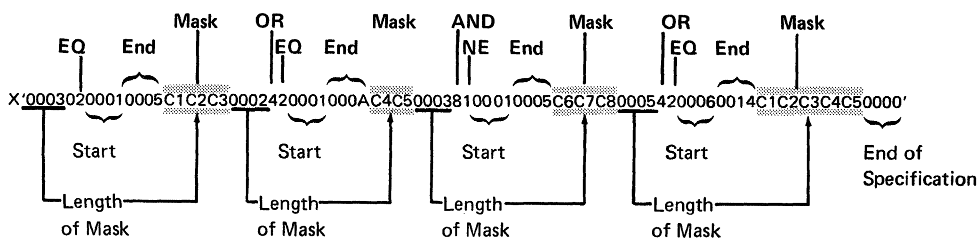
Example of a Forward Search:

The following mask specifications search a data set for a record that satisfies *one* of the following three conditions:

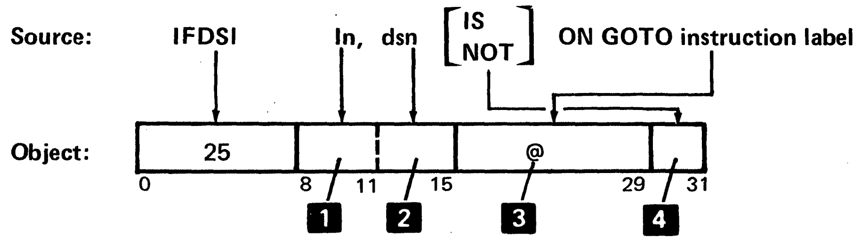
1. Contains 'ABC' in positions 1-5.

2. Contains 'DE' in positions 1-10 AND 'FGH' is not in positions 1-5.

3. Contains 'ABCDE' in positions 6-20.



Test Data Set Status Indicators (IFDSI)



1 Data set status indicator number: The number of the status indicator (hex 0-F) to be tested. Indicator numbers 0-7 test bits 0-7 of IOB byte 0. Indicator numbers 8-F test bits 0-7 of IOB byte 13.

2 Data set number: The number (hex 1-F) of the data set to be accessed.

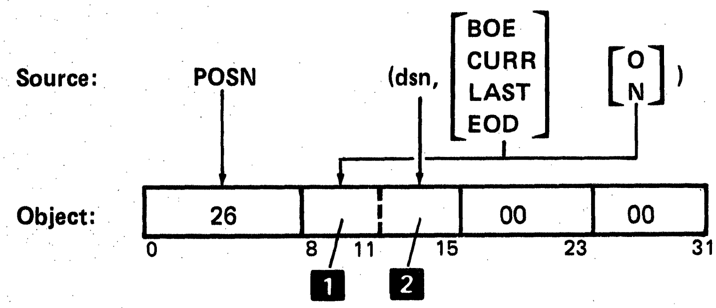
3 Branch address: The address of the instruction the microprocessor branches to if the diskette data set status conditions are met.

4 Bits 30 and 31:
00 = IS—branch to the instruction **3** if the specified indicator **1** is on.
01 = NOT—branch to the instruction **3** if the specified indicator **1** is not on.

The microprocessor branches to the branch address if:

- The specified indicators are on and IS is specified.
- The specified indicators are off and NOT is specified.
- This instruction does not implicitly check for external status.

Position Diskette (POSN)



1 Record pointer: Position the data set pointer by the diskette microprocessor to the record specified or read a specified record into the buffer.

Bit Settings	Meaning
0x00	Set the current record counter to zero, BOE specified.
0x01	Read a new copy of the current record from diskette, CURR specified.
0x10	Set the current record counter to the number of the last logical record in the data set, and read it from the diskette, LAST specified.
1x00	Set the current record counter to the record number following the last record, EOD specified.
x = 0	Overlapped (O specified).
x = 1	Nonoverlapped (N specified).

2 Data set number: The number (hex 1-F) of the data set to be accessed.

This operation modifies the contents of the current record counter. If CURR or LAST is specified, the logical record indicated is read into the physical buffer.

Communications SCS Conversion (COMMSCS)

Source: COMMSCS ([BRN])

Object:

27	00	00	@
0	8	15	23 / 1 31

1 This binary register contains the 16 bit address of a presentation services control block (PSCB) that contains all of the data and work areas required for execution of this instruction. The PSCB must reside in the same partition from which the call is made and must start on a 128-byte boundary.

PSCB Format

The format of the PSCB is as follows:

Bytes	Contents
0	FM Header information (does not have to be initialized by caller).
1	Request unit data type. Bits 6 and 7 are 00 = MRJE 01 = SNA 10 = BSC 3741 11 = BSC 3780
2	Print data stream indicator, SNA and BSC only. X'30' = print data stream Other = nonprint data stream
3	Media type, MRJE only. X'00' = console data stream, obtained from RCB = X'91' X'20' = card data stream, obtained from RCB = X'95' X'30' = print data stream, obtained from RCB = X'94'
4	Compression indicator. B'xxxxx1xx' = compressed Other = noncompressed (SNA-SDLC and BSC only)
4-5	MRJE data request unit continuation address. This is the relative address of either an RCB that caused a media change or an unsupported RCB (MRJE only).

6-7	Data request unit starting address, relative within partition. For compressed SNA data, the first byte of the first request unit must be an SCB. For MRJE, the first byte must be an RCB.
8	System use only. Must be initialized to 0.
9-B	Logical record starting address, absolute.
C-D	Data request unit length. For MRJE, the data request unit length need not be specified.
E-F	Logical record length. For print stream, the length must be at least 15 bytes in order to handle set horizontal format (SHF), set vertical format (SVF), and an initial carriage movement to the top and left margins when first called.
10	System use only. Must be initialized to 0.
11-13	Vertical tab table starting address, absolute. For print system only. See description of vertical tab table in this section.
14	Vertical tab table length. Must be equal to or greater than 4 bytes in length.
15	System use only. Must be initialized to 0.
16-18	Horizontal tab table starting address, absolute. For print stream only. See description of horizontal tab table in this section.
19	Horizontal tab table length. Must be equal to or greater than 3 bytes in length.
1A-1B	Actual number of bytes returned in the logical record.
1C-1D	Return code. The user can enter an instruction code when calling COMMSCS and will receive a return code when COMMSCS returns control. The caller must not alter this return code if the SCS processor is to continue from the current point when recalled.
1E	System use only. Must be initialized to 0.

User Actions

For SNA, on the first call the user should:

- Initialize byte X'8' to X'00'.
- Provide the beginning address of the logical record in X'9-B' of the PSCB.
- Provide the beginning address of the data request unit (the first byte of the incoming data to be processed) in X'6-7' of the PSCB.
- Provide the number of bytes of the logical record in X'E-F' of the PSCB.
- Provide the number of bytes of the data request unit to be processed (only data bytes, not header bytes) in X'C-D' of the PSCB.
- Initialize byte X'15' to X'00'.
- Provide the horizontal tab table address in X'16-18' of the PSCB.
- Provide the horizontal tab table length in X'19' of the PSCB.
- Initialize byte X'10' to X'00'.
- Provide the vertical tab table address in X'11-13' of the PSCB.
- Provide the vertical tab table length in X'14' of the PSCB.
- Set byte 1 on the PSCB to indicate SNA processing.
- Set byte 2 of the PSCB to indicate print or nonprint as the data set type.
- Set byte 4 of the PSCB to indicate compression status.
- Set X'1C-1D' of the PSCB (return code) to X'8015' (begin).
- Initialize byte X'1E' to X'00'.

After receiving "END OF LR" (X'0414') as the return code, the caller should:

- Give the processed logical record to the proper utility to be printed.
- Obtain a new logical record and place its beginning address and length into the PSCB, or use the same one again by leaving the address and length unchanged.
- Call again, leaving the return code untouched, to continue processing the data request unit.

After receiving "END OF RU" (X'0313') as the return code, the caller should:

- If the final data request unit was just processed, look at the number of bytes in the logical record to determine if any processed bytes remain that should be sent to the utility.
- If more data request units are to be processed for this data set, obtain the next request unit and place its beginning address and length into the PSCB.
- Call again, leaving the return code untouched, to continue processing the next data request unit.

If on the first call, the user places the vertical tab table and the horizontal tab table beginning addresses and lengths into the PSCB, the user will not have to do this again on succeeding calls.

For BSC on the first call the user should:

- Provide the beginning address of the logical record in X'9-B' of the PSCB.
- Provide the beginning address of the data request unit (the first byte of the incoming data to be processed) in X'6-7' of the PSCB.
- Provide the number of bytes of the logical record in X'E-F' of the PSCB.
- Provide the number of bytes of the data request unit to be processed (only data bytes, not header bytes) in X'C-D' of the PSCB.
- Initialize byte X'15' to X'00'.
- Provide the horizontal tab table address in X'16-18' of the PSCB.
- Provide the horizontal tab table length in X'19' of the PSCB.
- Initialize byte X'10' to X'00'.
- Provide the vertical tab table address in X'11-13' of the PSCB.
- Provide the vertical tab table length in X'14' of the PSCB.
- Set byte 0 of the PSCB to indicate BUSYNC processing.
- Set byte 1 of the PSCB to indicate print or nonprint as the data set type.
- Set X'1C-1D' of the PSCB (return code) to X'8015' (begin).
- Initialize byte X'1E' to X'00'.

After receiving "END OF LR" (X'0414') as the return code, the caller should:

- Give the processed logical record to the proper utility to be printed.
- Obtain a new logical record and place its beginning address and length into the PSCB, or use the same one again by leaving the address and length unchanged.
- Call again, leaving the return code untouched, to continue processing the data request unit.

After receiving "END OF RU" (X'0313') as the return code, the caller should:

- If the final data request unit was just processed, look at the number of bytes in the logical record to determine if any processed bytes remain that should be sent to the utility.
- If more data request units are to be processed for this data set, obtain the next request unit and place its beginning address and length into the PSCB.
- Call again, leaving the return code untouched, to continue processing the next data request unit.

If on the first call, the user places the vertical tab table and the horizontal tab table beginning addresses and lengths into the PSCB, the user will not have to do this again on succeeding calls.

For MRJE, on the first call the user should:

- Provide the beginning address of the logical record in X'9-B' of the PSCB.
- Provide the beginning address of the data request unit (the first byte of the incoming data to be processed) in the X'6-7' of the PSCB.
- Provide the number of bytes of the logical record in X'E-F' of the PSCB.
- Initialize byte X'15' to X'00'.
- Provide the horizontal tab table address in X'16-18' of the PSCB.
- Provide the horizontal tab table length in X'19' of the PSCB.
- Initialize byte X'10' to X'00'.
- Provide the vertical tab table address in X'11-13' of the PSCB.
- Provide the vertical tab table length in X'14' of the PSCB.
- Set byte 0 of the PSCB to indicate MRJE processing.
- Set X'1C-1D' of the PSCB (return code) to X'8015' (begin).
- Initialize byte X'1E' to X'00'.

After receiving "END OF LR" (X '0414') as the return code, the caller should:

- Give the processed logical record to the proper utility to be printed.
- Obtain a new logical record and place its beginning address and length into the PSCB, or use the same one again by leaving the address and length unchanged.
- Call again, leaving the return code untouched, to continue processing the data request unit.

After receiving "END OF RU" (X'0313') as the return code, the caller should:

- If there are more data request units to process, then obtain the next data request unit and place its beginning address into the PSCB. Then call again, leaving the return code untouched, to continue processing the next data request unit.
- If the caller knows that the last data request unit available to him was just processed, look at the number of bytes in the LR to determine if there are processed bytes that should be sent to the utility to be printed or displayed. Also the caller sets the return code to middle of page (X'8017') when a data request unit becomes available that is part of the same data stream as a previous data request unit. This allows printing to continue from the middle of a printed page.

After receiving "MEDIA TYPE CHANGED" (X'5018') as the return code, the caller should:

- Give the processed logical record to the utility.
- Determine the new media type and obtain a new logical record and place its beginning address and its proper length in the MRJE PSCB.
- Get the address of the RCB that caused the media change from X'4-5' of the PSCB and store it as the begin address of the data request unit pointing to the first RCB to be processed.
- Set the return code to X'8015' because this condition is now the same as on the first call.
- If resuming an interrupted printer data stream, set the return code to X'8017' to retain CAM information. Also set byte 3 to X'30' (printer data code), and turn on bit X'80' in byte 44 for SCS processing.

After receiving "INVALID RCB" (X'5516') as the return code, the caller should:

- Get the address of the invalid RCB from X'4-5' of the PSCB and change it to the next RCB, then store it back in X'4-5'. Handle the invalid RCB properly because it is control information.
- Leave the return code alone and call again, so this new RCB will be processed as though an invalid RCB was never detected.

After receiving "PARAMETER ERROR" (X'1005') or "BAD SCB" (X'6006') as the return code, the caller should:

- Handle the error properly.
- Set the return code to X'8015' on the next call.

Return Codes

The valid values of the return code field (X'1C-1D of the PSCB) are:

Value	Meaning
X'8015'	This value must be set by the user at the time of the first call.
X'1005'	Returned when a function or value parameter is detected that contains an invalid code for that parameter, or when the number of bytes assigned to either the horizontal tab table or the vertical tab table is insufficient to handle the parameter count attached to the SHF or SVF (too many tab stop values to fit into the tab table).
X'1003'	Returned when an SCS control code is detected that has not been implemented by the COMMSCS instruction.
X'1001'	Returned when a string control byte is detected that has not been implemented by the COMMSCS instruction.
X'0414'	Returned when the SCS processor has finished putting data into the logical record for the present. Bytes X'1A-1B' of the PSCB contain the number of bytes in the LR. This code also is returned if, when the SCS processor processes print stream data sets from the data request unit, a set horizontal format or set vertical format control character is detected and there is data in the LR. This return code tells the caller to use the LR before the tab table changes the format of the presentation surface. This code will not be returned if a set horizontal format or set vertical format control character is detected while the SCS processor is processing a nonprint data set. **Note:** This code is returned for print data if the last byte in the request unit fills the last byte in the logical record. That is, if end-of-request unit and end-of-logical record occur at the same time, the end-of-logical record (X'0414) is returned before the end-of-request unit (X'0313). For nonprint data, if both occur at the same time, the X'0313 is returned before the X'0414'.
X'0313'	Returned when the SCS processor has placed all bytes of the request unit in the logical record. This does not mean the data set is completed; there may be more request units. See the note under X'0414' for a description of which code is returned when end-of-logical record and end-of-request unit both occur at the same time.

X'0212'	Returned when a tab table has been changed by an SHF or SVF from a request unit. The updated maximum presentation column or maximum presentation line is in the logical record and the target is a print data set. Call again to continue processing the request unit.
X'5516'	Returned when the RCB detected is not recognized (MRJE only).
X'5018'	Returned when the media type has been changed via RCB.
X'6006'	Returned when the SCB detected is not recognized (MRJE only).
X'6519'	Returned when end-of-file (MRJE only).
X'8017'	Set by caller to resume printing (MRJE only).
X'8016'	Set by caller to resume printing without changing print positions (SNA only).
X'8024'	Set by caller to resume printing at left margin; note changes in the PSCB (SNA only).
X'7020'	Returned if the subrecord control byte of MRJE print data sets is not supported.

When either a X'1005', X'1013', X'1001', X'6006', or X'7020' code is returned, the SCS processor does not store pointers and does not return the proper number of bytes in the logical record to X'1A-1B' of the PSCB. These are error conditions, indicating that the caller should not attempt to continue processing the current data request unit. To call SCS again, the caller must place the X'8015' (begin) code in X'1C-1D' of the PSCB.

To switch between print stream and nonprint stream, or to switch between compressed data and noncompressed data, the caller must place the X'8015' (begin) code in X'1C-1D' of the PSCB.

There is no need for the caller to blank the logical record when completed; the SCS processor fills the logical record with blanks for a nonprint data set, or X'00' for a print data set.

Horizontal Tab Table

The horizontal tab table can be up to 255 bytes long, and must be a minimum of three bytes long. The first three bytes must have a value ranging between 1 and 255. The structure of the table is:

Disp	Bytes	Description
0	1	Maximum presentation position (MPP). This byte is used to set the printer MPP.
1	1	Right margin (RM). SCS processing treats RM as the MPP. RM and MPP should contain the same value.
2	1	Left margin (LM).
3		Tab positions. These do not have to be ascending, but no tab can be less than the left margin or greater than the right margin. Tab values are absolute, not relative.

Vertical Tab Table (or Channel Stops)

The vertical tab table can be up to 255 bytes long, and must be a minimum of four bytes long. The first four bytes must have values ranging between 1 and 255. The structure of the table is:

Disp	Bytes	Description
0	1	Maximum presentation line.
1	1	Bottom margin.
2	1	Top margin.
3		Tab positions. If these are not in ascending order, results may be unpredictable. No tab can be less than the top margin or greater than the bottom margin. Bytes 4-14 can be used to hold values for channels 2-12. The top margin is the value for channel 1. Values for the channels do not have to be in ascending order. If a channel or tab stop has a value of zero, the default is a line feed. Tab values are absolute, not relative. The first 12 values can be the line numbers for channels 1 through 12. The first tab stop is top margin. For an absolute index into the tab table, no check is made to determine if the index is within the table.

Compressed Data

If the data request unit contains compressed data the first character is a string control byte (SCB) having one of the following three formats:

B'00xxxxxx'	Nonidentical character string. Identifies a string of nonidentical characters that immediately follow this SCB. xxxxxx = the number of characters in the string (ranging from 1-63 bytes).
B'11xxxxxx'	Nonblank identical character string. Defines the number of repetitions of the character that follows this SCB, creating a string of identical nonblank characters. xxxxxx = the number of times the following character is to be repeated (ranging from 1-63 bytes).
B'10xxxxxx'	Blank character string. Defines, and completely replaces, a series of blanks that make up a string of blank characters. xxxxxx = the number of blank characters in the string.

Note: Any other SCB representation or xxxxxx = 0 will result in a return code of '1001' or '6006' (SCB not valid).

SNA Data

Control characters within an SNA data request unit that define the format of the data include:

Control Character	Meaning
X'0D'	Carriage return. Print data streams - The carriage return is issued and the print position is moved to the left margin. The print position is converted into vertical and horizontal presentation position parameters. Nonprint data streams - The pointer is reset to the start of the logical record.
X'15'	New line. Print data streams - This increments the line number. If the updated internal line number is greater than the bottom margin, a forms feed is issued, and the top margin is converted into vertical and horizontal presentation position parameters. If the updated internal line number is less than or equal to the bottom margin, then a new line will be issued. After either of the above, the print position moves to the left margin and is converted into a horizontal presentation position parameter.

Nonprint data streams - A new line will result in blanks in the rest of the record.

X'0C' Forms feed.
Print data streams - Forms feed is issued and the print position is moved to the top and left margin. The print position is converted into vertical and horizontal presentation position parameters.

X'1E' Interrecord separator.
Print data streams - The SCS routine acts the same as X'15'.

Nonprint data streams - This gives the user a full record by padding to the end of the record with blanks.

X'25' Line feed.
Print data streams - This increments the internal current line number. If the updated line number is greater than the bottom margin, a forms feed is issued and top margin is converted into a vertical presentation position parameter with no change to the print position.

Nonprint data streams - A line feed places blanks in the remainder of the record, and blanks in the beginning portion of the next record, up to the current column number. The current column number stays the same.

X'35' Transparent.
All data streams - When this character is received, it is skipped and its count used to define the number of following characters not checked for SCS control codes. The transparency count may span either SCBs or RUs or both. Valid values are 1 to 255.

Print data streams - The line and column values are not updated until all transparent data has been processed.

X'0B' Vertical tab.
Print data streams - This is a formatting control that moves the print position vertically down to the next tab stop setting. Vertical tab stop values may be set through use of the set vertical format (SVF) function. If there are no vertical tab stops set below the current line number, this function issues a line feed. If the tab entry is greater than the bottom margin, a parameter error is returned. The vertical tab is converted into a vertical presentation position parameter.

X'05' Horizontal tab.
Print data stream - This is a formatting control that moves the print position horizontally to the right to the next tab stop setting. Horizontal tab stop values may be set through use of the set horizontal format (SHF) function. If no horizontal tab stops are set to the right of the current position, this function creates a space. If the tab entry is greater than the right margin, a parameter error is returned. The horizontal tab is converted into a horizontal presentation position parameter.

Nonprint data stream - Inserts a space.

X'04' Vertical channel select.
Print data stream - This, along with the channel code, moves the print position to the correct line number. The line number is retrieved from the vertical tab table referred to in the PSCB. If the new line number referenced by the channel index is less than or equal to the current line number, the print position is set to the new line number on the next page. If the tab entry is greater than the bottom margin, a parameter error is returned. If the tab entry is zero, a line feed is inserted and the print position is not changed. The print position is converted into vertical and horizontal presentation position parameters.

Nonprint data streams - This issues a line feed with no change to the column number.

X'14' Enable presentation.
This SCS character is skipped for print and nonprint data streams.

X'24' Inhibit presentation.
Same as X'14'.

X'16' Backspace.
Print data stream - This moves the print position to the immediately preceding print position. If the current print position is column 1, then the backspace results in a NO-OP. The print position is converted into a horizontal presentation position parameter. This supports overstrike characters and is not to be used for error correction.

Nonprint data stream - This moves the column number to the immediately preceding column number. The character at the preceding column number is replaced by the character following the backspace SCS control if the next character is greater than or equal to X'40'. If the column number is 1, the backspace results in a NO-OP.

X'2BC1' Set horizontal format.
Print data streams - Set horizontal format (SHF) can include setting a maximum print position, left margin position, right margin position, and horizontal tab stop positions. Since printers for the IBM 5280 directly support only the maximum print function, these parameters are placed in the horizontal tab table referred to by the PSCB, rather than issued in the data stream. The maximum print position is sent to the printer via an SHF and is followed by a presentation position with a value equal to the new left margin.

A one-byte count field follows the SHF code and counts the number of bytes to the end of the string, including the count byte. Note that the maximum count is the length of the tab table plus one. The first three parameters following the count define the maximum print position, the left margin, the right margin respectively. The SHF code sets all controls to default values of MPP = 132, RM = 132, and LM = 1. A value of zero for any of these parameters is a NO-OP and results in the function retaining its default value. Tab stop values start in the fifth parameter position following the SHF code and may range from 0-255. A tab value of zero will, however, not be placed in the table. The minimum sequence that can be sent is SHF with a count value of one. This results in all SHF parameters reverting to their default values. All tab stops are set initially to zero.

Nonprint data streams - The field is skipped. However, the count field is inspected for a valid value. The return code of end of LR is not returned.

X'2BC2' Set vertical format.

Print data streams - Set vertical format (SVF) can include setting maximum print line, a top margin position, a bottom margin position, and vertical tab stop positions. Since prints for the IBM 5280 directly support only the maximum print line, these parameters are placed in the vertical tab table referred to by the PSCB, rather than issued in the data stream. The maximum print line is sent to the printer via a SVF preceded by a forms feed. After the SVF is sent, vertical and horizontal presentation position parameters are issued to place the print position at the left margin and the top margin.

If the next character in the RU following the SVF is an FF SCS control, the forms feed is skipped. A one byte count field follows the SVF code and counts the number of bytes to the end of the string, including the count byte. Note that the maximum count is the length of the tab table. The first three parameters following the count define the maximum print line, the top margin, and the bottom margin respectively. The SVF code sets all controls to default values of MPL = 1, TM = 1, and BM = 1. The first tab stop is also set to a default value of 1. A value of zero for any of these parameters is a NO-OP and results in the function retaining its default value. Tab stop values start in the fifth parameter position following the SVF code and may range from 0-255. The minimum sequence that can be sent is SVF with a count value of one. This results in all SVF parameters reverting to their default values.

Nonprint data streams - This field is skipped. However, the count field is inspected for a valid value. The return code of end of LR is not returned.

X'00' Null.

Same as X'14'.

X'2F' Bell.

This character is sent to the printer. If it is received on a nonprint stream, it is skipped.

X'2BC8'	Set graphic error action. This data is sent to the printer. If it is received on a nonprint stream, the field is skipped. (See SCS control character Fmt SGEA in Appendix B.)
X'2BC6'	Set line density. The entire set line density field is bypassed for both print and nonprint data sets, because printers for the IBM 5280 do not support this function.

Note: Any SNA control character less than X'40' that is not listed here results in a return code of X'1003'.

BSC Data

Control characters within a BSC data request unit that define the format of the data include:

Control Character	Meaning
X'15'	New line. Print data streams - This increments the line number. If the updated internal line number is greater than the bottom margin, a forms feed is issued, and the top margin is converted into a vertical presentation position parameter. If the updated internal line number is less than or equal to the bottom margin, then a new line will be issued. After either of the above, the print position moves to the left margin and is converted into a horizontal presentation position parameter. Nonprint data streams - A new line will result in blanks in the rest of the record.
X'25'	Line feed. Print data streams - This increments the line number. If the updated line number is greater than the bottom margin, a forms feed is issued, and the top margin is converted into a vertical presentation position parameter. If the updated line number is less than or equal to the bottom margin, the print position is moved to the left margin and converted into a vertical presentation position parameter. If there is an outstanding ESC sequence pending, the ESC sequence is executed instead of NL or LF if the device to be emulated is an IBM 3741. If the device is an IBM 3780, then only NL and IRS cause execution of outstanding ESC. If there is an outstanding ESC sequence pending and a new ESC control character is detected, the outstanding ESC is executed using the old ESC parameter. The new ESC then becomes pending. Nonprint data streams - The hexadecimal byte for the SCS character is placed directly into the logical record with no other conversion occurring.

X'0C'	Forms feed. Print data streams - The forms feed is issued and the print positions are moved to the top and left margins. Nonprint data streams - This hexadecimal byte is put directly into the logical record.
X'00'	Null. For print streams, the null character is skipped. No conversion occurs. For nonprint, null is put in the LR.
X'1E'	Interrecord separator. Print data streams - The SCS routine acts the same as X'15'. Nonprint data streams - This gives the user a full record by padding to the end of the record with blanks.
X'0B'	Vertical tab. Print data streams - This is a formatting control that moves the print position vertically to the line number contained in the second tab stop (channel 2) in the vertical tab table. If the tab stop is zero, the vertical tab results in a line feed. If the tab stop is greater than the bottom margin, a parameter error is returned. The vertical tab is converted into a vertical presentation position parameter. Nonprint data streams - This hexadecimal byte is put directly into the logical record.
X'05'	Horizontal tab. Print data streams - SCS generates a print position to the next tab setting found in the horizontal tab table. If no horizontal tab stops are set to the right of the current column number, the default of 1 space is taken. The print position is converted into a horizontal presentation position parameter. Nonprint data streams - This hex byte is put directly into the logical record.
X'27'	Escape sequence. Following this byte is another byte that says either to go to channel 1 through channel 12, or to skip 1 to 9 lines, or to suppress a space. The escape (ESC) function is executed by the NL, LF, IRS, or next ESC control character if the device to be emulated is an IBM 3741. If the device to be emulated is an IBM 3780, only NL, IRS, or ESC cause execution of the ESC sequence. If the parameter value is not valid or the tab entry is greater than the bottom margin, a parameter error is returned. Valid parameters are:

M(X'D4')	= space suppress
/(X'61')	= single space
S-Z(X'E2 - E9')	= space 2-9 lines
A-I(X'C1-C9')	= skip to channel 1-9
J-L(X'D1 - D3')	= skip to channel 10-12

Print data streams - SCS generates either:

- PP (channel (x)) + PP (LM)
- PP (relative vertical (x)) + PP (LM)

where x = channel number or number of lines to skip, LM = left margin, and PP = presentation position value.

Nonprint data streams - The 2 hexadecimal bytes are put directly into the logical record.

X'1D' Repeat blank.
Following this byte is a byte that states the number of blanks to repeat (up to 63). The blank count has a value of X'41' - X'7F' for repeat counts of 1-63 respectively. A repeat value not in this range results in a parameter error.

Print data streams - The SCS routine moves the print position horizontally to the right for the number of blanks (spaces) requested. If the right margin is reached, a new line is issued and the print position is moved to the left margin. Then the print position is moved the remaining number of blanks. The print position is then converted into a horizontal presentation position parameter.

Nonprint data streams - The logical record pointer is moved the number of blanks requested. This leaves blanks in the logical record because the logical record was filled with blanks at the start of processing. The blanks will carry over into the next logical record if the end of the previous logical record is reached before the requested number of blanks is issued.

MRJE Data

For MRJE, a data request unit contains:

- Record control bytes (RCB)
- Sub-record control bytes (SRCB)
- String control bytes (SCB)
- Data

The sequence of control bytes and data within a data request unit follow the pattern:

RCB	Record 1
SRCB	Record 1
SCB	Record 1, string 1
Data	Variable length character string
SCB	Record 1, string 2
Data	Variable length character string
SCB	Record 1, terminating SCB
RCB	Record 2
SRCB	Record 2
SCB	Record 2, string 1
Data	Variable length character string
SCB	Record 2, terminating SCB
RCB	Transmission block terminator

Record Control Byte (RCB): Each record within a transmission block begins and ends with a record control byte. The record control byte contains the following:

Contents	Meaning
B'1SSSTTTT'	Input/output stream indicator.
SSS	Specifies to which stream in a group of like streams this record belongs. For the 5280, this field is always 001.
TTTT	Specifies the type of record being transmitted.

Bits	Meaning
0001	Operator message display request
0010	Operator console input record (invalid RCB)
0011	Normal input record (invalid RCB)
0100	Print record
0101	Punch record

Contents	Meaning
B'00000000'	End of block indicator.

Any other combination results in an invalid RCB return code (X'5516')

Subrecord Control Byte (SRCB): Each record control byte is followed by a subrecord control byte that contains additional information about the record being received. For nonprint streams, this record is ignored. The subrecord control byte contains the following:

Contents	Meaning
B'10CCCCCC'	Print stream control.
CCCCCC	Specifies spacing and skipping control.

Bits	Meaning
000000	Suppress line spacing after print
0000NN	Space NN lines after print
01NNNN	Skip to carriage channel NNNN after printing the record
1000NN	Space NN lines immediately (before print)
11NNNN	Skip to channel NNNN immediately (before print)

If on skip to channel a tab value of zero is found, a line space is performed. If a tab entry is greater than the bottom line, a parameter error is issued. If an invalid SRCB is found, the return code is set to X'7020'.

String Control Byte (SCB): Each group of characters in a record appears in a transmission block either as a string control byte (SCB) followed by one or more characters, or as an SCB alone. An SCB also indicates the end of a record.

As a record is compressed, it is divided into strings of nonidentical characters, nonblank identical characters, and blank characters. The compressed record is formed from these strings as follows:

- Strings of nonidentical characters appear as an SCB followed by the string.
- Strings of nonblank identical characters appear as an SCB followed by one of those characters.
- Strings of blank characters appear as an SCB only.

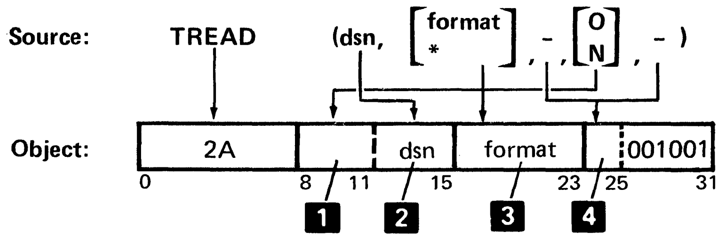
Each SCB includes a count of the number of characters in the original string. If the count is zero, an invalid SCB indication will be returned (X'6006').

An SCB can contain the following:

Contents	**Meaning**
B'00000000'	End-of-record indicator. If this SCB immediately follows an SRCB, the return code will be set to X'6519', indicating end of file. This condition is also set if an SCB = X'40' immediately follows the SRCB. If the logical record is continued in the next transmission block (spanned record), the contents of the end-of- record SCB are B'10000000'.
B'11XXXXXX'	Nonidentical character string. XXXXXX = the number of characters in the string (from 1 through 63 characters). The string of characters immediately follows this SCB in the transmission block.
B'101XXXXX'	Nonblank identical character string. XXXXX = the number of identical characters in the string (from 1 through 31 characters). To specify which character is duplicated in the record, the SCB is followed by a single character from the string.
B'100XXXXX'	Blank character string. XXXXX = the number of blank characters in the string (from 1 through 31 characters).

Note: A code of X'6006' is returned if none of the above are detected.

Read from Communications (TREAD)



1 Bits:

8		Not used, always zero
9	0 =	Overlap mode (O specified)
	1 =	Nonoverlap mode (N specified)
10		Not used, always zero
11		Not used, always zero

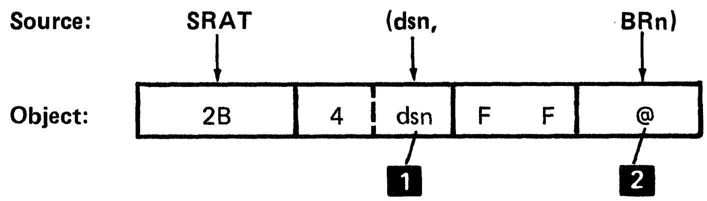
2 Data set number: The number (hex 1-F) of the data set to access. This number is assigned by the DSN parameter of the .COMM control statement.

3 Format number: The number (hex 01-FE) of the format to use. If an asterisk (*) is coded, this will be hex 00 for data directed formatting. If no format entry is coded, this will be hex FF.

4 Bits:

24	0 =	Read the next logical record.
	1 =	Read the entire block (minus sign coded).
25	0 =	Read data.
	1 =	Return control immediately with status if data is not available for the read.

Search Resource Allocation Table (SRAT)



1 Data set number: The number (hex 1-F) of the data set IOB to access.

2 Binary register address: The binary register will be loaded with the physical device address of the data set, which the 5280 finds in the resource allocation table.

This instruction searches the resource allocation table within the partition to find the physical address of the logical device ID. The logical ID is stored in the data set IOB. If the physical address is found, it is stored in the specified register.

I118 is set on if one of the following is true:

- No logical device identifier is present in the set IOB.
- No match is found in the resource allocation table.
- No resource allocation table is available.

When I118 is set on, the device QBA address currently stored in the logical I/O table is placed in the high order byte of the specified binary register. The low order byte will contain unpredictable data.

System Lock (SYSLCK)

Source: SYSLCK

Object:

2C	FF	00	00
0	8	15	23 31

This instruction sets a bit in the partition IOB. This flag will signal the main microprocessor to ignore all hardware attentions such as time-out attention and keyboard attention. The main microprocessor will not exit the partition to execute instructions in another partition until the flag is turned off via a SYSUNL instruction.

System Unlock (SYSUNL)

Source: SYSUNL [(*)]

Object:

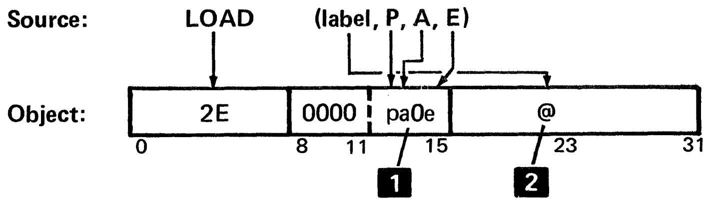
2D	00	00	0000000	1
0	8	15	23	31

1 Partition exit option:

0 = Exit partition immediately; * not specified.
1 = Execute instructions for the normal time limit, then exit partition; * specified.

This instruction turns off the system lock bit to allow the main microprocessor to resume normal operation. It may also be used to relinquish the remaining time in a time slice.

Load a Partition (LOAD)



1 Load parameters:

Bits:

12	0 = Load a full partition; P is not specified.
	1 = Load a partial overlay; P is specified.
13	0 = Do not attempt a background attach; A is not specified.
	1 = Attempt a background attach; A is specified.
14	Not used, always 0.
15	0 = System is providing error handling; E is not specified.
	1 = Program is providing error handling; E is specified.

2 Load parameters address: The address of data area that contains the load parameters, or all zeros if the data area label is not specified. If the label is omitted the operator will be prompted to enter the load parameters from the keyboard.

This instruction loads a partition according to the load parameters. The load parameters may be entered from the keyboard or may be read from a data area. If the parameters are to be read from a data area, they must be stored in the following format:

1. Partition number; 2 bytes in length. The partition number may contain: (a) the number (hex 0-7) in the first byte and blank (hex 40) in the second byte, (b) the 2-byte logical ID assigned to the partition in the resource allocation table, or (c) two blanks (hex 40) if the current partition is to be reloaded.

2. Device address; 4 bytes in length. The device address may contain: (a) the 4-byte physical address of the device that contains the data set to load, or (b) the 2-byte logical device ID assigned to the device in the resource allocation table, followed by two blanks (hex 40).

3. Start address; 2 bytes of hex digits, used only for a partial overlay. The address must be on a 256-byte boundary and must be greater than hex 100.

4. Data set name; up to 32 bytes in length. The data set name may include a volume ID if volume checking is desired. The volume ID may be up to 6 alphameric characters long, preceded by an asterisk and followed by a period. The name of the data set follows the period if the volume ID is included. The name may be up to 8 alphameric characters long for an H, I, or basic exchange data set. For an E exchange data set the name may be up to 17 bytes long, consisting of one or more simple names of up to 8 alphameric characters each, and with each simple name separated by a period. No blanks are allowed within a data set name, but the data set name must end with a blank.

If a partial overlay is loaded, the load parameters must include the relative address where the overlay begins. The original contents of the partition remain unchanged except in the area of the overlay. The first 8 bytes of a partial overlay contain information added by the assembler. The first 2 bytes contain the length of the overlay, the next 2 bytes contain the last 2 bytes of the overlay name, and the remaining 4 bytes are reserved for a patch log. The last 2 bytes of the program name are replaced with the second 2 bytes of the overlay.

If an error occurs during a load, error recovery can be handled by the system or by the application program.

If an error occurs and the application program is handling error recovery, the main microprocessor places an error code into a system binary register (BR16) and returns control to the first instruction following the load instruction. If the load operation is successful, the main microprocessor returns control to the second instruction following the load instruction.

If an error occurs and the system is handling error recovery, the system sends a message to the screen and waits for the operator to press the Reset key. After the reset, error recovery depends on the kind of load being performed as follows.

- If the standard load processor from the common functions area was performing the load, the load prompt is redisplayed with the load parameters previously entered. The operator then rekeys the correct information.

- If a program instruction was reloading the same partition and the standard load prompt is available in the common functions area, the standard load prompt is displayed. The operator then enters the load parameters.

- If a program instruction was reloading the same partition and no standard load prompt is available, the load cannot be retried. The main microprocessor issues an exit instruction and goes to the next partition.

- If a program instruction was loading another partition, the load is not retried. Control returns to the instruction following the load instruction.

Do not put error recovery procedures in a storage area that is to be overlayed with a partial overlay.

Exit a Partition (EXIT)

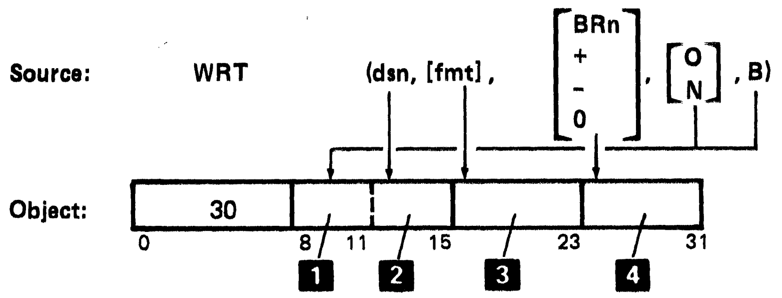
Source: EXIT

Object:

2F	00	00	00
0	8	15	23 31

This instruction detaches a partition if it was attached to a keyboard, closes all open data sets, and executes a system unlock operation in case the partition was locked when the exit instruction was issued (see op code 2D). If the exit instruction is issued in a background partition, bit 1 of byte 1 of the partition IOB pointer in the system control block is turned on to make the partition available to be loaded. This bit must be on for the partition to be loaded by another partition. If the exit instruction is issued in a foreground partition, a flag is set in the partition IOB (bit 6 byte 2B) to indicate that the partition is available to be loaded; the bit in the partition IOB pointer is not turned on, so keystrokes can be processed in the exited partition.

Write a Record to a Data Set (WRT)



1 Bits:

8	0 =	Sequential record access method. For a printer, bit 8 must be 0 and bits 10-23 are ignored.
	1 =	Relative record access method.
9	0 =	Overlap mode.
	1 =	Nonoverlap mode.
10		Not used, always zero.
11	0 =	I/O buffer is not blanked.
	1 =	I/O buffer is blanked at the start of the operation (B is specified) if edit formatting is specified.

2 Data set number: The number (hex 1-F) of the data set to be written.

3 Format number: The number (hex 01-FE) of the format to use. If no format number is used, this will be a hex FF.

4 Record to write: The location of records to write can be:

- BRn for the address of a binary register. If the data set is an SCS data set, the register contains the address of an area where SCS command characters are stored. If the data set is not an SCS data set, the register contains the record number.

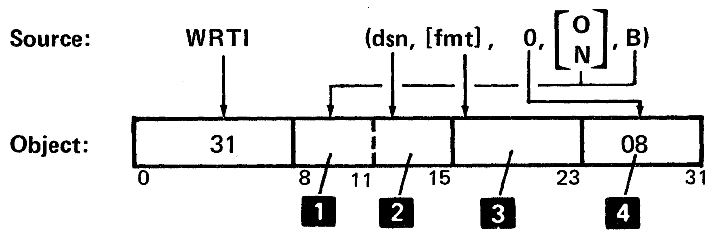
- Hex 07 (– specified) for writing the previous record.

- Hex 08 (0 specified) for writing the current record. For a printer, it must be hex 08.

- Hex 09 (+ specified) for writing the next record.

This instruction writes the contents of the logical buffer into the specified record position of the physical buffer. The contents of the physical buffer may be written to the diskette. If an edit format is specified, data is moved into the logical buffer as indicated by the edit format before it is written to the physical buffer. If this instruction is issued when the current record counter is at EOD, the record is written into the EOD space and the EOD and current record counter are incremented; otherwise, the current record number is never changed by a write instruction.

Insert a Record into a Data Set (WRTI)



1 Bits:

8		Not used, always zero.
9	0 =	Overlap mode (O specified).
	1 =	Nonoverlap mode (N specified).
10		Not used, always zero.
11	0 =	I/O buffer is not blanked.
	1 =	I/O buffer is blanked at the start of the operation (B is specified) if a format is specified.

2 Data set number: The number (hex 1-F) of the data set to be accessed.

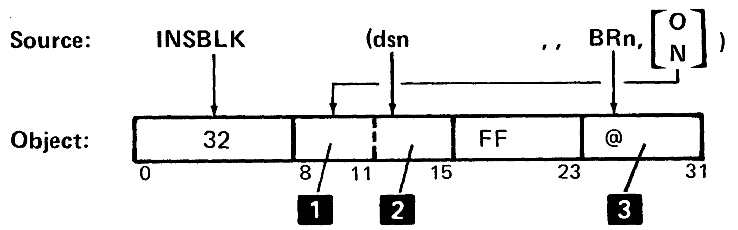
3 Format number: The number (hex 01-FE) of the format to use. If no format is specified, this will be hex FF.

4 Record to access: Always the current record (hex 08).

This instruction writes the current logical record to the physical buffer, into the current record position. The record that was in the current record position, and all records beyond the inserted record, are moved down one position until EOD or a deleted record is encountered. If the record is inserted as the last record in the data set, this instruction acts as a write instruction (op code 30).

Note: Two physical buffers and one logical buffer must be available for this instruction.

Insert a Block of Records into a Data Set (INSBLK)



1 Bits:

8	Not used, always 0.
9	0 = Overlapped mode (O specified).
	1 = Nonoverlapped mode (N specified).
10-11	Not used, always 00.

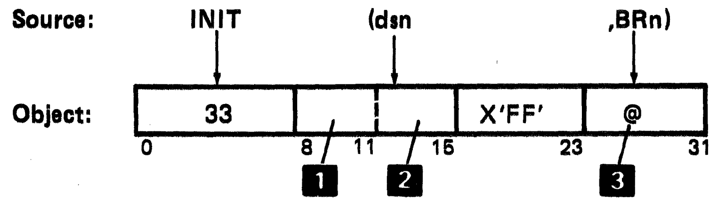
2 Data set number: The number (hex 1-F) of the data set to access.

3 Records to insert: The address of the binary register that contains the number of logical records to be inserted. Two commas must precede the binary register in the source instruction.

The records from (and including) the current record to the end of the data set are moved down to make room for the specified number of records to be inserted. The inserted records are treated as deleted records and may be written with the WRTI instruction (op code 31). The current record counter is modified to point to the first inserted record.

Note: Two physical buffers and a logical buffer must be available for this instruction.

Initialize a Diskette (INIT)



1 0100 (Always nonoverlapped mode.)

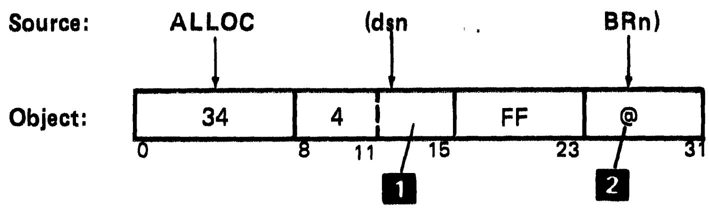
2 Data set number: The number (hex 1-F) of the data set to be accessed.

3 Parameters' address: The address of the binary register that contains the address of the initialization parameters.

This instruction initializes the diskette with information from the data set IOB. The data set IOB must have previously been opened as a write-only label update data set (TYPE = INI). The initialization parameters must be stored in a data area before the initialization instruction is issued. The format of the initialization parameters is:

Bytes	Bits	Information
1	0	Head number
	1-7	Track number
2	0	0 = FM (1 or 2) 1 = MFM (2D)
	1	0 = 1-sided 1 = 2-sided
	2-7	Number minus 1 of 128-byte blocks that make up the sector size.
3-28		Sequence of sector numbers. If byte 3 = hex FF, the track specified by byte 1 is flagged as a defective track.

Allocate a Data Set (ALLOC)



1 Data set number: The number (hex 1-F) of data set to allocate.

2 Parameters' address: The address of the binary register that contains the address of the allocate parameters. The binary register must be preceded by two commas in the source instruction.

This instruction is always executed in nonoverlapped mode. For a printer, this instruction is executed as an open instruction. For diskette, when the ALLOC operation is executed the data set is allocated in the physical space following the last valid data set existing on the diskette, provided sufficient extent and label space exists. A data set cannot be allocated between existing data sets and always originates on a physical track/sector boundary.

The data set HDR1 label is placed in the first deleted HDR1 label space. If there are no deleted HDR1 label spaces, the allocation cannot take place, and an external status (3229) is presented. The HDR1 information is taken from the data set IOB and from the parameter string in storage. The binary register (BRn) in the ALLOC instruction contains the address of the *fifth* byte of the parameter string. The format of the parameter string is as follows:

Byte	**Meaning**
1	Data set exchange type. A hex number that corresponds to the appropriate exchange type: 00 = Basic exchange 01 = H exchange 02 = I exchange (this is the type normally used) 03 = E exchange, unblocked and unspanned 04 = E exchange, blocked and unspanned 05 = E exchange, blocked and spanned
2-4	The number of logical records to allocate. Hex 000000 allocates the maximum number of records that can be placed on the remaining diskette space.
5	The first of up to 14 characters of an optional owner identification, required for allocating on a secure diskette. The address stored in the binary register always points to this byte. If the owner identification is omitted, the address points to the end blank.

Byte	Meaning
end	The last byte in the parameter string must always be a blank (hex 40) unless a 14-character owner ID is specified.

Note: This parameter string can also be used to open a data set on a secure diskette; the OPEN instruction does not use the bytes before the fifth byte.

The information that is taken from the data set IOB is as follows:

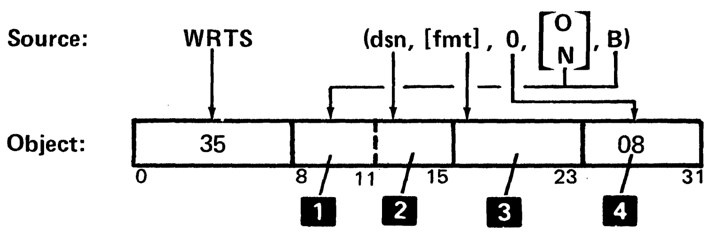
Parameter	Explanation
DATA set name (NAME)	The data set name is mandatory for allocating a diskette data set. It is optional for a printer.
Logical record length (RECL)	If this option .DATASET parameter is omitted, the length is set to equal to block size.
Block size (BSIZ)	Except for blocked and spanned data sets, the block size must equal, or be a multiple of, the logical record length. For blocked and spanned data sets, BSIZ is an optional parameter; if specified it must equal sector size, and if omitted the 5280 sets it to sector size.
Delete Character (DFLG)	Delete flag; the character that is placed in the HDR1 label during the allocate, and which will be used to indicate a deleted record. Optional for I and E exchange; ignored for basic and H exchange. Valid characters can be A-Z, 0-9, or one of the following symbols: . , - / % # @ ; $ &.

During the allocation operation, the data set organization byte of the HDR1 label is set to blank (hex 40) for basic and H exchange data sets. It is set to D for I and E exchange data sets. It is invalid to allocate a data set with the ALLOC instruction when the data set type is label update.

Upon completion of the ALLOC operation, the allocated data set is also opened. The op code in the data set IOB is replaced with hex 00. Upon completion of the ALLOC, or if an external status for insufficient physical buffer size (3430) or for two physical buffers specified with unequal sizes (3435) occurs, or if any group 7 warning message is presented, the minimum number of 128-byte blocks required for sufficient buffer size is placed into hex 78 of the data set IOB. If any other external status occurs, this number is not placed into the IOB.

The HDR1 label is placed into the first 128 bytes of the physical buffer except for pointer I/O and SCS data sets that have the SW or ERS parameters specified in the .DATASET control statement.

Delete a Record from a Data Set (WRTS)



1 Bits:

8	Not used, always zero.
9	0 = Overlap mode (O specified).
	1 = Nonoverlap mode (N specified).
10	Not used, always zero.
11	0 = I/O buffer is not blanked.
	1 = I/O buffer is blanked at the start of the operation (B is specified) if a format is specified.

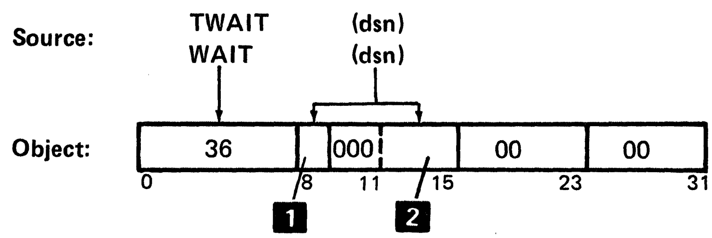
2 Data set number: The number (hex 1-F) of the data set to be accessed.

3 Format number: The number (hex 01-FE) of the format to use. If no format was specified, this is hex FF.

4 Record to access: Always the current record (hex 08).

When this instruction is executed, the record indicated by the current record counter is written as for the write instruction (op code 30). In addition, the record is flagged as deleted. For a basic or H exchange data set, a special address mark is used to flag a deleted record. For an I or E exchange data set, the delete character in the data set IOB is used to flag a deleted record.

Wait for I/O Completion (WAIT/TWAIT)



1 Bit 8:

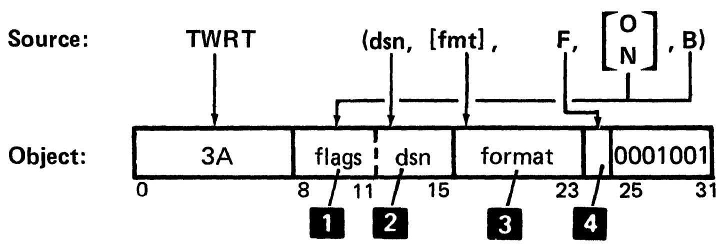
0 = Data set number **2** was specified.

1 = No data set number was specified.

When the main microprocessor executes a wait instruction, it waits until all I/O operations are complete for the specified data set before executing the next sequential instruction. If no data set number is specified, all data sets are checked for completed I/O operations.

2 Data set number: The number (hex 0-F) of the data set to check for completed I/O operations. If data set number zero is specified, it indicates the keyboard/display IOB.

Write to Communications (TWRT)



1 Bits:

8 Not used, always zero.
9 0 = Overlapped mode (O specified).
1 = Nonoverlapped mode (N specified).
10 Not used, always zero.
11 0 = The I/O buffer is not blanked.
1 = The I/O buffer is blanked at the start of the operation (B is coded) if a format is specified.

2 Data set number: The number (hex 1-F) of the data set to access.

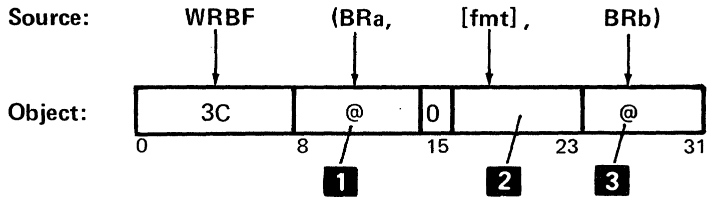
3 Format number: The number (hex 00-FE) of the format to use. If no format is specified this is hex FF.

4 Bit 24:

0 = Normal write
1 = Final write (F coded)
For BSC, no data is associated with final write.

This instruction transmits a record from the data set specified to the host system. If an edit format is specified, data is placed into the logical buffer as indicated by the format.

Formatted Write from Registers (WRBF)



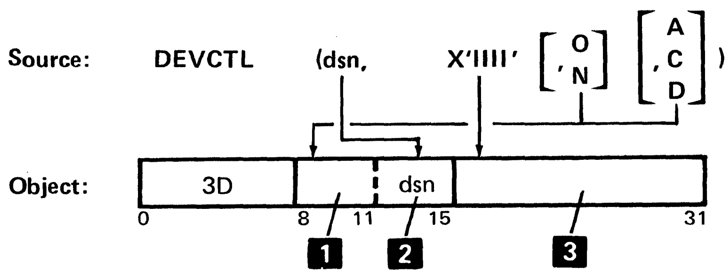
1 Write address: The address of the binary register that contains the address of the leftmost byte of the data area to write into.

2 Format number: The number (hex 01-FE) of the format to use. This is hex FF if no format is specified.

3 Blank option: The address of the binary register that contains the number of bytes that are blanked before formatting begins. If BRb is not specified, no bytes are blanked, and this will contain hex FF.

This instruction moves the data indicated by the format, or blanks if no format and a binary register is specified, into the data area pointed to by the write address.

Device Control (DEVCTL)



1 Bits:

8	0 = A omitted (device dependent)
	1 = A specified (device dependent)
9	0 = Overlap mode (O specified)
	1 = Nonoverlap mode (N specified)
10	0 = C omitted (device dependent)
	1 = C specified (device dependent)
11	0 = D omitted (device dependent)
	1 = D specified (device dependent)

2 Data set number: The number (hex 1-F) of the data set IOB to access.

3 Control parameters: 2 bytes of hex digits that specify the control operation. The hex digits and operations depend upon the different devices.

This instruction is intended for diagnostics use only.

For diskette device control there are write-defective-sector or diagnostic operations.

Diagnostic operations are used for reading or writing data in diskette microprocessor or adapter registers. (These registers are not the decimal or binary registers used in an application program.) If A is specified when writing registers, the data to be written is taken from the binary register specified by bits 24-31. If A is specified when reading registers, the data that is read is placed into the binary register specified by bits 24-31. If A is not specified when writing registers, the data to be written is taken from bits 24-31. If A is not specified when reading registers, the data is read into bits 24-31.

Bits 16-31 have the following meaning:

Bits	**Meaning**
16	0 = Read register 1 = Write register
17	0 = Diskette microprocessor register 1 = Adapter register
18-19	00 = Diagnostic command
20-23	0 = Register 16 1 = Register 17 2 = Register 18 3 = Register 19 4 = Register 20 5 = Register 21 6 = Register 22 7 = Register 23 8 = Register 24 9 = Register 25 A = Register 26 B = Register 27 C = Register 28 D = Diskette microprocessor register 13[1] E = Diskette microprocessor register 25[1] F = Diskette microprocessor register 26[1]
24-31	Binary register address if option A is specified; immediate data if option A is not specified.

[1]These specifications always indicate a diskette microprocessor register regardless of what bit 17 indicates.

Write-defective-sector is used for marking the sector specified by the current record pointer as a defective sector. This instruction can only be used in a data set where a sector is also a logical record. Write-defective-sector is specified by setting both bits 18 and 19 to 1.

For twinaxial printer (IBM 5256, 5224, and 5225) device control, bits 16 through 31 are:

Hex Digits	Option	Operation
FF00	A	Wrap test: The POR wrap test is run once each time this instruction is executed. Any errors encountered are reported.
FE00		Line quality check: This test performs a single poll command without looking for a response.
0Dxx	A	Read external register 13: This operation reads the contents of register 13 into the fourth byte of the instruction (xx).
19xx	A	Read external register 25: This operation reads the contents of register 25 into the fourth byte of the instruction (xx).
1Axx	A	Read external register 26: This operation reads the contents of register 26 into the fourth byte of the instruction (xx).
8Dxx		Write external register 13: This operation writes the contents of the fourth byte of this instruction (xx) into register 13.
99xx		Write external register 25: This operation writes the contents of the fourth byte of this instruction (xx) into register 25.
9Axx		Write external register 26: This operation writes the contents of the fourth byte of this instruction (xx) into register 26.

For start-stop printer (IBM 5222) device control, bits 16 through 31 are:

Hex Digits	Operation
FBXX	This operation writes the data found in the right most byte of binary register XX. After the instruction is executed, the left most byte of binary register XX must be tested. A value of X'00' signifies successful acceptance of the command. Any value other than X'00' signifies the adapter has status information. (See the description of the adapter status byte.) In this case the right most byte of binary register XX contains any received data. This data may or may not be valid depending upon the status information.

FCXX This operation reads the adapter status and places this status into the left most byte of binary register XX. If the receive data available bit of the adapter status byte is on, the right most byte of binary register XX contains the data that was in the adapter receive buffer.

FDXX This operation writes control information to the adapter. (See the descriptions of the adapter command byte and the adapter mode set byte.) The control information to be written is contained in the right most byte of binary register XX. The left most byte of binary register XX is set to X'00' upon execution of this instruction.

FFXX This operation transmits data, contained in the right most byte of binary register XX, internally back to the adapter receiver. The receive data is placed in the left most byte of binary register XX. The receive data available bit, bit 6 in the adapter status byte, when set to 1 indicates successful completion of this wrap data test.

Note: XX is the hex value of two times the binary register number. For example, if BRn = 14 then XX = X'1C'.

Adapter Status Byte

0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7

- 7 — 1 = Transmitter buffer empty
- 6 — 1 = Receive data available
- 5 — 1 = Transmission complete
- 4 — 1 = Transmission line parity error
- 3 — 1 = Receiver overrun
- 2 — 1 = Framing error on received character
- 1 — 1 = Receiver break detected
- 0 — 0 = Adapter installed
1 = Adapter not installed

Adapter Mode Set Byte

The adapter mode set byte is always X'7F'. This byte controls the characteristics of the transmitted data. They are:

- 1200 BAUD
- 8 DATA BITS
- 1 STOP BIT
- EVEN PARITY

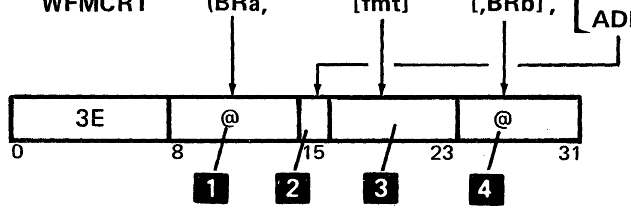
Adapter Command Byte

- Bit 0 — Reserved - Always 0
- Bit 1 — 1 = Return to mode set state
- Bit 2 — Reserved - Always 0
- Bit 3 — 1 = Reset - parity errors
  - overrun errors
  - framing errors
- Bit 4 — 1 = Transmit break characters
- Bit 5 — 1 = Enable receiver
- Bit 6 — Reserved - Always 0
- Bit 7 — 1 = Enable transmitter

Formatted Write to the Screen (WFMCRT)

Source: **WFMCRT (BRa, [fmt] [,BRb], [B / ADD])**

Object:



1 Screen address: The address of the binary register that contains the row number to begin the write.

2 Bit 15:
0 = Data between fields is blanked; B is specified.
1 = Data between fields remains on the screen; ADD is specified.

3 Format number: The number (hex 01-FE) of the format to use.

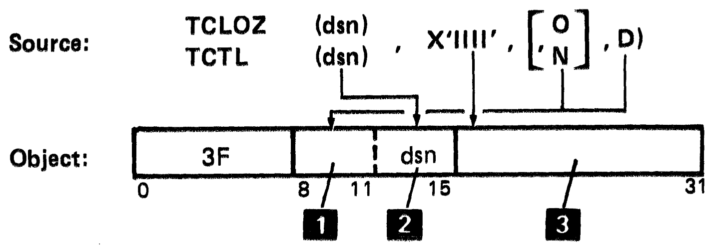
4 The address of the binary register that contains the number of bytes to blank or add in the screen buffer before formatting begins.

Data is moved to the screen, beginning at column 1 of the row specified by the low-order byte of the screen address register. Data is moved from the locations specified by the labeled edit format, for the number of bytes specified by the format. The format also specifies any punctuation that should appear on the screen, such as a dollar sign, decimal point, or minus sign. The format must not use more than 200 screen positions. If row 0 is specified, data is moved to the status line; if row 1 is specified, data is moved to the extra line.

If the binary register 4 is included, the contents of this register are taken as the number (1-200) of screen positions to alter before the formatted data is moved to the screen. If B is coded in the source instruction, all characters on the screen between the data fields that are defined in the edit format are blanked for the number of bytes specified in the binary register. If ADD is coded in the source instruction, only the fields that are defined in the edit format are changed on the screen; the characters between the edit format fields remain on the screen for the number of bytes specified by the binary register. If the binary register and B/ADD are omitted, and if the edit format does not account for all of the positions on the screen within the edit format, the results are unpredictable.

The fields of the format must be in the order of their appearance on the screen.

Communications Close or Device Control (TCLOZ/TCTL)



1 Bits:

8	0 = TCLOZ	
	1 = TCTL	
9	0 = Overlap mode (O specified).	
	1 = Nonoverlap mode (N specified).	
10		Not used, always zero
11	0 = Normal operation	
	1 = Diagnose operation, D specified (on TCTL only)	

2 Data set number: The number (hex 1-F) of the data set to access.

3 Data type: Hex 0000 for TCLOZ. A hex constant data for TCTL.

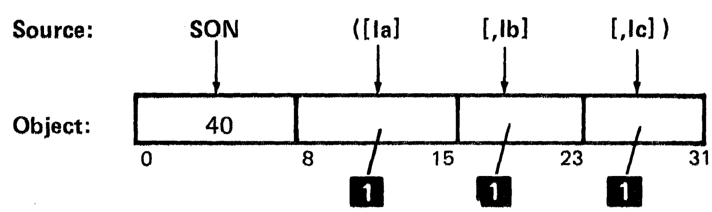
The TCLOZ instruction is used with BSC. It closes the specified IOB and signifies the end of a BSC data set.

The TCTL instruction performs the control operation specified by the hex constant, as follows:

Constant	**Operation Valid for BSC**
0100	Write status
0300	Transmit EOT
0400	Transmit RVI
0500	Transmit header (SOH-heading-STX)
0600	Transmit header (SOH-heading-ETB)

Constant	Operation Valid for BSC
0700	Transmit header (SOH-heading-ITB)
0800	Transmit header (SOH-heading-STX-ETX)
0900	Execute wrap test
0A00	Transmit online test message
0B00	Received online test message
0001	Set compression (Expand blank-compressed data)
0002	Reset compression (Do not expand blank-compressed data)
0003	Set transparent mode on
0004	Reset transparent mode off
0005	Set trace on
0006	Reset trace off
	Operation valid for SNA
0007	Transmit signal command to the host
0001	Cancel
0002	Chase
0003	LU Status
0004	Request shutdown
0005	Positive response
0006	Negative response
0008	Shutdown complete

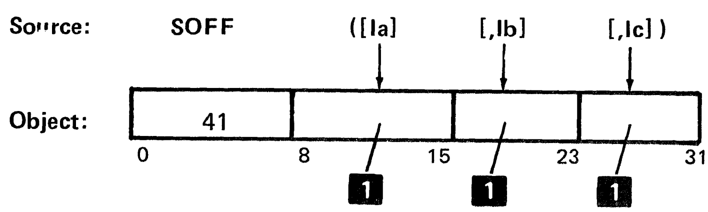
Set Indicator On (SON)



1 Indicator numbers: The numbers of specified indicators that are set on. An indicator number from hex 00-FE can be specified. If no indicator is specified, the contents are hex FF.

This instruction sets the specified indicators on. When the main microprocessor encounters the first byte that contains hex FF, it stops checking for more indicators.

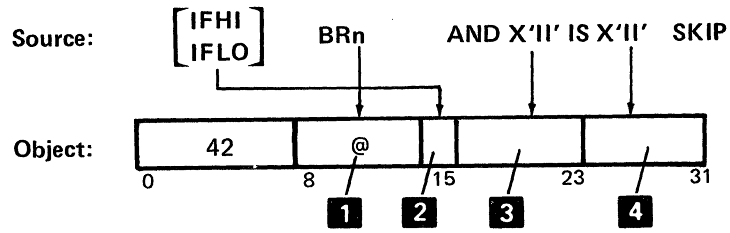
Set Indicator Off (SOFF)



1 Indicator numbers: The numbers of specified indicators that are set off. An indicator number from hex 00-FE can be specified. If no indicator is specified, the contents are hex FF.

This instruction sets the specified indicators off. When the main microprocessor encounters the first byte that contains hex FF, it stops checking for more indicators.

Skip on AND, Exclusive-OR Mask (AND)



1 Test register address: Test the binary register at this address.

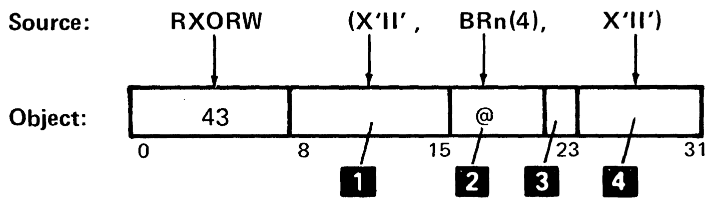
2 Test mask:
0 = Mask the leftmost byte (IFHI specified) in the binary register.
1 = Mask the rightmost byte (IFLO specified) in the binary register.

3 AND mask: 2 hex digits that AND with the specified test mask byte of a binary register.

4 Exclusive-OR mask: 2 hex digits that exclusive-OR with the result of the AND operation.

This instruction applies the AND mask against the specified test mask byte, then applies the OR mask against the result of the AND operation. If the result of both operations is zero, the main microprocessor skips the next sequential instruction. If the result is not zero, the next sequential instruction is executed. The register contents remain unchanged.

Skip on Exclusive-OR, AND Mask (RXORW)



1 Exclusive-OR mask: Two hex digits that exclusive-OR the byte specified by the address in the binary register.

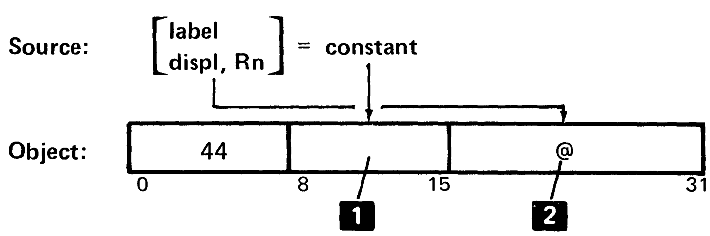
2 Test register address: The address of the binary register that contains the address of the byte to test.

3 Address bit:
  0 = BRa contains a 16-bit address.
  1 = BRa(4) contains a 20-bit address of a storage location outside the partition.

4 AND mask: Two hex digits that are ANDed with the original contents of the byte specified by the address in the binary register.

This instruction applies the exclusive-OR mask against the byte at the address indicated by the binary register. Then the microprocessor ANDs the original contents of the byte with the AND mask. If the result of the AND operation is 0, the next sequential instruction is skipped and the result of the exclusive-OR operation replaces the original contents of the test bytes. If the result is not 0, the storage position is restored to its original value and the next sequential instruction is executed.

Constant Insert (= constant)

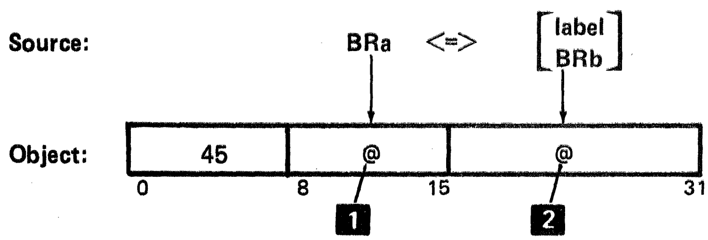


1 Constant: The binary representation of the constant to insert.

2 Insert address: The address of the byte in storage, or the byte in a decimal register, where the constant is inserted.

This instruction inserts the specified 1-byte constant into the indicated byte.

Exchange Binary Register Contents (<=>)

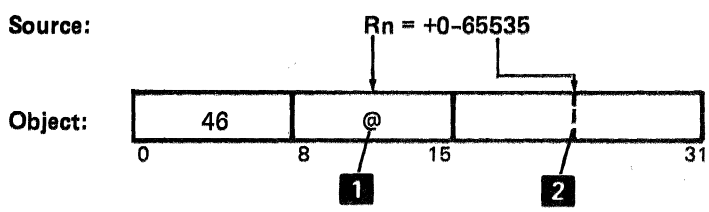


1 Binary register address: The address of the binary register that exchanges contents with **2**.

2 Binary register or storage address: The address of the area that exchanges contents with **1**.

This instruction exchanges the contents of the two specified data areas.

Immediate Load of Positive Constant into Decimal Register (Rn = +n)

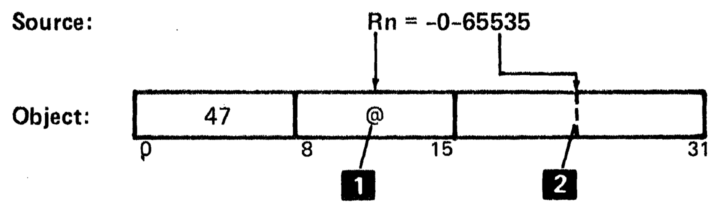


1 Decimal register address: The address of the decimal register that is loaded with the constant.

2 Constant: The 2-byte constant (hex 0-FFFF) that is converted to the decimal EBCDIC and placed into the decimal register.

This instruction places the constant into the decimal register. The constant is padded on the left with hex zeros (F0).

Immediate Load of Negative Constant into Decimal Register (Rn = -n)

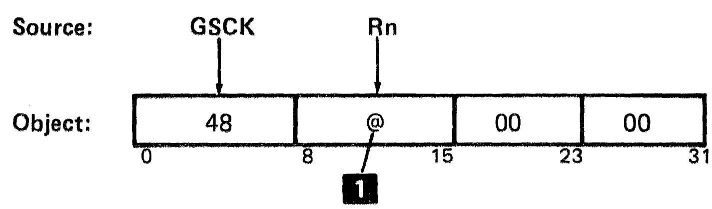


1 Decimal register address: The address of the decimal register that is loaded with the constant.

2 Constant: The 2-byte constant (hex 0-FFFF) that is converted to the decimal EBCDIC and placed into the decimal register.

This instruction places the constant into the decimal register. The constant is padded on the left with hex zeros (F0). The zone of the rightmost byte in the register is changed to hex D.

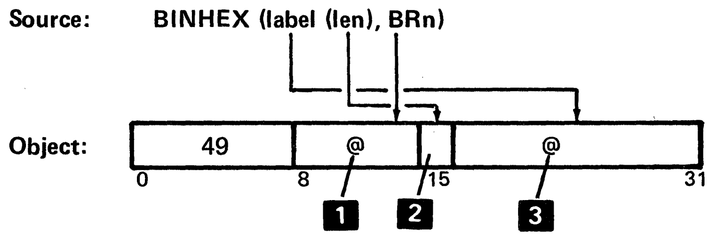
Generate Self-Check Number (GSCK)



1 Decimal register address: The address of the decimal register or decimal double register that contains data to which the self-check digit (from the algorithm defined in the .SELFCHK control block) is added.

This instruction uses the self-check control block to generate a self-check number from the foundation characters contained in the decimal register(s), and inserts the self-check number into the register(s) as specified by the self-check control block.

Convert Binary to EBCDIC (BINHEX)



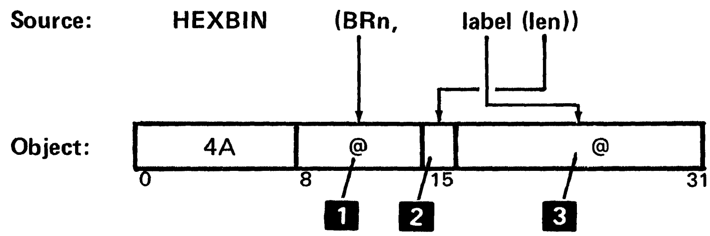
1 Binary register address: The address of the binary register that contains the binary data to convert to EBCDIC.

2 Bit 15:
0 = Data area length is 4 bytes.
1 = Data area length is 2 bytes.

3 Data area address: The address of the data area where the converted data is stored upon completion of this operation.

This instruction converts the contents of the low-order byte of the specified register from binary to 2 bytes of EBCDIC, or the contents of the 2-byte binary register to 4 bytes of binary register to 4 bytes of EBCDIC. The result is stored in the specified data area. Each half-byte is converted into EBCDIC hex characters 0-9, A-F.

Convert EBCDIC to Binary (HEXBIN)



1 Binary register address: The address of the binary register where the converted data is stored upon completion of this operation.

2 Bit 15:
0 = Data area length is 4 bytes.
1 = Data area length is 2 bytes.

3 Data area address: The address of the data area that contains the EBCDIC data to convert to binary.

This instruction converts the contents of the specified data area from 2 bytes of EBCDIC to 1 byte of binary and places it in the low-order byte of the specified register, or from 4 bytes of EBCDIC to 2 bytes of binary and places it in the specified binary register. If the characters are not A-F or 0-9, I 119 is set and the specified binary registers contents are unpredictable.

When the length of the data area is 4 bytes, the binary register should in no way overlay the data area storage.

Request or Release a Data Area (Request/Release)

Source: REQUEST
RELEASE BRN [(4)]

Object:

4B		@		00
0	8	16	23	24 ... 31
	1	2	3	

1 Constant
Hexadecimal 80 = Request (lock)
Hexadecimal 00 = Release (unlock)

2 Binary register compressed address. Contains address of a 2- byte lock field.

3 20-bit address indicator. If this bit = 1, then BRN-1 and BRN will be used to obtain a 20-bit address of the lock field.

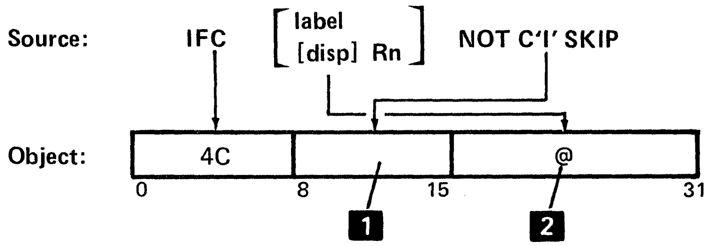
For REQUEST, the binary register points to a 2-byte lock field initialized to zero. If another task has not already requested the data area, the requesting partition number is placed in the lock field, and control returns at the next sequential instruction plus 4 bytes. If the partition number of another task is already in the lock field, control returns at the next sequential instruction.

For RELEASE, the binary register points to a 2-byte lock field containing a partition number. If the partition number of the lock field is the same as the releasing task, or if there is no valid partition number in the lock field, the lock field is changed to zero and control returns to the next sequential instruction plus 4 bytes. If the partition number is different from the releasing task, the lock field is not changed and control returns to the next sequential instruction.

The 2-byte lock field contains system information that is not to be accessed by the programmer.

REQUEST and RELEASE are valid only for multiple main microprocessors.

Skip If Not Equal (IFC NOT)

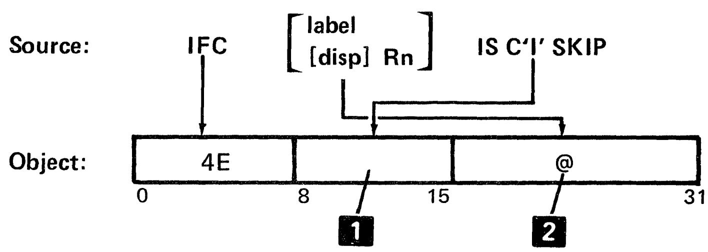


1 Test character: The binary representation of the byte of hex, binary, character, or decimal test data that is compared to the test byte.

2 Test byte address: The address of the byte of data to compare to the test character.

If the test byte is not equal to the test character, the microprocessor skips the next sequential instruction; otherwise, it executes the next sequential instruction.

Skip If Equal (IFC IS)



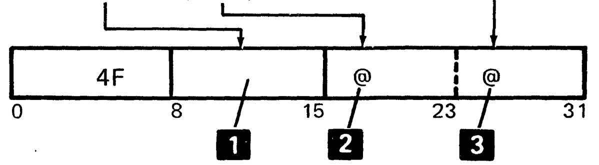
1 Test character: The binary representation of the byte of hex, binary, character, or decimal test data that is compared to the test byte.

2 Test byte address: The address of the byte of data to compare to the test character.

If the test byte is equal to the test character, the microprocessor skips the next sequential instruction; otherwise, it executes the next sequential instruction.

```
              PDUMP   [(number)]
              PDUMP   ([label], len)
Source:       PAUSE   (label)
              TROFF
              TRON    (mask)
```

Object:



1 Hex 10 = PDUMP (label, len)
08 = PDUMP (number) or PDUMP
20 = PAUSE
40 = TROFF
80 = TRON

2 For PDUMP (label, len): The address, divided by 256, of where to start the dump. If no address (label) is specified, this is hex 00; the dump starts at the beginning of the partition.

For PDUMP (number): The partition number of the partition to dump. If no partition is specified, this is hex FF and the current partition is dumped.

For TRON: The trace options.

3 For PDUMP (label, len): The number of 256-byte blocks to dump.

For PDUMP (number): All zeros.

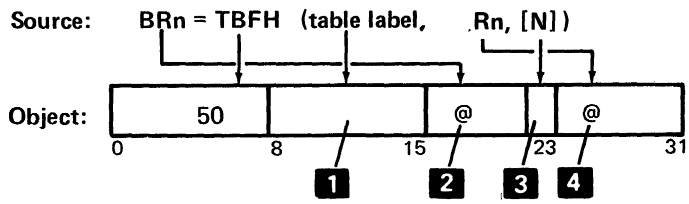
For TRON: All zeros.

2 and **3**
For PAUSE: The address of where to stop the program.

For TROFF: All zeros.

The partition must be attached when using these debugging aids.

Search Ordered Table for Higher or Equal Entry (TBFH)



1 Table: The index into the system table that contains the address and parameters for the table to be searched.

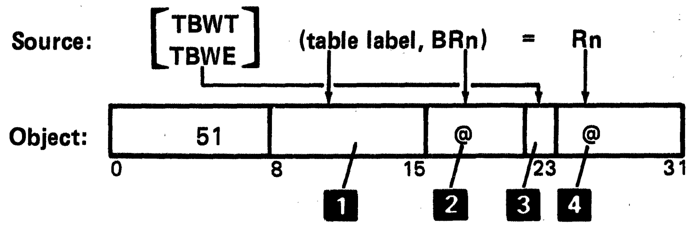
2 Index register address: The address of the binary register into which the table index where the index of the higher or equal entry is placed upon completion of this operation.

3 Bit 23:
0 = Begin the search in the table with the first entry (N not specified).
1 = Begin the search in the table with the next entry after the entry in the index register (N specified).

4 Search argument address: The address of the decimal register that contains the search argument.

The labeled table is searched for an entry equal to or higher than the contents of the decimal register. The search ends when the first higher or equal entry is found or when the last table entry has been searched. If an equal or higher entry is found, the index of that entry is placed into the binary register. If no equal or higher entry is found, the binary register remains unchanged and I125 and I127 are set on.

Write Table Entry (TBWT/TBWE)



1 Table: The index into the system table that contains the address and parameters for the table to be written into.

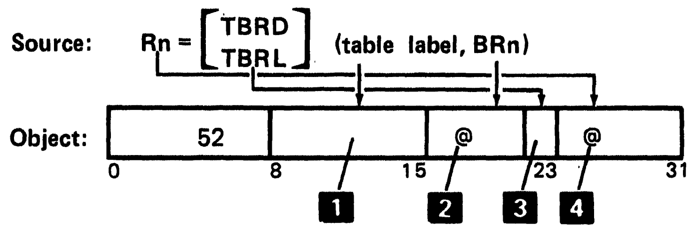
2 Index register address: The address of the binary register that contains the index into the table.

3 Bit 23:
- 0 = Write the entry to the table at the index contained in the index register (TBWT specified).
- 1 = Extend the table and add the entry at the end of the table (TBWE specified).

4 Argument address: The address of the decimal register that contains the argument to be written.

An entry is written into the table at either the end of the table for a TBWE instruction, or at a specified location into the table for a TBWT instruction.

Read Table Entry (TBRD/TBRL)



1 Table: The index into the system table that contains the address and parameters for the table to be read.

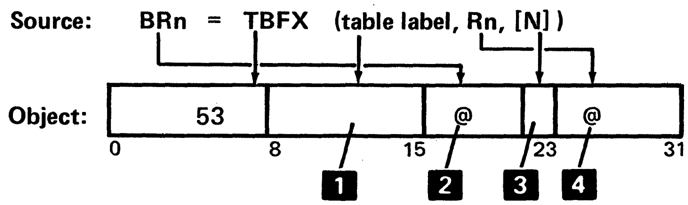
2 Index register address: The address of the binary register that contains the index into the table.

3 Bit 23:
- 0 = Read the entry in the table at the index contained in the index register (TBRD specified).
- 1 = Read the last entry in the table (TBRL specified).

4 Argument address: The address of the decimal register where the table argument is placed upon completion of this operation.

An entry is read from the table and placed into the argument address.

Search Unordered Table for Equal Entry (TBFX)



1 Table: The index into the system table that contains the address and parameters for the table to be searched.

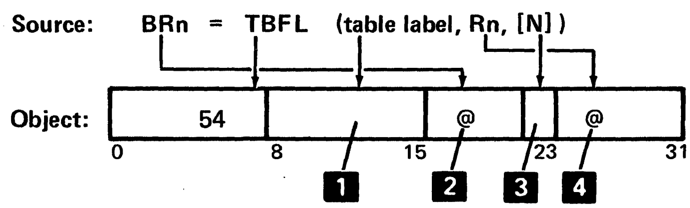
2 Index register address: The address of the binary register into which the table index where the index of the equal entry is placed upon completion of this operation.

3 Bit 23:
0 = Begin the search in the table with the first entry (N not specified).
1 = Begin the search in the table with the entry after the entry in the index register (N specified).

4 Search argument address: The address of the decimal register that contains the search argument.

The labeled table is searched for an entry that is equal to the search argument. If an equal entry is found, the index for that entry is placed in the binary register. If no equal entry is found, the binary register remains unchanged and I125 and I127 are set on.

Search Reverse Ordered Table for Lower Entry (TBFL)



1 Table: The index into the system table that contains the address and parameters for the table to be searched.

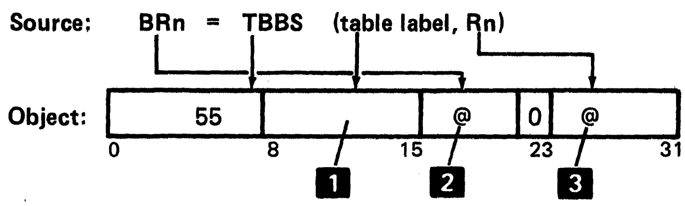
2 Index register address: The address of the binary register into which the table index of the lower entry is placed upon completion of this operation.

3 Bit 23:
0 = Begin the search in the table with the first entry (N not specified).
1 = Begin the search in the table with the entry before the entry in the index register (N specified).

4 Search argument address: The address of the decimal register that contains the search argument.

The table is searched for an entry that is lower than the search argument. If a lower entry is found, the index of that entry is placed into the binary register. If no lower entry is found, the binary register remains unchanged and I125 and I127 are set on.

Search Table Using Binary Search (TBBS)



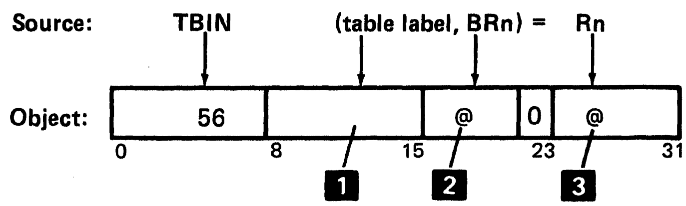
1 Table: The index into the system table that contains the address and parameters for the table to be searched.

2 Index register address: The address of the binary register into which the table index of the equal entry is placed upon completion of this operation.

3 Search argument address: The address of the decimal register that contains the search argument.

The labeled table is searched for an entry equal to the search argument. If an equal entry is found, the index of that entry is placed into the binary register and I103 is set on. If no equal entry is found, the binary register remains unchanged and I125 and I127 are set on.

Insert Table Entry (TBIN)



1 Table: The index into the system table that contains the address and parameters for the table to be modified.

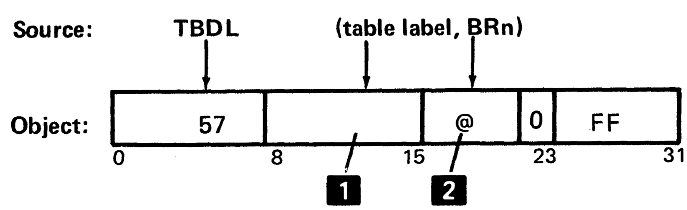
2 Index register address: The address of the binary register that contains the table index where the entry is inserted.

3 Argument address: The address of the decimal register that contains the argument to insert.

The argument is inserted into the table at the table index specified in the binary register. All entries below the inserted entry are moved downward, as well as any bypass fields. It is the user's responsibility to update the number of entries in any system table for data tables that describe the bypass fields as active data arguments.

If number of entries in the table equal 0, TBWE must be used to insert the first entry.

Delete Table Entry (TBDL)

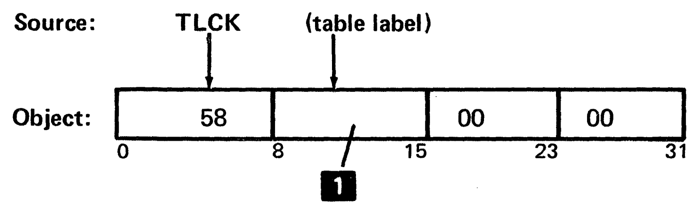


1 Table: The index into the system table that contains the address and parameters for the table to be modified.

2 Index register address: The address of the binary register that contains the table index where the entry is deleted.

The entry in the labeled table is deleted and all other entries move up to replace the deleted entry, as well as any bypass fields. It is the user's responsibility to update the number of entries in any system table for data tables that describe the bypass fields as active data arguments.

Lock Shared Table (TLCK)

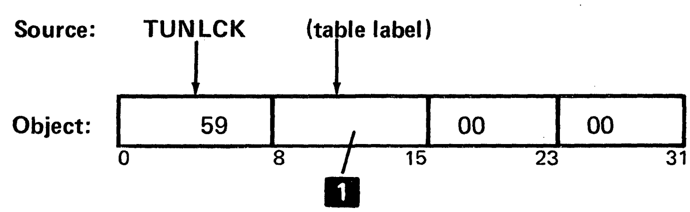


1 Table: The index into the system table that contains the address and parameters for the table to be locked.

The specified table is locked for exclusive use by the program that issues the TLCK instruction.

This instruction can be used only with tables in the common area.

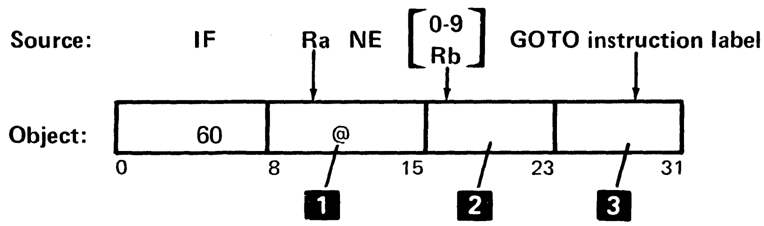
Unlock Shared Table (TUNLCK)



1 Table: The index into the system table that contains the address and parameters for the table to be unlocked.

This instruction frees the table that was locked by the TLCK instruction.

Compare Decimal for Not Equal (IF Rn NE)



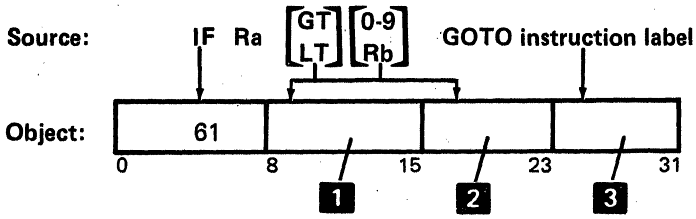
1 Test register: The address of the decimal register that contains the data to compare.

2 Compare data: The constant (hex 0-9) followed by hex 0, or the address of the decimal register that contains the compare data. If a constant is used, the bytes on the left are padded with blanks (hex 40s) before the compare.

3 Branch instruction: The number minus 1 of 4-byte object code instructions from the next sequential instruction to skip if the branch is taken (±128 object code instruction from the next instruction). If bit 24 is 1, the number is a negative displacement in twos complement form.

The branch is taken if the content of the test register is not equal to the compare data.

Compare Decimal for Greater Than or Less Than (IF Rn GT/LT)



1 *GT.* The test register: The address of the decimal register that contains data to compare.

LT. Compare data: The constant (hex 0-9) followed by hex 0, or the address of the decimal register that contains the compare data. If a constant is used, the bytes on the left are padded with blanks (hex 40s) before the compare.

2 *GT.* The compare data: The constant (hex 0-9) followed by hex 0, or the address of the decimal register that contains the compare data. If a constant is used, the bytes on the left are padded with blanks (hex 40s) before the compare.

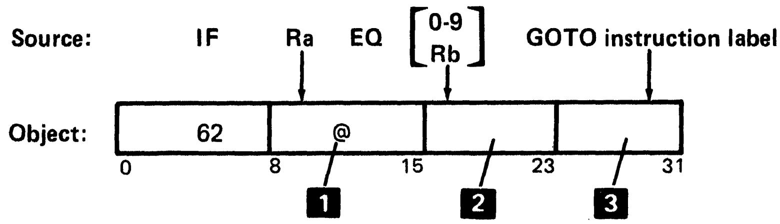
LT. The test register: The address of the decimal register that contains the data to compare.

3 Branch instruction: The number minus 1 of 4-byte object code instructions from the next sequential instruction to skip if the branch is taken (±128 object code instructions from the next instruction). If bit 24 is 1, the number is a negative displacement in twos complement form.

The branch is taken if:

- The content of the test register is greater than the compare data and GT is specified.
- The content of the test register is less than the compare data and LT is specified.

Compare Decimal for Equal (IF Rn EQ)



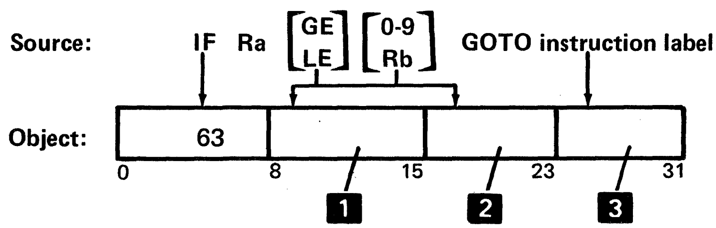
1 Test register: The address of the decimal register that contains the data to compare.

2 Compare data: The constant (hex 0-9) followed by hex 0, or the address of the decimal register that contains the compare data. If a constant is used, the bytes on the left are padded with blanks (hex 40s) before the compare.

3 Branch instruction: The number minus 1 of 4-byte object code instructions from the next sequential instruction to skip if the branch is taken (±128 object code instructions from the next instruction). If bit 24 is 1, the number is a negative displacement in twos complement form.

The branch is taken if the content of the test register is equal to the compare data.

Compare Decimal for Greater or Equal, or Less Than or Equal (IF Rn GE/LE)



1 *GE.* The test register: The address of the decimal register that contains data to compare.

LE. Compare data: The constant (hex 0-9) followed by hex 0, or the address of the decimal register that contains the compare data. If a constant is used, the bytes on the left are padded with blanks (hex 40s) before the compare.

2 *GE.* The compare data: The constant (hex 0-9) followed by hex 0, or the address of the decimal register (RB) that contains the compare data.

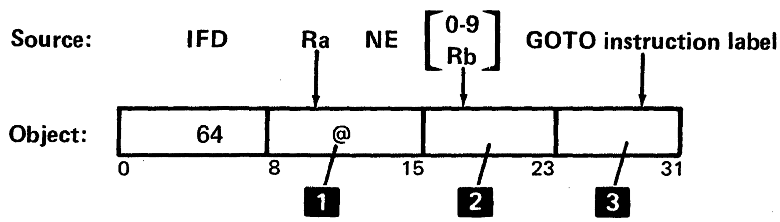
LE. The test register: The address of the decimal register that contains the data to compare. If a constant is used, the bytes on the left are padded with blanks (hex 40s) before the compare.

3 Branch instruction: The number minus 1 of 4-byte object code instructions from the next sequential instruction to skip if the branch is taken (±128 object code instructions from the next instruction). If bit 24 is 1, the number is a negative displacement in twos complement form.

The branch is taken if:

- The content of the test register is greater than or equal to the compare data and GE is specified.
- The content of the test register is less than or equal to the compare data and LE is specified.

Compare Decimal Digits for Not Equal (IFD Rn NE)



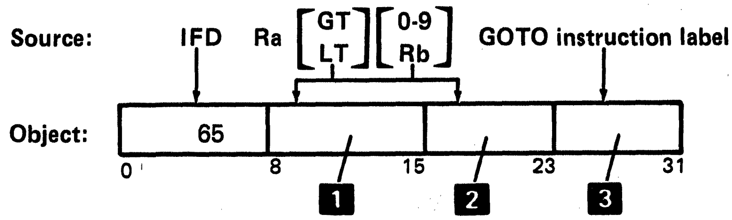
1 Test register: The address of the decimal register that contains the data to compare.

2 Compare data: The constant (hex 0-9) followed by hex 0, or the address of the decimal register that contains the compare data.

3 Branch instruction: The number minus 1 of 4-byte object code instructions from the next sequential instruction to skip if the branch is taken (±128 object code instructions from the next instruction). If bit 24 is 1, the number is a negative displacement in twos complement form.

The branch is taken if the digit portion and the units zone (sign) of the content of the test register is not equal to the digit portion of the compare data. If the zone portion of the rightmost byte of a decimal register contains hex D, the contents of the register are negative. If it is not hex D, the contents of the register are positive.

Compare Decimal Digits for Greater or Less Than (IFD Rn GT/LT)



1 *GT.* The test register: The address of the decimal register that contains data to compare.

LT. Compare data: The constant (hex 0-9) followed by hex 0, or the address of the decimal register that contains the compare data.

2 *GT.* The compare data: The constant (hex 0-9) followed by hex 0, or the address of the decimal register that contains the compare data.

LT. The test register: The address of the decimal register that contains the data to compare.

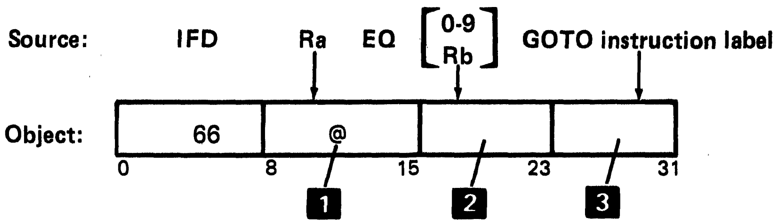
3 Branch instruction: The number minus 1 of 4-byte object code instructions from the next sequential instruction to skip if the branch is taken (±128 object code instructions from the next instruction). If bit 24 is 1, the number is a negative displacement in twos complement form.

The branch is taken if:

- The digit portion of the content of the test register is greater than the digit portion of the compare data and GT is specified.

- The digit portion of the content of the test register is less than the digit portion of the compare data and LT is specified. If the zone portion of the rightmost byte of a decimal register contain hex D, the contents of the register are negative. If it is not hex D, the contents of the register are positive.

Compare Decimal Digits for Equal (IFD Rn EQ)



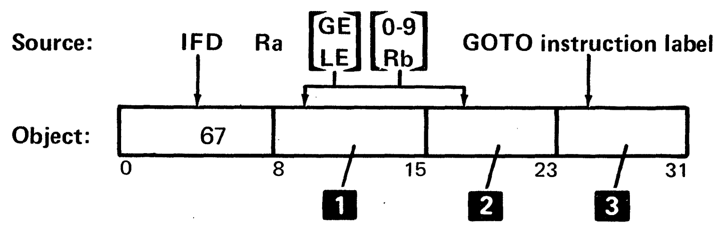
1 Test register: The address of the decimal register that contains the data to compare.

2 Compare data: The constant (hex 0-9) followed by hex 0, or the address of the decimal register that contains the compare data.

3 Branch instruction: The number minus 1 of 4-byte object code instructions from the next sequential instruction to skip if the branch is taken (±128 object code instructions from the next instruction). If bit 24 is 1, the number is a negative displacement in twos complement form.

The branch is taken if the content of the low-order byte of the test register is equal to the compare data. If the zone portion of the rightmost byte of a decimal register contains hex D, the contents of the register are negative. If it is not hex D, the contents of the register are positive.

Compare Decimal Digits for Greater or Equal, or Less Than or Equal (IFD Rn GE/LE)



1 *GE.* The test register: The address of the decimal register that contains data to compare.

LE. Compare data: The constant (hex 0-9) followed by hex 0, or the address of the decimal register that contains the compare data.

2 *GE.* The compare data: The constant (hex 0-9) followed by hex 0, or the address of the decimal register that contains the compare data.

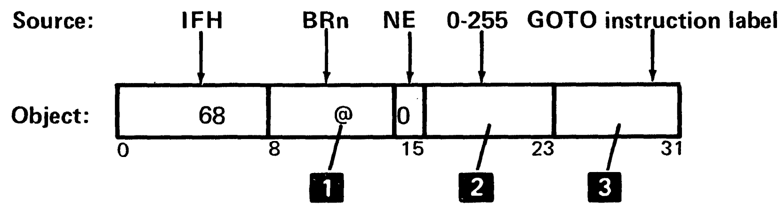
LE. The test register: The address of the decimal register that contains the data to compare.

3 Branch instruction: The number minus 1 of 4-byte object code instructions from the next sequential instruction to skip if the branch is taken (±128 object code instructions from the next instruction). If bit 24 is 1, the number is a negative displacement in twos complement form.

The branch is taken if:

- The digit portion of the content of the test register is greater than or equal to the digit portion of the compare data and GE is specified.
- The digit portion of the content of the test register is less than or equal to the digit portion of the compare data and LE is specified. If zone portion of the rightmost byte of a decimal register contains hex D, the contents of the register are negative. If it is not hex D, the contents of the register are positive.

Compare Binary Half-Register for Not Equal (IFH BRn NE)



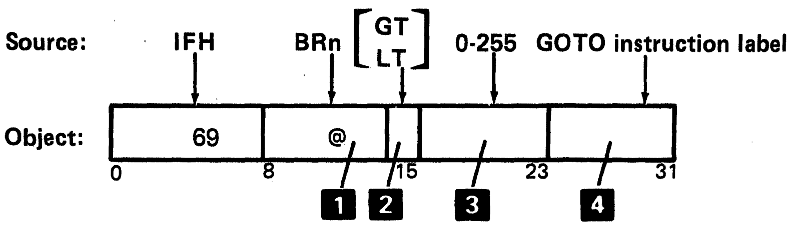
1 Test register: The address of the binary register that contains data to compare.

2 Compare constant: Hex 00-FF.

3 Branch instructions: The number minus 1 of the 4-byte object code instructions from the next sequential instruction to skip if the branch is taken (±128 object code instructions from the next instruction). If bit 24 is 1, the number is a negative displacement in twos complement form.

The branch is taken if the content of the low-order byte of the test register is not equal to the compare constant.

Compare Binary Half-Register for Greater or Less Than (IFH BRn GT/LT)



1 Test register: The address of the binary register that contains data to compare.

2 Bit 15:
0 = GT.
1 = LT.

3 Compare constant: Hex 00-FF.

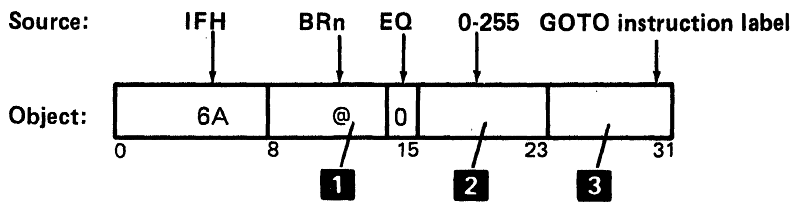
4 Branch instructions: The number minus 1 of the 4-byte object code instructions from the next sequential instruction to skip if the branch is taken (±128 object code instructions from the next instruction). If bit 24 is 1, the number is a negative displacement in twos complement form.

The branch is taken if:

- The content of the low-order byte of the test register is greater than the compare constant and GT is specified.

- The content of the low-order byte of the test register is less than the compare data and LT is specified.

Compare Binary Half-Register for Equal (IFH BRn EQ)



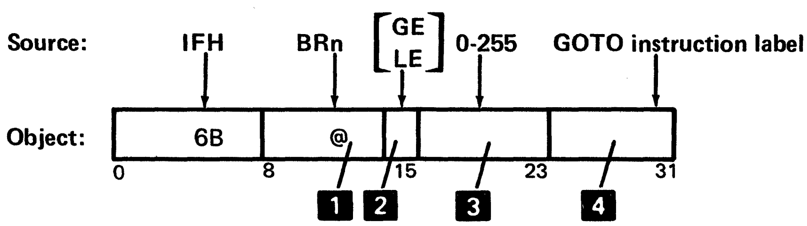
1 Test register: The address of the binary register that contains data to compare.

2 Compare constant: Hex 00-FF.

3 Branch instructions: The number minus 1 of the 4-byte object code instructions from the next sequential instruction to skip if the branch is taken (±128 object code instructions from the next instruction). If bit 24 is 1, the number is a negative displacement in twos complement form.

The branch is taken if the content of the low-order byte of the test register is equal to the compare constant.

Compare Binary Half-Register for Greater or Equal, Less or Equal (IFH BRn GE/LE)



1 Test register: The address of the binary register that contains data to compare.

2 Bit 15:
0 = GE.
1 = LE.

3 Compare constant: Hex 00-FF.

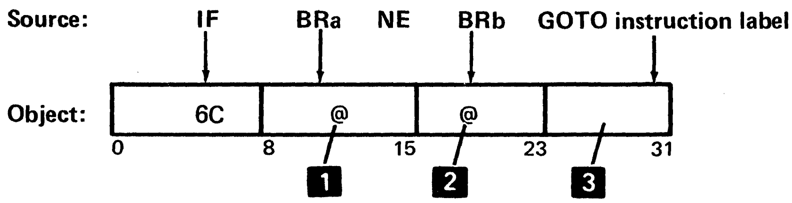
4 Branch instructions: The number minus 1 of the 4-byte object code instructions from the next sequential instruction to skip if the branch is taken (±128 object code instruction from the next instruction). If bit 24 is 1, the number is a negative displacement in twos complement form.

The branch is taken if:

- The content of the low-order byte of the test register is greater than or equal to the compare data and GE is specified.

- The content of the low-order byte of the test register is less than or equal to the compare constant and LE is specified.

Compare Binary for Not Equal (IF BRn NE)



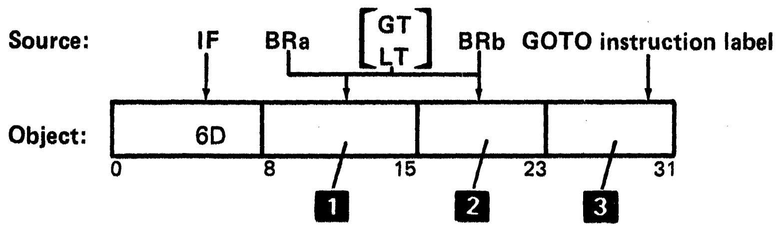
1 Test register: The address of the binary register that contains the data to compare.

2 Compare register: The address of the binary register that contains the compare data.

3 Branch instructions: The number, minus 1 of the 4-byte object code instructions from the next sequential instruction to skip if the branch is taken (±128 object code instructions from the next instruction). If bit 24 is 1, the number is a negative displacement in twos complement form.

The branch is taken if the content of the test register is not equal to the compare data.

Compare Binary for Greater or Less Than (IF BRn GT/LT)



1 *GT.* The test register: The address of the binary register that contains the data to compare.

LT. The compare register: The address of the binary register that contains the compare data.

2 *GT.* The compare register: The address of the binary register that contains the compare data.

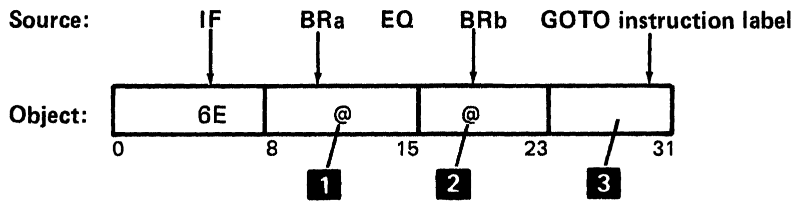
LT. The test register: The address of the binary register that contains the data to compare.

3 Branch instruction: The number minus 1 of the 4-byte object code instructions from the next sequential instruction to skip if the branch is taken (±128 object code instructions from the next instruction). If bit 24 is 1, the number is a negative displacement in twos complement form.

The branch is taken if:

- The content of the test register is greater than the compare data and GT is specified.
- The content of the test register is less than the compare data and LT is specified.

Compare Binary for Equal (IF BRn EQ)



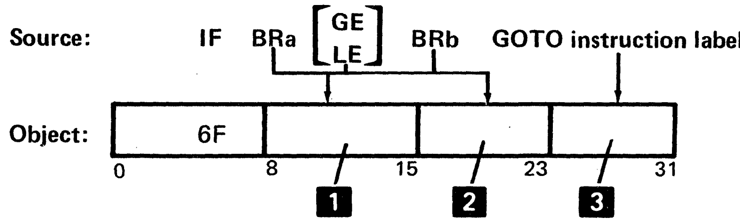
1 Test register address: The address of the binary register that contains the data to compare.

2 Compare register: The address of the binary register that contains the compare data.

3 Branch instructions: The number minus 1 (hex 00-7F) of the 4-byte object code instructions from the next sequential instruction to skip if the branch is taken (±128 object code instruction from the next instruction). If bit 24 is 1, the number is a negative displacement in twos complement form.

The branch is taken if the content of the test register is equal to the compare data.

Compare Binary for Greater or Equal, or Less or Equal (IF BRn GE/LE)



1 *GE.* The test register: The address of the binary register that contains the data to compare.

LE. The compare register: The address of the binary register that contains the compare data.

2 *GE.* The compare register: The address of the binary register that contains the compare data.

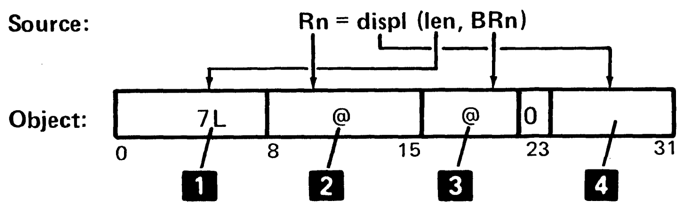
LE. The test register: The address of the binary register that contains the data to compare.

3 Branch instruction: The number minus 1 (hex 00-7F) of the 4-byte object code instructions from the next sequential instruction to skip if the branch is taken (±128 object code instruction from the next instruction). If bit 24 is 1, the number is a negative displacement in twos complement form.

The branch is taken if:

- The content of the test register is greater than or equal to the compare data and GE is specified.
- The content of the test register is less than or equal to the compare data and LE is specified.

Load Decimal Register from Base-Displacement Address (Rn = D(L, BRn))



1 Length: The number of bytes minus 1 (hex 0-F) of data to load.

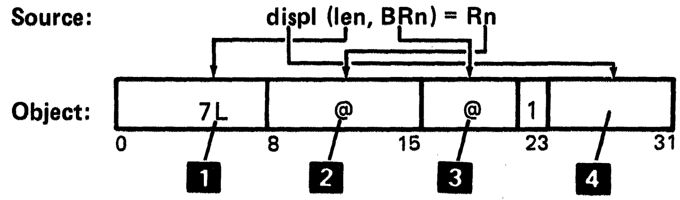
2 Load register address: The address of the decimal register where data is loaded.

3 Base address register: The address of the binary register that contains the base address.

4 Displacement: The number of bytes (hex 00-FF) from the base address where the bytes to load begin.

The decimal load register is filled with blanks (hex 40s). Then the microprocessor adds the displacement (if any exists) to the base address register contents and loads the data at that address to the specified decimal register. The data is right-justified in the register.

Store Decimal Register into Base Displacement Address (D(L,BRn) = Rn)



1 Length: The number of bytes minus 1 (hex 0-F) of data to store.

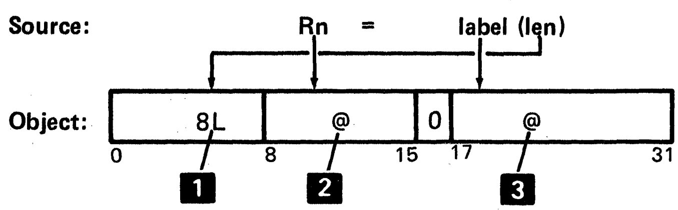
2 Store register address: The address of the decimal register where data is stored.

3 Base address register: The address of the binary register that contains the base address.

4 Displacement: The number of bytes (hex 00-FF) from the base address where the bytes to store begin.

The microprocessor adds the displacement (if any is specified) to the base address register contents and stores the contents of the specified decimal register at that address. Data is taken from the rightmost bytes of the register.

Load Decimal Register from Labeled Storage (Rn = label(L))



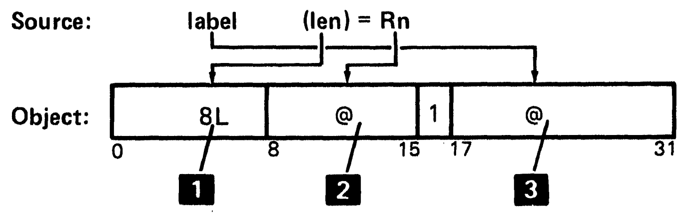
1 Length: The number of bytes minus 1 (hex 0-F) of data to load.

2 Load register address: The address of the decimal register where data is loaded.

3 Storage address: The storage address (hex 0000-7FFF) of data to load.

The microprocessor loads the specified decimal register with blanks (hex 40s), then loads it with data from the specified storage address. Data is right-justified in the register.

Store Decimal Register into Labeled Storage (label (len) = Rn)



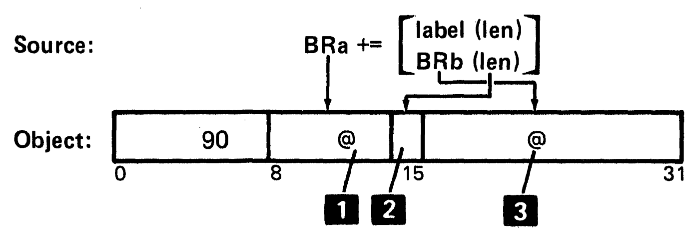
1 Length: The number of bytes minus 1 (hex 0-F) of data to store.

2 Load register address: The address of the decimal register where data is stored.

3 Storage address: The storage address (hex 0000-7FFF) of data to store.

The microprocessor stores the data in the specified decimal register at the specified storage address. Data is taken from the rightmost bytes of the register.

Binary Add (BRn +=)



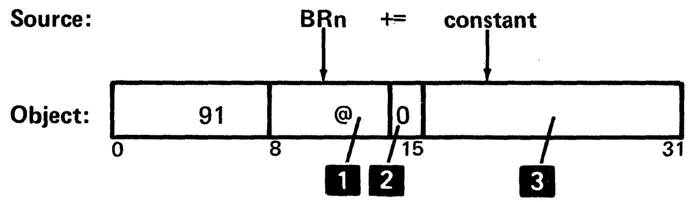
1 Result/factor 1: The address of the binary register that contains factor 1 and will contain the result of this instruction.

2 Bit 15:
0 = Length of factor 2 is 2.
1 = Length of factor 2 is 1.

3 Factor 2: The address of the leftmost byte of the binary register (BRb) or labeled (label) area that contains factor 2.

Factor 2 is added to factor 1, and the result is placed in the factor 1 register.

Binary Add Immediate Data (BRn +=)



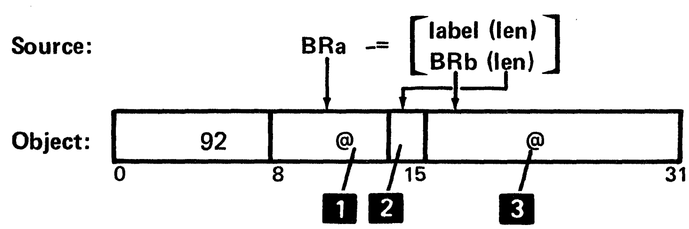
1 Result/factor 1: The address of the binary register that contains factor 1 and will contain the result of this instruction.

2 Bit 15 = 0.

3 Factor 2: The binary representation (hex 0000-FFFF) of the binary, hex, decimal, or character constant.

The factor 2 immediate data is added to factor 1, and the result is placed into the factor 1 register.

Binary Subtract (BRn −=)



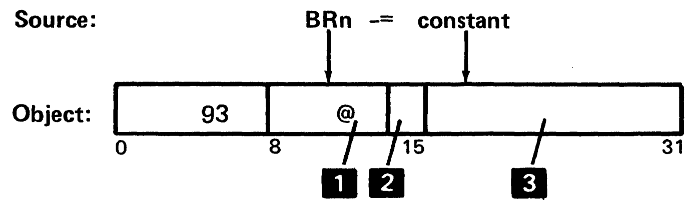
1 Result/factor 1: The address of the binary register that contains factor 1 and will contain the result of this instruction.

2 Bit 15:
- 0 = Length of factor 2 is 2.
- 1 = Length of factor 2 is 1.

3 Factor 2: The address of the leftmost byte of the binary register (BRb) or labeled (label) area that contains factor 2.

Factor 2 is logically subtracted from factor 1, and the result is placed in the factor 1 register.

Binary Subtract Immediate Data (BRn -=)



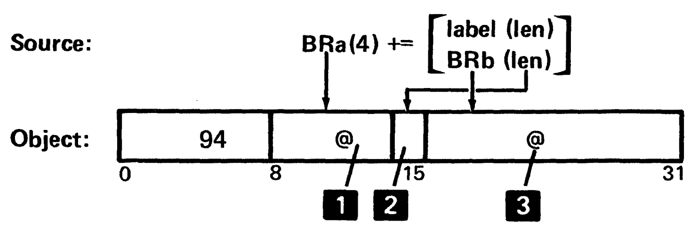
1 Result/factor 1: The address of the binary register that contains factor 1 and will contain the result of this instruction.

2 Bit 15 = 0.

3 Factor 2: The binary representation (hex 0000-FFFF) of the binary, hex, decimal, or character constant.

The factor 2 immediate is subtracted from factor 1, and the result is placed in the factor 1 register.

Binary Double Register Add (BRn(4) +=)



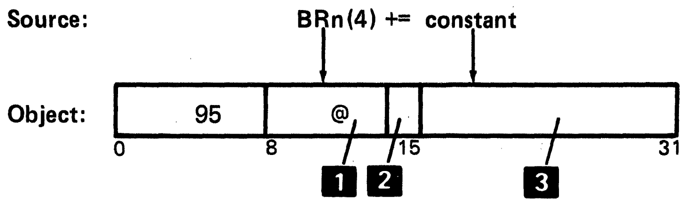
1 Result/factor 1: The address of the binary register that contains factor 1 and will contain the result of this instruction.

2 Bit 15:
0 = Length of factor 2 is 2.
1 = Length of factor 2 is 1.

3 Factor 2: The address of the leftmost byte of the binary register (BRb) or labeled (label) area that contains factor 2.

Factor 2 is added to factor 1, and the result is placed in the factor 1 register.

Binary Double Register Add Immediate Data (BRn(4) +=)



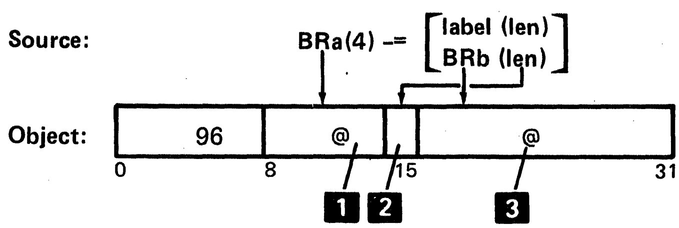
1 Result/factor 1: The address of the binary register that contains factor 1 and will contain the result of this instruction.

2 Bit 15 = 0.

3 Factor 2: The binary representation (hex 0000-FFFF) of the binary, hex, decimal, or character constant.

The factor 2 immediate data is added to factor 1, and the result is placed in the factor 1 register.

Binary Double Register Subtract (BRn(4) –=)



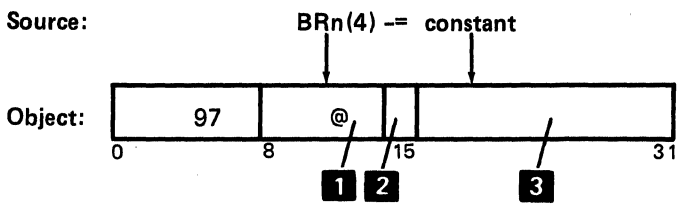
1 Result/factor 1: The address of the binary register that contains factor 1 and will contain the result of this instruction.

2 Bit 15:
0 = Length of factor 2 is 2.
1 = Length of factor 2 is 1.

3 Factor 2: The address of the leftmost byte of the binary register (BRb) or labeled (label) area that contains factor 2.

Factor 2 is logically subtracted from factor 1, and the result is placed in the factor 1 register.

Binary Double Register Subtract Immediate Data (BRn(4) -=)



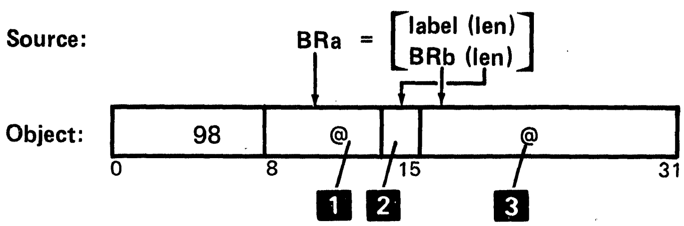
1 Result/factor 1: The address of the binary register that contains factor 1 and will contain the result of this instruction.

2 Bit 15 = 0.

3 Factor 2: The binary representation (hex 0000-FFFF) of the binary, hex, decimal, or character constant.

The factor 2 immediate data is subtracted from factor 1, and the result is placed in the factor 1 register.

Binary Register Load or Copy (BRn=)



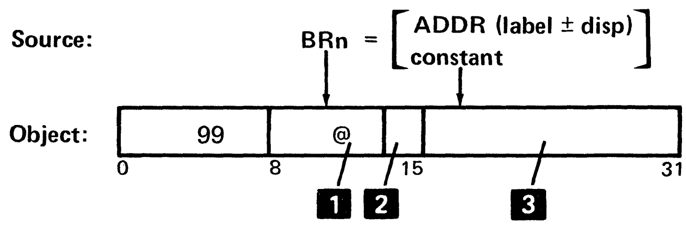
1 Result/factor 1: The address of the binary register that contains factor 1 and the result of this instruction.

2 Bit 15:
  0 = Length of factor 2 is 2.
  1 = Length of factor 2 is 1. (The leftmost register is set to zeros, and the rightmost byte is loaded.)

3 Factor 2: The address of the leftmost byte of the binary register (BRb) or labeled (label) area that contains factor 2.

Factor 1 is loaded with factor 2.

Binary Register Load Immediate Data or Address (BRn = C'II'/ADDR)



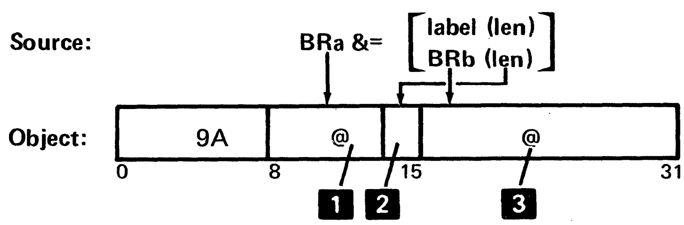
1 Result/factor 1: The address of the binary register that contains factor 1 and will contain the result of this instruction.

2 Bit 15 = 0.

3 Factor 2: The binary representation (hex 0000-FFFF) of the binary, hex, decimal, character constant, or a storage address.

The factor 2 constant or address is loaded into the factor 1 register.

Binary AND (BRn &=)



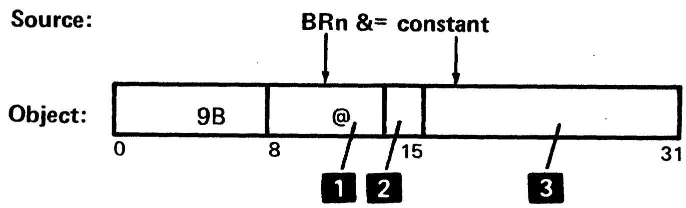
1 Result/factor 1: The address of the binary register that contains factor 1 and will contain the result of this instruction.

2 Bit 15:
0 = Length of factor 2 is 2.
1 = Length of factor 2 is 1. (The leftmost byte of the register is set to zeros.)

3 Factor 2: The address of the leftmost byte of the binary register (BRb) or the labeled (label) area that contains factor 2.

Factor 2 is logically ANDed with factor 1, and the result is placed in the factor 1 register.

Binary AND with Immediate Data (BRn &=)



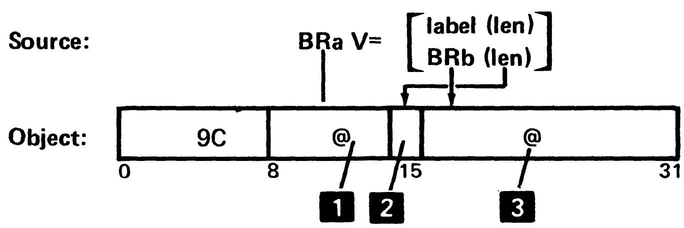
1 Result/factor 1: The address of the binary register that contains factor 1 and will contain the result of this instruction.

2 Bit 15 = 0.

3 Factor 2: The binary representation (hex 0000-FFFF) of the binary, hex, decimal, or character constant.

The factor 2 immediate data is ANDed with factor 1, and the result is placed in the factor 1 register.

Binary OR (BRn V=)



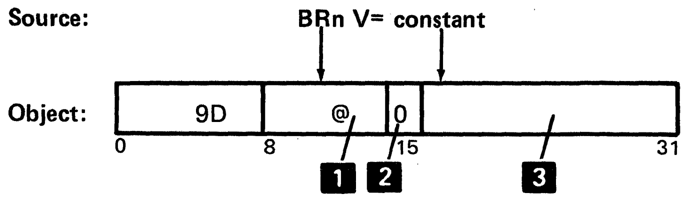
1 Result/factor 1: The address of the binary register that contains factor 1 and will contain the result of this instruction.

2 Bit 15:
0 = Length of factor 2 is 2.
1 = Length of factor 2 is 1.

3 Factor 2: The address of the leftmost byte of the binary register (BRb) or labeled (label) area that contains factor 2.

Factor 2 is logically ORed with factor 1, and the result is placed in the factor 1 register.

Binary OR with Immediate Data (BRn V=)



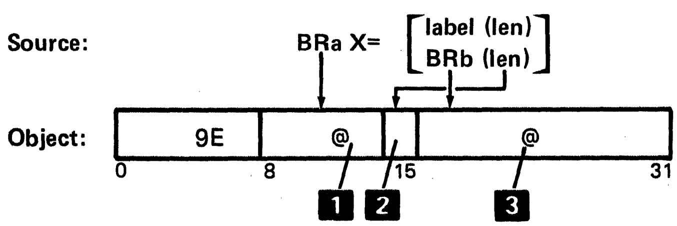
1 Result/factor 1: The address of the binary register that contains factor 1 and will contain the result of this instruction.

2 Bit 15 = 0.

3 Factor 2: The binary representation (hex 0000-FFFF) of the binary, hex, decimal, or character constant.

Factor 2 is logically ORed with the factor 1, and the result is placed in the factor 1 register.

Binary Exclusive OR (BRn X=)



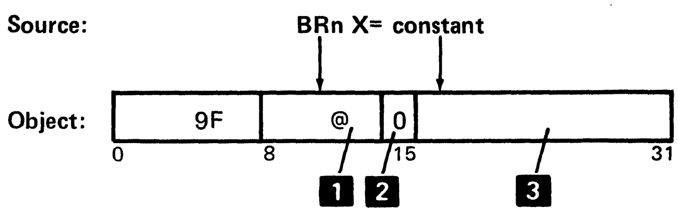
1 Result/factor 1: The address of the binary register that contains factor 1 and will contain the result of this instruction.

2 Bit 15:
0 = Length of factor 2 is 2.
1 = Length of factor 2 is 1.

3 Factor 2: The address of the leftmost byte of the binary register (BRb) or labeled (label) area that contains factor 2.

Factor 2 is logically exclusive ORed with factor 1, and the result is placed in the factor 1 register.

Binary Exclusive OR with Immediate Data (BRn X=)



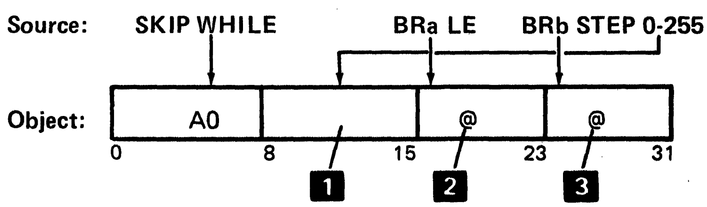
1 Result/factor 1: The address of the binary register that contains factor 1 and will contain the result of this instruction.

2 Bit 15 = 0.

3 Factor 2: The binary representation (hex 0000-FFFF) of the binary, hex, decimal, or character constant.

Factor 2 is logically exclusive ORed with factor 1, and the result is placed in the factor 1 register.

Skip While Index Low or Equal Limit (SKIP WHILE)



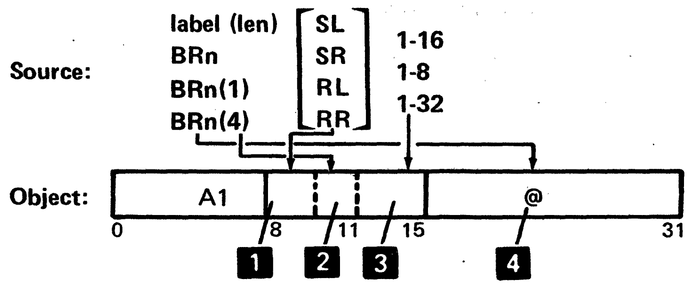
1 Increment value: The number (hex 00-FF) that is added to the contents of the test register.

2 Test register address: The address of the binary register that contains the value that is incremented and compared with the limit value.

3 Limit register address: The address of the binary register that contains limit value.

The increment value is added to the contents of the test register. The result is placed into the test register and then compared with the value in the limit register. If the value in the test register is less than or equal to the value in the limit register, the microprocessor skips the next sequential instruction.

Binary Register Shift or Rotate (SL/SR/RL/RR)



1 Shift or rotate, bits 8 and 9:
- 00 = SL (shift left)
- 10 = SR (shift right)
- 01 = RL (rotate left)
- 11 = RR (rotate right)

2 Register type, bits 10 and 11:
- 00 = Binary half-register (BRn(1)) of 1 byte
- 01 = Binary full register (BRn) of 2 bytes
- 10 = Binary double register (BRn(4)) of 4 bytes, with the high-order bit of the shift/rotate count = 0
- 11 = Binary double-register (BRn(4)) of 4 bytes, with the high-order bit of the shift/rotate count = 1

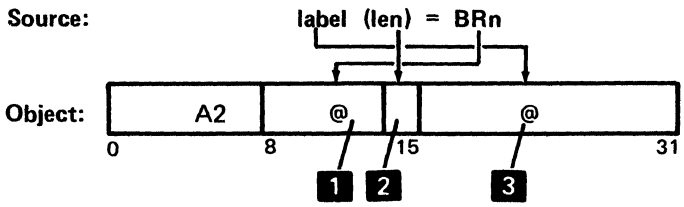
3 Shift or rotate count: For a full register, the number minus 1 (hex 0-F) of bits to shift/rotate. For a half register, the number minus 1 (hex 0-7) of bits to shift/rotate. For a double register, the low-order 4 bits of the number minus 1 (hex 00-1F) of bits to shift/rotate.

4 Result register address: The address of the binary register or labeled area that contains the data to shift/rotate and that will contain the shifted/rotated data.

The contents of the result register is shifted or rotated as specified. Shift operations move the contents of the register out of one end of the register and set the bits from which data was shifted to zero.

Rotate operations move the contents of the register out of one end and into the other end of the register.

Store Binary Register Contents (label = BRn)



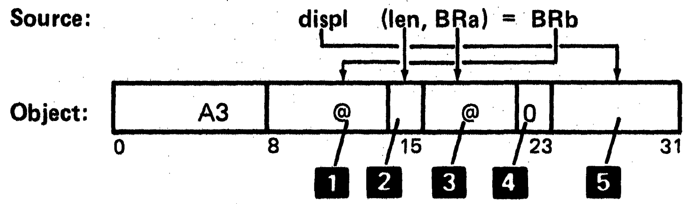
1 Binary register address: The address of the binary register that contains data to be stored at the storage address.

2 Storage location length:
- 0 = Storage location length is 2 bytes.
- 1 = Storage location length is 1 byte. (The rightmost byte of the binary register is stored.)

3 Storage address: The address of the storage location where the contents of the binary register are stored.

The contents of the binary register are stored in the labeled area.

Store Binary Register Contents, Indexed (D(L,BRa) = BRb(L))



1 Binary register address: The address of the binary register that contains data to be stored.

2 Storage location length:
- 0 = Storage location length is 2 bytes.
- 1 = Storage location length is 1 byte. (The low-order byte of the binary register, BRb, is stored.)

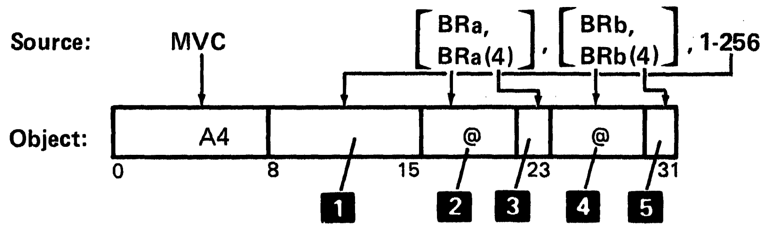
3 Base register address: The address of the binary register that contains the base address.

4 Address bit:
- 0 = BRa contains a 16-bit address.
- 1 = BRa(4) contains a 20-bit address of a storage location outside the partition.

5 Displacement: The number of bytes (hex 00-FF) from the base address where the contents of the binary register are stored.

The displacement is added to the base address, and the contents of the binary register are stored in the resulting address.

Move Characters (MVC(BRn) / MVC(BRn(4))



1 Length of move: The number minus 1 (hex 00-FF), of bytes to move from register to register.

2 To register address: The address of the binary register (BRa), or the rightmost register of a double register (BRa(4)), that contains the address of the storage location into which data is moved.

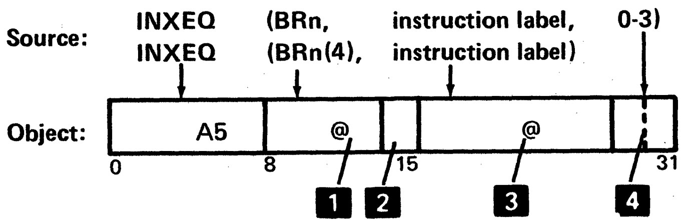
3 Address bit:
0 = BRa contains a 16-bit address.
1 = BRa(4) contains a 20-bit address of a storage location outside the partition.

4 From register address: The address of the binary register (BRb), or the rightmost register of a double-register (BRb(4)), that contains the address of the storage location from which data is moved.

5 Addressing bit:
0 = BRb contains a 16-bit address.
1 = BRb(4) contains a 20-bit address of a storage location outside the partition.

The characters are moved from left to right, into the area specified. Either the to register (BRa) or the from register (BRb) must be a double binary register.

Indirect Instruction Execution (INXEQ)



1 Instruction modifier address: The address of the single binary register (BRn), or the leftmost register of a double register (BRn(4)), that contains the data needed to modify the instruction.

If a single binary register is specified, then the contents of the low-order byte of the 2-byte register are logically ORed with the contents of the specified byte of the instruction.

If a double binary register is specified, then the contents of all 4 bytes of the register are ORed with the contents of all 4 bytes of the instruction, except that bits 30 and 31 are ignored.

2 Address bit:
0 = BRn.
1 = BRn(4).

3 Instruction address: The address of the instruction to modify and execute.

4 Instruction byte modifier, bits 30 and 31:
11 = Modify byte 0 of the instruction (op code)
00 = Modify byte 1 of the instruction
01 = Modify byte 2 of the instruction
10 = Modify byte 3 of the instruction

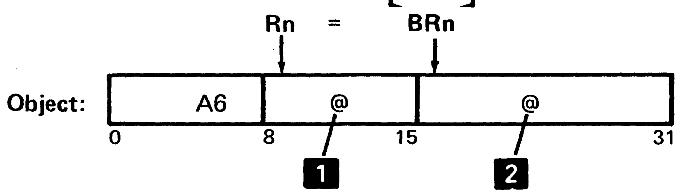
The specified instruction is modified as indicated, and then the modified instruction is executed. Control then returns to the instruction following the INXEQ instruction unless the modified instruction causes a branch. If a skip instruction is modified, and the modified instruction causes a skip, the instruction skipped is the instruction following the INXEQ instruction. The object code of the modified instruction is not changed.

If a short branch instruction is modified with INXEQ, the displacement is calculated from the INXEQ instruction rather than from the branch instruction. No additional validity for valid addresses is made with the INXEQ instruction.

If an INXEQ instruction is in the common area, the executed instruction is also in the common area.

Convert Binary to Decimal (Rn = BRn or BINDEC)

Source: BINDEC (Rn , [label / BRn])



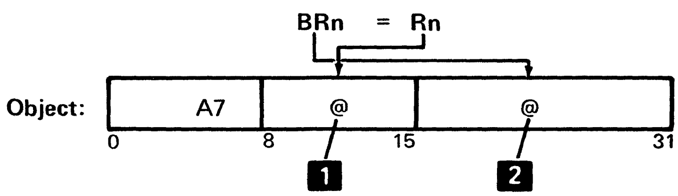
1 Decimal register address: The address of the decimal register that will contain the result of the binary to decimal conversion.

2 Binary register address: The address of the binary register or labeled area that contains the data to convert to decimal.

The contents of the binary register or labeled area are converted to decimal and placed into the decimal register.

Convert Decimal to Binary (BRn = Rn or DECBIN)

Source: DECBIN ([BRn / label] , Rn)

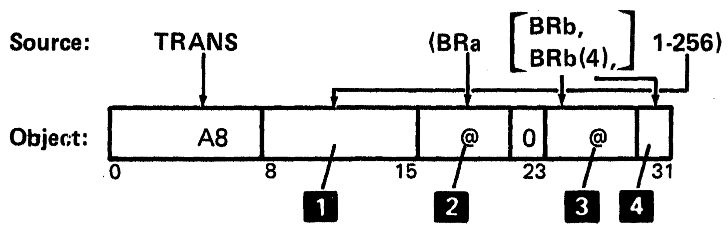


1 Decimal register address: The address of the decimal register that contains the data to convert to binary.

2 Binary register address: The address of the binary register or labeled area that will contain the result of the decimal to binary conversion.

The contents of the decimal register are converted to binary and placed into the binary register or labeled area.

Translate (TRANS)



1 Length: The number minus 1 (hex 00-FF) of bytes to translate.

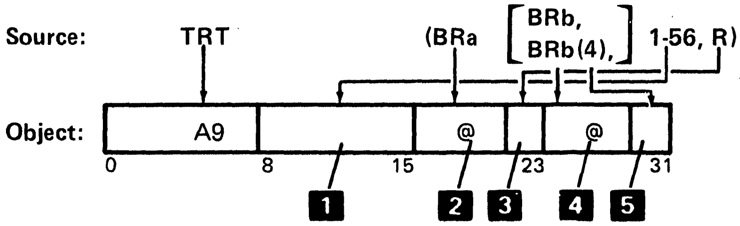
2 Data to translate address: The address of the binary register that contains the address of the data to translate.

3 Translate table address: The address of the binary register (BRb), or of the rightmost register of a double binary register (BRb(4)), that contains the translate table address.

4 Addressing bit:
0 = BRb contains a 16-bit address.
1 = BRb(4) contains a 20-bit address of a translate table outside the partition.

The data is translated, character by character, through the specified 256-byte translate table. The EBCDIC representation of the character is used as a displacement between 0 and 255 into the translate table. The character at that displacement into the translate table replaces the original character.

Translate and Test (TRT)



1 Length: The number minus 1 (hex 00-FF) of bytes to test.

2 Data to test address: The address of the binary register that contains the address of the data to test.

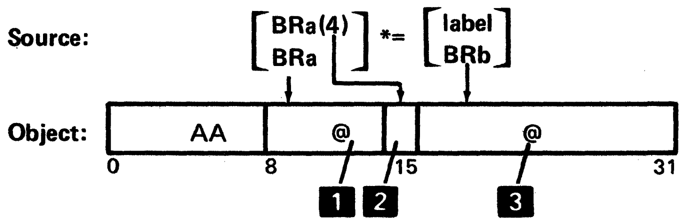
3 Scanning bit:
0 = Forward scanning (R not specified)
1 = Reverse scanning (R specified)

4 Translate table address: The address of the binary register (BRb), or of the rightmost register of a double binary register (BRb(4)), that contains the translate table address.

5 Addressing bit:
0 = BRb contains a 16-bit address.
1 = BRb(4) contains a 20-bit address of a translate table outside the partition.

The data is translated, character by character, through the specified 256-byte translate table. The EBCDIC representation of the character is used as a displacement between 0 and 255 into the translate table. If the character at that displacement in the translate table is zero, the next character is translated until the first nonzero translation is found or until all the characters have been tested. When the first nonzero translation is found, binary register BR16 is set to the address of the tested character, the low-order byte of binary register BR17 is set to the nonzero translate table entry, and the operation ends. If no nonzero translation is found BR16 and BR17 contain zeros when the operation is completed. The original characters are not changed.

Binary Multiply, Single or Double Register (BRn *= or BRn(4)*=)



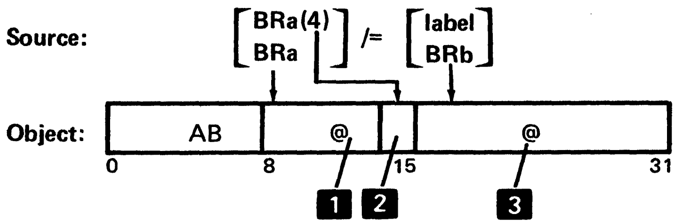
1 Result/factor 1: The address of the binary register that contains factor 1 and will contain the result of this instruction.

2 Bit 15:
- 0 = Single register result.
- 1 = Double register result. (The result/factor 1 address is the address of the leftmost register.)

3 Factor 2: The address of the leftmost byte of the binary register (BRb) or labeled (label) area that contains factor 2.

Factor 1 is multiplied by factor 2, and the result is placed in the factor 1 register. For a double register multiply, the first register contains factor 1 and both registers will contain the result.

Binary Divide, Single or Double Register (BRn /= or BRn(4) /=)



1 Result/factor 1: The address of the binary register that contains factor 1 and will contain the result of this instruction. (Factor 1 is always 16 bits, even if a double binary register is specified.)

2 Bit 15:

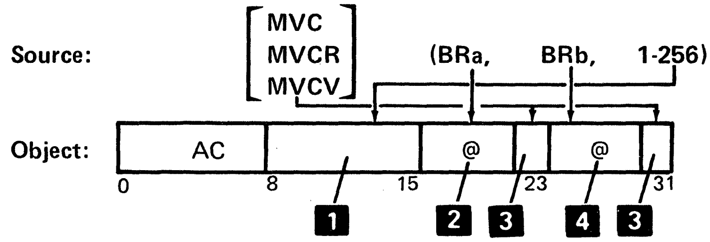
0 = Single register result.

1 = Double register result. (The result/factor 1 address is the address of the leftmost register.)

3 Factor 2: The address of the leftmost byte of the binary register (BRb) or labeled (label) area that contains factor 2.

Factor 1 is divided by factor 2, and the result is placed in the factor 1 register. For a double register divide, the remainder is in the rightmost register, and the result is in the leftmost register. No remainder is provided unless a double binary register is used.

Move Characters Within a Partition (MVC/MVCR/MVCV)



1 Length: The number minus 1 (hex 00-FF) of bytes to move.

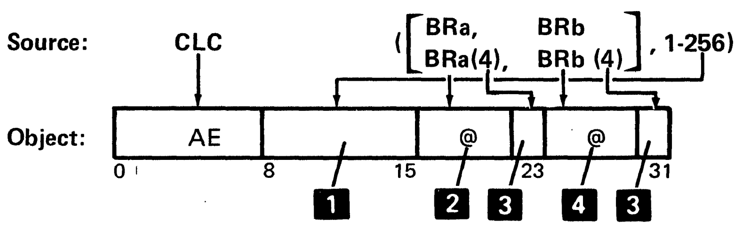
2 Move to address: The address of the binary register that contains the address of storage of where the data is moved to.

3 Bits 23 and 31:
00 = Move characters, left to right (MVC).
10 = Move characters, right to left (MVCR).
11 = Move characters, reverse fill (MVCV).

4 Move from address: The address of the binary register that contains the address of storage of where the data is moved from.

The characters are moved as specified from the from address to the to address.

Compare Character Strings (CLC)



1 Length: The number minus 1 (hex 00-FF) of bytes to compare.

2 Character string 1 address: The address of the single binary register (BRn), or of the rightmost register of a double binary register (BRn(4)), that contains the address of string 1.

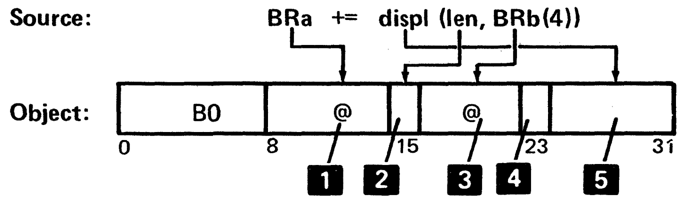
3 Bits 23 and 31:
0 = BRn contains a 16-bit address.
1 = BRn(4) contains a 20-bit address.

4 Character string 2 address: The address of the single binary register (BRn), or of the rightmost register of a double binary register (BRn(4)), that contains the address of string 2.

The microprocessor compares the two character strings, sets one of the following indicators on, and resets the other two indicators:

Indicator	**Meaning**
I101	Character string 1 is greater than character string 2.
I102	Character string 1 is less than character string 2.
I103	Character string 1 is equal to character string 2.

Binary Register Add with Base Displacement Address (+=)



1 Result/factor 1: The address of the binary register that contains factor 1 and will contain the result of this instruction.

2 Bit 15:
- 0 = Length of factor 2 is 2.
- 1 = Length of factor 2 is 1.

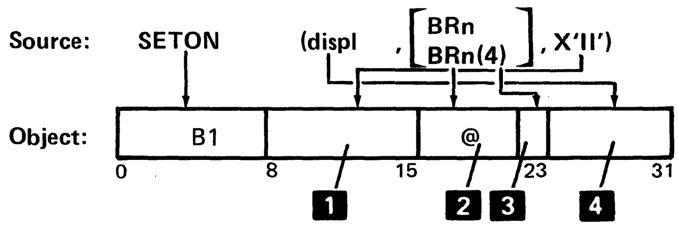
3 Base address register: The address of the binary register that contains the base address.

4 Address bit:
- 0 = BRa contains a 16-bit address.
- 1 = BRa(4) contains a 20-bit address of a storage location outside the partition.

5 Factor 2 displacement: The number of bytes (hex 00-FF) from the base address where factor 2 is stored.

The factor 2 displacement is added to the contents of the base register, then the data at the resulting address is logically added to factor 1.

Set Bits On with Mask (SETON)



1 Mask constant: A 1-byte constant to OR with the byte at the base displacement address.

2 Base address register: The address of the single binary register (BRn), or of the rightmost register of a double register (BRn(4)), that contains the base address.

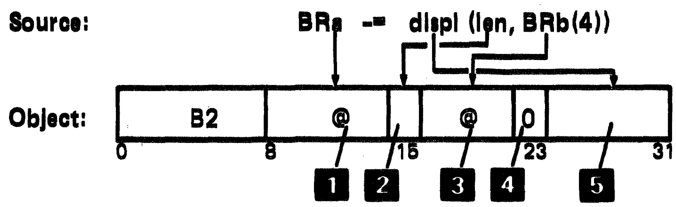
3 Addressing bit:
0 = BRn contains a 16-bit base address.
1 = BRn(4) contains a 20-bit base address.

4 Displacement: The number of bytes (hex 00-FF) from the base address where the byte, with the bits to set on, is stored.

The displacement is added to the contents of the base address register, then the data at the resulting address is logically ORed with the mask constant. The result is stored at the original storage location.

Note: This instruction should not be used to set different bits in the same byte of storage when a system has multiple application processors operating in multiple partitions. Use the RXORW instruction instead.

Binary Register Subtract with a Displacement Address (-=)



1 Result/factor 1: The address of the binary register that contains factor 1 and will contain the result of this instruction.

2 Bit 15:
- 0 = Length of factor 2 is 2.
- 1 = Length of factor 2 is 1.

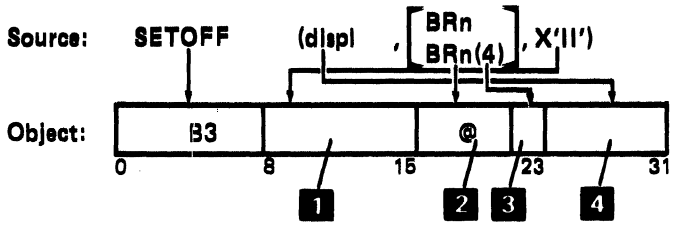
3 Base address register: The address of the binary register that contains the base address.

4 Address bit:
- 0 = BRa contains a 16-bit address.
- 1 = BRa(4) contains a 20-bit address of a storage location outside the partition.

5 Displacement: The number of bytes (hex 00-FF) from the base address where factor 2 is stored.

Factor 2 is subtracted from factor 1, and the result is placed in the factor 1 register.

Set Bits Off with Mask (SETOFF)



1 Mask constant: A 1-byte constant to convert to the ones complement, then AND with the byte at the base displacement address.

2 Base address register: The address of the single binary register (BRn), or of the rightmost register of a double register (BRn(4)), that contains the base address.

3 Addressing bit:
0 = BRn contains a 16-bit base address.
1 = BRn(4) contains a 20-bit base address.

4 Displacement: The number of bytes (hex 00-FF) from the base address where the byte to mask is stored.

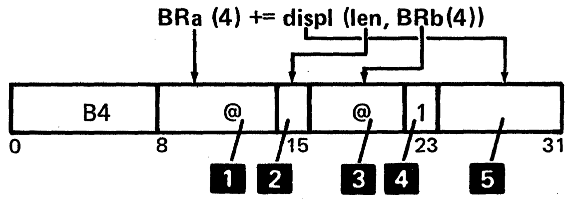
The displacement is added to the contents of the base address register, and then the data at the resulting address is logically ANDed with the ones complement of the mask constant. The result replaces the original data in storage.

Note: This instruction should not be used to reset different bits in the same byte of storage when a system has multiple application processors operating in multiple partitions. Use the RXORW instruction instead.

Binary Double-Register Add with a Base Displacement Address (+=)

Source: BRa (4) += displ (len, BRb(4))

Object:



1 Result/factor 1: The address of the binary register that contains factor 1 and will contain the result of this instruction.

2 Bit 15:
- 0 = Length of factor 2 is 2.
- 1 = Length of factor 2 is 1.

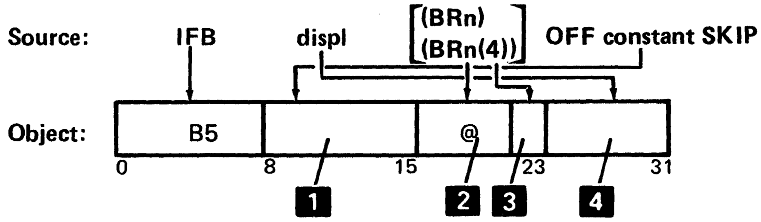
3 Base address register: The address of the binary register that contains the base address.

4 Address bit:
- 0 = BRa contains a 16-bit address.
- 1 = BRa(4) contains a 20-bit address of a storage location outside the partition.

5 Factor 2 displacement: The number of bytes (hex 00-FF) from the base address where factor 2 is stored.

The factor 2 displacement is added to the contents of the base register, then the data at the resulting address is logically added to factor 1.

Skip if Bits are OFF (IFB OFF)



1 Mask constant: A 1-byte constant that specifies the bits to test in the byte at the base displacement address.

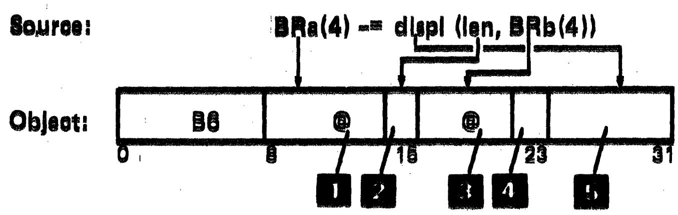
2 Base address register: The address of the single binary register (BRn), or of the rightmost register of a double register (BRn(4)), that contains the base address.

3 Addressing bit:
0 = BRn contains a 16-bit base address.
1 = BRn(4) contains a 20-bit base address.

4 Displacement: The number of bytes (hex 00-FF) from the base address where the byte to test is stored.

The displacement is added to the contents of the base address register, then the ones complement of the data at the resulting address is tested with the mask constant. If any of the test bits are off, the next sequential instruction is skipped.

Binary Double Register Subtract with a Base Displacement Address (-=)



1 Result/factor 1: The address of the binary register that contains factor 1 and will contain the result of this instruction.

2 Bit 15:
- 0 = Length of factor 2 is 2.
- 1 = Length of factor 2 is 1.

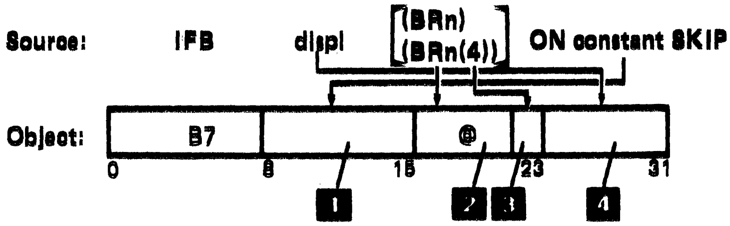
3 Base address register: The address of the binary register that contains the base address.

4 Address bit:
- 0 = BRa contains a 16-bit address.
- 1 = BRa(4) contains a 20-bit address of a storage location outside the partition.

5 Factor 2 displacement: The number of bytes (hex 00-FF) from the base address where factor 2 is stored.

The factor 2 displacement is subtracted from the contents of the base register, then the data at the resulting address is logically subtracted from factor 1.

Skip If Bits are On (IFB ON)



1 Mask constant: A 1-byte constant that specifies the bits to test in the byte at the base displacement address.

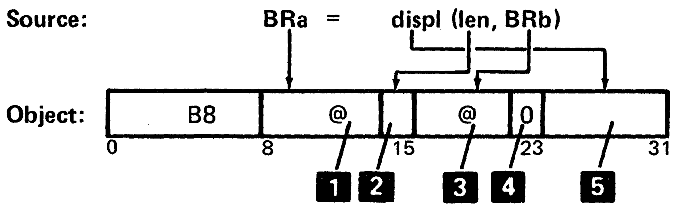
2 Base address register: The address of the single binary register (BRn), or of the rightmost register of a double register (BRn(4)), that contains the base address.

3 Addressing bit:
0 = BRn contains a 16-bit address.
1 = BRn(4) contains a 20-bit address.

4 Displacement: The number of bytes (hex 00-FF) from the base address where the byte to test is stored.

The displacement is added to the contents of the base address register, then the data at the resulting address is tested with the mask constant. If any of the test bits are on, the next sequential instruction is skipped.

Binary Register Load from a Base Displacement Address (=)



1 Result/factor 1: The address of the binary register that contains factor 1 and will contain the result of this instruction.

2 Bit 15:
0 = Length of factor 2 is 2.
1 = Length of factor 2 is 1.

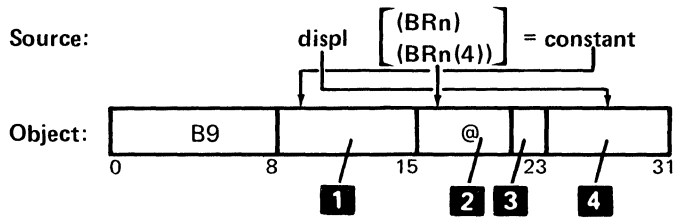
3 Base address register: The address of the binary register that contains the base address.

4 Address bit:
0 = BRb contains a 16-bit address.
1 = BRb(4) contains a 20-bit address of a storage location outside the partition.

5 Factor 2 displacement: The number of bytes (hex 00-FF) from the base address where factor 2 is stored.

The factor displacement is added to the base address register contents, and factor 2 is loaded from that address to the specified binary register.

Insert Constant Into a Base Displacement Address (= constant)



1 Constant: A 1-byte constant to insert into the base displacement address.

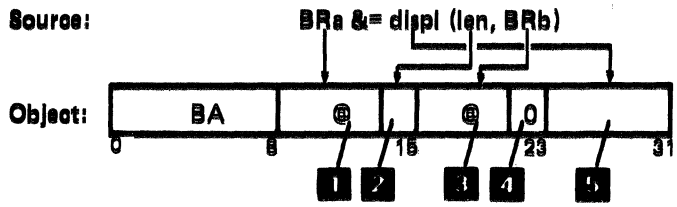
2 Base address register: The address of the single binary register (BRn), or of the rightmost register of a double register (BRn(4)), that contains the base address.

3 Addressing bit:
0 = BRn contains a 16-bit base address.
1 = BRn(4) contains a 20-bit base address.

4 Displacement: The number of bytes (hex 00-FF) from the base address where the character is inserted.

The displacement is added to the base address, and the constant is loaded into the resulting address.

Binary Register AND with Base Displacement Address (&=)



1 Result/factor 1: The address of the binary register that contains factor 1 and will contain the result of this instruction.

2 Bit 15:
0 = Length of factor 2 is 2.
1 = Length of factor 2 is 1.

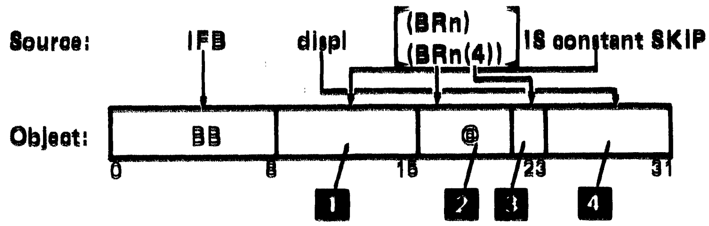
3 Base address register: The address of the binary register that contains the base address.

4 Address bit:
0 = BRa contains a 16-bit address.
1 = BRa(4) contains a 20-bit address of a storage location outside the partition.

5 Factor 2 displacement: The number of bytes (hex 00-FF) from the base address where factor 2 is stored.

The factor 2 displacement is added to the base address register contents, factor 1 is ANDed with the contents of the resulting address, and the result is placed into the factor 1 register.

Skip if Byte Equals Constant (IFB IS)



1 Constant: A 1-byte constant that is compared with the contents of the byte at the base displacement address.

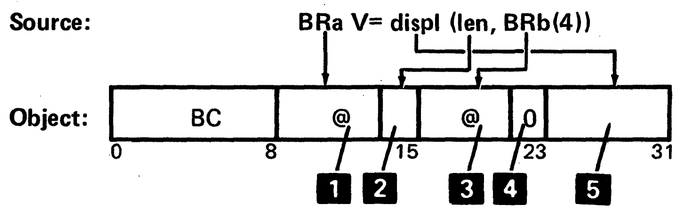
2 Base address register: The address of the single binary register (BRn), or of the rightmost register of a double register (BRn(4)), that contains the base address.

3 Addressing bit:
0 = BRn contains a 16-bit base address.
1 = BRn(4) contains a 20-bit base address.

4 Displacement: The number of bytes (hex 00-FF) from the base address where the byte to compare with the constant is stored.

The displacement is added to the contents of the base address register, the contents of the resulting address is compared with the constant, and the next instruction is skipped if they are equal.

Binary Register OR with a Base Displacement Address (V=)



1 Result/factor 1: The address of the binary register that contains factor 1 and will contain the result of this instruction.

2 Bit 15:
0 = Length of factor 2 is 2.
1 = Length of factor 2 is 1.

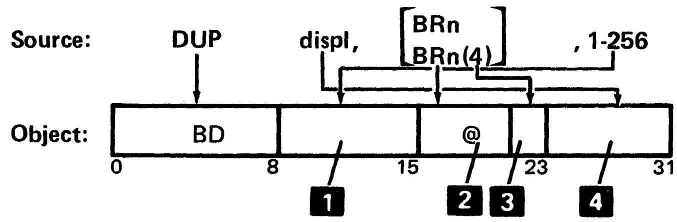
3 Base address register: The address of the binary register that contains the base address.

4 Address bit:
0 = BRa contains a 16-bit address.
1 = BRa(4) contains a 20-bit address of a storage location outside the partition.

5 Factor 2 displacement: The number of bytes (hex 00-FF) from the base address where factor 2 is stored.

The factor 2 displacement is added to the base address register contents, factor 1 is ORed with factor 2, and the result is placed in the factor 1 register.

Duplicate a Character at Base Displacement Address (DUP)



1 Length: The number minus 1 (hex 00-FF) of times to duplicate the byte at the base displacement address.

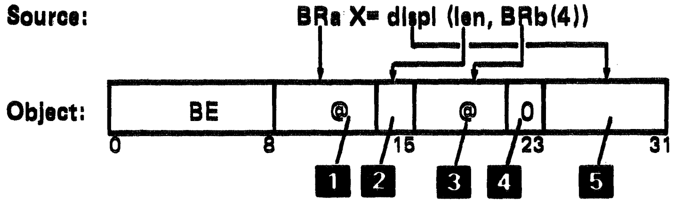
2 Base address register: The address of the single binary register (BRn), or of the rightmost register of a double register (BRn(4)), that contains the base address.

3 Addressing bit:
0 = BRn contains a 16-bit base address.
1 = BRn(4) contains a 20-bit base address.

4 Displacement: The number of bytes (hex 00-FF) from the base address where the byte to duplicate is stored.

The displacement is added to the contents of the base address register and the contents of the resulting address is duplicated into the succeeding bytes.

Binary Register Exclusive OR with a Base Displacement Address (X=)



1 Result/factor 1: The address of the binary register that contains factor 1 and will contain the result of this instruction.

2 Bit 15:
- 0 = Length of factor 2 is 2.
- 1 = Length of factor 2 is 1.

3 Base address register: The address of the binary register that contains the base address.

4 Address bit:
- 0 = BRa contains a 16-bit address.
- 1 = BRa(4) contains a 20-bit address of a storage location outside the partition.

5 Factor 2 displacement: The number of bytes (hex 00-FF) from the base address where factor 2 is stored.

The factor 2 displacement is added to the contents of the base address register, factor 1 is exclusively-ORed with the factor 2, and the result is placed in the factor 1 register.

Replace Field on Screen (REPFLD)

Source: REPFLD

Object:

C3	00	00	00
0	8	15	23 31

When the REPFLD instruction is executed, the main microprocessor does the following:

- Stores the keyboard operation code C3 and the operation parameters in the keyboard/display IOB starting at hex displacement 1F.
- Moves the contents of register BR19, BR20, and BR21 into the op code instruction to use as parameters. (During keyboard/display external status, BR19 holds the address of the current field in the I/O buffer; BR20 holds the address of the current field in the refresh buffer in keyboard/display storage; and BR21 holds the character set definition, the length minus 1 of the current field, and character set information about the last field processed.
- Notifies the keyboard/display microprocessor of the service request (keyboard operation). The keyboard/display microprocessor then moves the data, specified in the operation parameters, from main storage into the keyboard/display storage main refresh buffer. The bytes are translated through the display translate table; EBCDIC values between hex 20 and 2F are changed to hex 1F and displayed as solid rectangles. The codes in main storage remain unchanged.
- If the signed numeric bit is on in parameter 3 (from BR21) and the rightmost byte moved is D0-D9, a minus sign is displayed in the sign position of the field (to the right of the rightmost byte). If the rightmost byte is not D0-D9, a blank is displayed in the sign position.

  If the character set bits indicate a numeric only or digits only field and the signed numeric bit is not on, and if the rightmost byte moved is D0-D9, the negative graphic corresponding to the digit is displayed in the rightmost position of the field.

  This operation is not meaningful for IBM 3270 mode.

Keyboard Attach (KATTCH)

Source: KATTCH

Object:

C4	00	00	00
0	8	15	23 31

The KATTCH instruction provides temporary control of a keyboard/display unit, attaching the partition to its associated keyboard. This instruction is in effect until a KDETCH instruction is executed. If the attach is successful, the next sequential instruction is skipped.

This operation will fail if:

- There is an outstanding keystroke error
- There is an outstanding request for software error mode (KERRST)
- There is an outstanding ENTR
- Another partition is attached

This operation is not valid for IBM 3270 mode.

Keyboard Detach (KDETCH)

Source: KDETCH

Object:

C5	00	00	00
0	8	15	23 31

The KDETCH instruction detaches the keyboard/display unit from the current partition. If the detach is successful, the next sequential instruction is skipped.

This operation will fail if:

- There is an outstanding keystroke error
- There is an outstanding request for software error mode (KERRST)
- There is an outstanding ENTR

This operation is not valid for IBM 3270 mode.

Read Elapsed Time Counter

Source: RTIMER (BRa)

Object:

0	8	15		23 31
C7	03	@	0	00
	1	2		

1 Keyboard operation number: The number that the main microprocessor stores in the keyboard/display IOB starting at hex displacement 1F.

2 To address: The address of the binary register that contains the main storage address where the timer value is to be stored.

This instruction stores the timer value into a 3-byte storage area. The high-order 2 bytes are taken from a 2-byte counter in the system control block (see *Elapsed Time Counter* in Chapter 1). These 2 bytes of the count indicate the number of 1.6 seconds that have elapsed since power on. The low-order byte is taken from a keyboard/display timer. Bits 0-3 of the low-order byte are always zero. Bits 4-7 indicate the number of tenths of a second since the last count indicated in the high-order 2 bytes.

Cancel Current Enter Command (CNENTR)

Source: CNENTR

Object:

0	8	15	23 31
C7	05	00	00
	1		

1 Keyboard operation number: The number that the main microprocessor stores in the keyboard/display IOB starting at hex displacement 1F.

This instruction cancels the current ENTR command. The end of screen format control string functions are performed, and data is no longer accepted from the keyboard. On the status line, the counters, insert mode symbol, keyboard shift, and hex display position are set to blanks. In the IOB, the command op code is set to zeros.

If this operation is issued in an external status subroutine during the processing of a nonoverlapped ENTR command, the return issued in the subroutine is made to the interrupted ENTR if the interrupted ENTR was not made complete by the external status condition. The ENTR is reissued and processing begins at the start of the screen format control string.

This operation not meaningful for IBM 3270 mode.

Release Character and Field Edits (KEYOP)

Source: **KEYOP** **(X'06')**

Object:

C7	06	00	00

1

1 Keyboard operation number: The number that the main microprocessor stored in the keyboard/display IOB starting at hex displacement 1F.

The following character and field edit checks are discontinued for the current field:

- Character set check
- Data required
- Blank check
- Mandatory enter
- Mandatory fill

The checks are discontinued only until the field is exited in the forward or backward direction. If the same field is later advanced or backspaced into, the checks will be in effect.

This operation not meaningful for IBM 3270 mode.

Change Row Attribute (KEYOP)

Source:	KEYOP	(X'07',	BRa,	BRb)
Object:	C7	07	@	@
		1	2	3

1 Keyboard operation number: The number that the main microprocessor stores in the keyboard/display IOB starting at hex displacement 1F.

2 Row: The address of the binary register that contains in the low-order byte the number of the row on the screen that is effected.

3 Masks: The address of the binary register that contains two 1-byte masks to be used for control information.

In keyboard/display storage, there is a 1-byte attribute specification for each row on the screen. This attribute specification determines how the row is displayed. The format of the attribute specification is as follows:

Bit	Meaning
0-1	01 = No system indicator 10 = Dash 11 = Solid rectangle
2	Valid row starting attribute. This bit must be 1 for bits 3-7 to be valid
3	Column separators are displayed
4	Blink the row[2]
5	Underscore the row[1,2]
6	High intensity[1]
7	Reverse image[1]

When this keyboard operation is executed, the attribute specification for the row is ANDed with the mask in the high-order byte of the binary register that holds the masks. The result of the AND is then exclusively-ORed with the mask in the low-order byte of the register. The attribute specified with bits 3-7 stays in effect until the next row starting attribute or character attribute.

[1] If bits 5, 6, and 7 equal 111, the display of the row is inhibited.
[2] These attributes remain in effect until any attribute is encountered.

Change Screen Position Pointer (KEYOP)

Source: KEYOP (X'08', BRa)

Object:

C7	08	@	0	00
0	8	15	23	31
	1	**2**		

1 Keyboard operation number: The number that the main microprocessor stores in the keyboard/display IOB starting at hex displacement 1F.

2 Screen position pointer modifier: The address of the binary register that contains the modifier.

The contents of the screen position pointer are replaced with the modifier. The binary register that holds the modifier contains the row number in the leftmost byte and the column number in the rightmost byte.

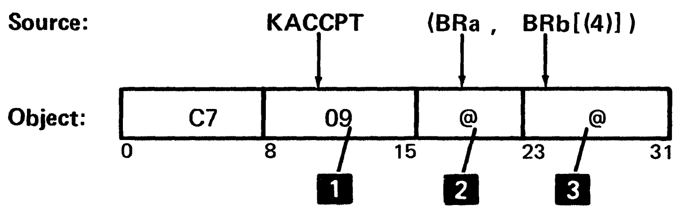
If this operation is performed prior to an ENTR command and the format control string for the ENTR specifies that the format should be continued at the current screen position, the format will be initialized at the position specified by this operation rather than at row 2, column 1.

If this operation is performed during the processing of an ENTR command (for example, during an RG exit), all screen definitions such as fields and prompts encountered after this operation is executed originate from the position specified by this operation. The cursor is not moved over intervening fields and prompts; it causes them to be displaced on the screen.

This operation not meaningful for IBM 3270 mode.

Note: It is not recommended to use this operation during the processing of an ENTR. No checking is made on the specified screen position.

Accept Keystrokes and Store (KACCPT)



1 Keyboard operation number: The number that the main microprocessor stores in the keyboard/display IOB starting at hex displacement 1F.

2 Address: The address of the binary register that contains the main storage address where the keystrokes are stored.

3 Length and options: If a 2-byte binary register is specified (optional 4 not supplied), it contains the information described for bytes 0 and 1. The keystrokes are not displayed as they are entered. If a 4-byte binary double register is specified (optional 4 is supplied), it contains the information described for bytes 0 to 3. The keystrokes are displayed as they are entered.

Byte	Bit	Meaning
0		Option Flags:
	0 = 1	The keyboard sounds a response click for each keystroke.
	1-4	Not used.
	5 = 1	The monocase function is enabled; keystrokes are converted to their uppercase equivalent as they are entered.
	6-7	Keyboard Shift Flags: 00 for Alpha shift. 01 for Num shift. 10 for Katakana shift. 11 is invalid.
1		Number minus 1 of keystrokes to accept.
2		Row number where keystroke display begins.
3		Column number where keystroke display begins.

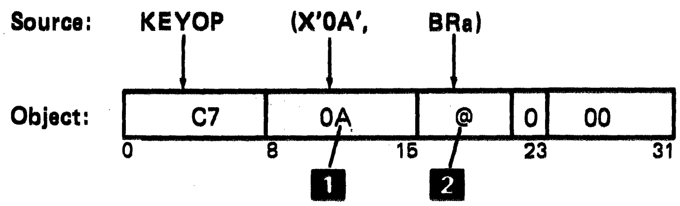
The scan code and its EBCDIC translation are stored for each keystroke accepted from the keyboard. The codes are stored in pairs. For multiple keystrokes the scan code and EBCDIC are stored sequentially in the order they are entered.

The keystrokes are not applied to any outstanding ENTR command. If a shift key is pressed during this operation, the keyboard shift is changed but the scan code and EBCDIC for the shift key are not stored; the shift key does not effect the keystroke count. If a function key is pressed during this operation, the scan code and EBCDIC are stored but the function is not performed and external status does not result. If a command key sequence is entered during this operation, the codes are stored and external status does not result except if the Cmd key is followed by the C key. In this case, the codes for the Cmd key are stored and then the function for the Cmd, C key sequence is performed; the KACCPT operation is made complete regardless of the keystroke count.

The keyboard must be attached when this operation is performed.

This operation is not valid in IBM 3270 mode.

Pass Scan Code to Keyboard (KEYOP)



1 Keyboard operation number: The number that the main microprocessor stores in the keyboard/display IOB starting at hex displacement 1F.

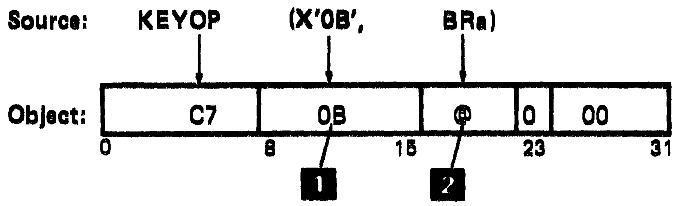
2 Scan code address: The address of the binary register that contains the main storage address of the scan code.

When this operation is executed, the specified scan code is passed to the keyboard/display associated with the partition. The scan code is processed as though it originated from the keyboard.

The keyboard must be attached when this operation is performed.

This operation is not valid in IBM 3270 mode.

Pass EBCDIC to Keyboard (KEYOP)



1 Keyboard operation number: The number that the main microprocessor stores in the keyboard/display IOB starting at hex displacement 1F.

2 EBCDIC Code address: The address of the binary register that contains the main storage address of the EBCDIC code.

When this operation is executed, the specified EBCDIC code is passed to the keyboard/display associated with the partition. If the EBCDIC corresponds to a data key or function key, it is processed as though it originated from the keyboard.

Note: 29 (clear screen) and 2A (clear status line) are ignored because they are not function key EBCDICs. These functions can be performed with keyboard operation 11.

The keyboard must be attached when this operation is performed.

This operation is not valid in IBM 3270 mode.

Display Extra Line (DISPEX)

Source: DISPEX

Object:

C7	0C (1)	00	00
0	8	15	23	31

1 Keyboard operation number: The number that the main microprocessor stores in the keyboard/display IOB starting at hex displacement 1F.

The instruction displays the extra line, replacing the display of the status line. The row starting address for the status line is set to the address of the extra line in the keyboard/display storage main refresh buffer area. The status line information is not available when using this instruction.

Display Status Line (DISPST)

Source: DISPST

Object:

C7	0D (1)	00	00
0	8	15	23	31

1 Keyboard operation number: The number that the main microprocessor stores in the keyboard/display IOB starting at hex displacement 1F.

The instruction displays the status line, replacing the display of the extra line. The row starting address for the extra line is set to the address of the status line in the keyboard/display storage main refresh buffer area.

Request Keyboard Error Mode (KERRST)

Source: KERRST (BRa , BRb)

Object:

0–7	8–15	16–22	23	24–30	31
C7	0E	@	0	@	0
	1	2		3	

1 Keyboard operation number: The number that the main microprocessor stores in the keyboard/CRT IOB starting at hex displacement 1F.

2 Attribute mask and control information: The address of the binary register that contains the attribute mask in byte 0 and control information in byte 1.

Byte	Bit	Meaning if 1
0		Attribute Mask:
	0	Buzz keyboard
	1-2	Reserved
	3	Column separators displayed
	4	Blink
	5	Underscore[1]
	6	Highlight[1]
	7	Reverse image[1]
1		Control Information:
	0	0 = Do not check for display of status line. 1 = Display status line if it is not currently displayed.
	1	Start in column 1. (If bit 1 = 0, start in column 3.)
	2-7	Message length minus 1, up to 63. If 63 is specified, it indicates 0 bytes.

3 Message: The address relative to the start of the partition of the binary register that contains the main storage address of the message to move to the status line refresh buffer.

[1] If bits 5, 6, and 7 equal 111, data will not be displayed.

This operation places the keyboard in software error mode. When the keyboard/ display is in software error mode, all data keys, function keys, and command key sequences are ignored. However, if the KEYOP instruction for operation hex 11 (perform keyboard function) is issued, the function is performed as long as the keyboard is in an appropriate state.

Bits 3-7 of the attribute mask are exclusively-ORed with bits 3-7 of the row attribute byte (which determines the display of the row) for the top row of the screen. If the status line is not displayed on the screen, the extra line will have the indicated attributes.

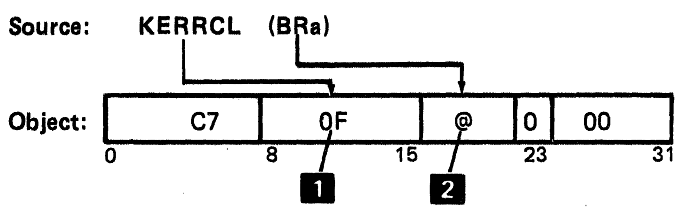
Bytes are moved from the address specified to the status line. The bytes are translated through the display translate table, and attributes are translated and passed. The bytes moved from storage overwrite the original status line data, and the original status line data destroyed.

If the status line is currently being displayed when this instruction is executed the indicated message is displayed in column 1 or column 3, according to byte 1, bit 1 of the control information. If the status line is not being displayed, the message is not displayed unless byte 1, bit 0 is 1.

This operation is invalid if the keyboard/display is already in software error mode, or if issued from an unattached background partition.

This operation is not valid in IBM 3270 mode.

Reset Keyboard Error Mode (KERRCL)



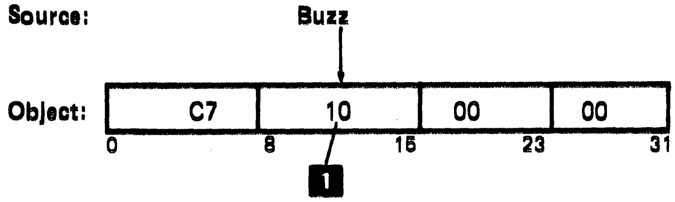
1 Keyboard operation number: The number that the main microprocessor stores in the keyboard/display IOB starting at hex displacement 1F.

2 Attribute mask and control information: The address of the binary register that contains the attribute mask in byte 0 and control information in byte 1. See keyboard operation 0E for the format.

This operation takes the keyboard/display out of software error mode. It is valid only after a KERRST operation, and only when issued from an attached partition. When this operation is executed, if an ENTR command is outstanding and bits 2-7 of the control information do not equal zero, the field shift, hex display, current position counter, insert mode, and positions remaining in current field counter are restored in the status line. An attribute change is allowed, as for KERRST. Bits 2-7 of the control information specify the number minus 1 of positions to replace with blanks when the KERRCL operation is executed.

This operation is not valid in IBM 3270 mode.

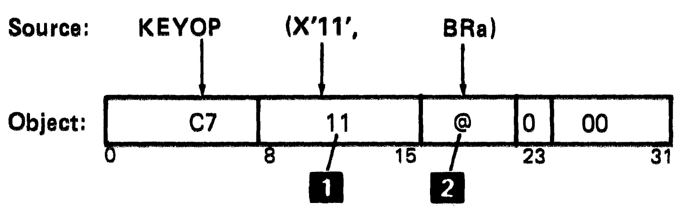
Sound Buzzer (BUZZ)



1 Keyboard operation number: The number that the main microprocessor stores in the keyboard/display IOB starting at hex displacement 1F.

This instruction sounds the alarm on the keyboard associated with the partition. The duration of the alarm is approximately 180 milliseconds.

Perform Keyboard Function (KEYOP)



1 Keyboard operation number: The number that the main microprocessor stores in the keyboard/display IOB starting at hex displacement 1F.

2 Function address: The address of the binary register that contains, in the rightmost byte, the EBCDIC code for a function.

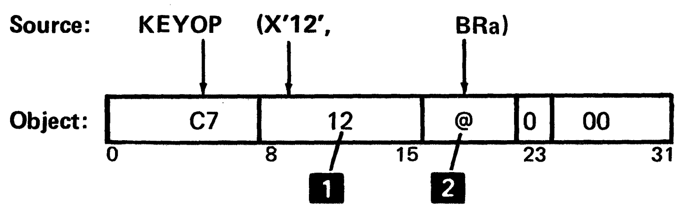
When this operation is executed, the function specified by the function EBCDIC is performed, with the following exceptions:

- The keyboard bit map is not checked to determine if the application program normally handles the function.
- If the keyboard is in software error mode, the function is executed if the keyboard is in an appropriate state. If the function is 29 (clear screen) or 2A (clear status line), the function is executed regardless of the state of the keyboard. If a function EBCDIC other than hex 01 through 2C is specified, an invalid operation external status condition occurs. The keyboard must be attached when this operation is performed.

This operation is not valid for IBM 3270 mode.

See Appendix C for a list of the function codes.

Allocate Keyboard/Display Storage (KEYOP)



1 Keyboard operation number: The number that the main microprocessor stores in the keyboard/display IOB starting at hex displacement 1F.

2 Length address: The address of the binary register that contains, in the rightmost byte, the length in K-bytes to allocate for each area, as follows:

Bits	Meaning
0-1	Number of K bytes (in binary) to allocate to section F (unit 1).
2-3	Number of K bytes (in binary) to allocate to section B (unit 2).
4-5	Number of K bytes (in binary) to allocate to section 7 (unit 3).
6-7	Number of K bytes (in binary) to allocate to section 3 (unit 4).

This instruction should be issued only at IPL time to allocate keyboard/display storage. The storage address range for one to three K bytes is as follows if the specified amount of storage is available:

Binary Specification	Number of K Bytes	Address Range in Keyboard/Display Storage
01	1	xC00 through xFFF
10	2	x800 through xFFF
11	3	x400 through xFFF

Where x is hex F, B, 7, or 3 for keyboard/display units 1, 2, 3, or 4 respectively.

If 3 K of storage is specified for a section and only 1 or 2 K is available, the storage is allocated beginning at x400. If 2 K of storage is specified for a section and only 1 K of storage is available, the storage is allocated beginning at x800.

If the amount of storage specified for allocation to sections F, B, 7, and 3 is less than the total amount available, the remaining storage is allocated in section 0 starting at address hex 0000 to a maximum of 4 K bytes.

Notes:

1. Certain 5280 models have keyboard/display storage that is not dynamically allocatable. On these models, execution of this instruction does not change the storage allocation.
2. Regardless of how the allocation is specified, the hardware will not allocate storage in a section if that section does not have a corresponding display attachment.

See Chapter 3 for more information about keyboard/display storage.

Click Keyboard (CLICK)

Source: CLICK

Object:

0–7	8–15	16–23	24–31
C7	14 (1)	00	00

1 Keyboard operation number: The number that the main microprocessor stores in the keyboard/display IOB starting at hex displacement 1F.

This instruction clicks the keyboard associated with the partition.

Open Keyboard/Display (KEYOP)

Source: KEYOP (X'15')

Object:

0–7	8–15	16–23	24–31
C7	15 (1)	00	00

1 Keyboard operation number: The number that the main microprocessor stores in the keyboard/display IOB starting at hex displacement 1F.

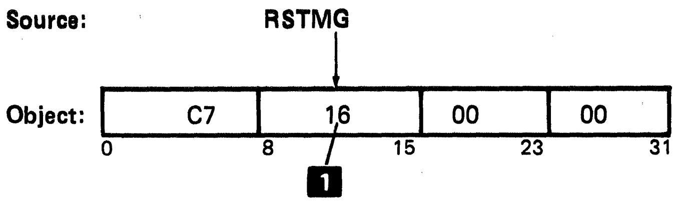
This instruction initializes the keyboard/display unit.

- The clear screen function (29) is performed.
- The clear status line function is performed.
- The cursor is erased from the screen.
- The blink attribute for the top line displayed on the screen is cleared unless a keystroke error or software error mode is outstanding.

This operation is performed automatically during a load operation; it should not normally be issued by an application program. If this operation is issued from an unattached partition, an external status condition for invalid operation occurs.

This operation is not valid for IBM 3270 mode.

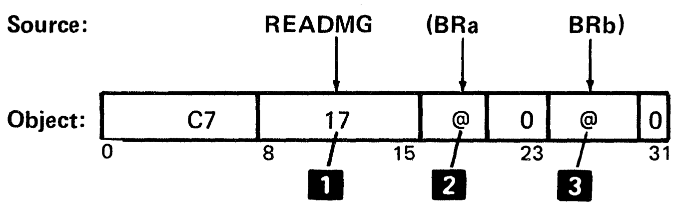
Reset Magnetic Stripe Reader (RSTMG)



1 Keyboard operation number: The number that the main microprocessor stores in the keyboard/display IOB starting at hex displacement 1F.

This instruction resets the magnetic stripe reader to read data from a badge.

Read Magnetic Stripe Reader (READMG)



1 Keyboard operation number: The number that the main microprocessor stores in the keyboard/display IOB starting at hex displacement 1F.

2 Length: The address of the binary register that contains the number, minus 1, of bytes to read.

3 To address: The address of the binary register that contains the main storage address within the partition where data is read into from the magnetic stripe reader buffer.

When a badge is inserted into a magnetic stripe reader, the badge characters are read into a buffer in the reader. External status condition 11 occurs in the partition associated with the reader. After badge data is read into the buffer, no other badge data is accepted until the buffer data is read with the READMG instruction or until the reader is reset with the RSTMG instruction. After the execution of the READMG instruction, the reader is automatically reset to enable the reader to accept another badge.

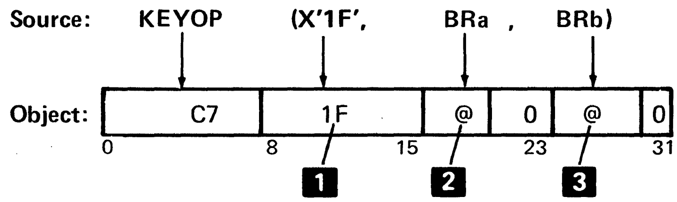
The magnetic stripe data consists of a string of from 3 to 128 characters. The first character must be a start of message (SOM) control character. The next-to-the-last character must be an end-of-message (EOM) control character. The last character must be a longitudinal redundancy check (LRC) control character of even parity for the entire data group. Any character can be placed in the other positions except an EOM character.

The reader control characters and data characters are as follows:

Bits	Meaning if 1
0	Device flag: A magnetic stripe reader is installed on the system.
1	Error flag: One of the following conditions has occurred: • Parity error • LRC error • EOM missing • Improper badge insertion or removal • Speed error • Buffer address overflow
2	LRC control character.
3	Parity bit: Odd parity for bits 4-7.
4-7	Data or control character: If hex 0 through 9, a data character. If hex B, a SOM control character. If hex F, an EOM character.

If any byte has an error, the error flag is set in all bytes.

Device Control Read (KEYOP)



1 Keyboard operation number: The number that the main microprocessor stores in the keyboard/display IOB starting at hex displacement 1F.

2 To address: The address of the binary register that contains the main storage address where external register 5 contents are stored.

3 Command address: The address of the binary register that contains, in the low-order byte, the attachment command.

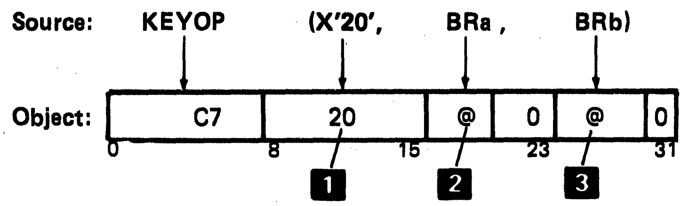
When this instruction is issued, external register 5 is set to 0, the command is loaded into external register 13, and external register 5 contents are sorted at the main storage address specified. (For some EAR commands the IOD contents remain unchanged.) The command must be one of the following:

Hex Value	Command
41, C1, 45, C5	Read keyboard data
51, D1, 55, D5	Read keyboard status
61, E1, 65, E5	Activate keyboard click
43, C3, 47, C7	Activate keyboard buzz
49, C9, 4D, CD	Magnetic strip read data
69, E9, 6D, ED	Magnetic strip error reset
4C, CC	Read extended sense register
4E	Read interval timer
7A	Read mar hi
6A	Read mar lo
CA, EA, DA, FA	Enable translation
4B, 5B, CB	Keyboard/display storage read
FF	Power on reset
4F, CF	Read error sense

This operation should be issued *only* for diagnostic programming in a dedicated mode. Following this operation, the keyboard/display microprocessor ignores all keystrokes, the internal timer, parity errors, and the extended sense register until an ENTR command or keyboard operation other than 1F, 20, 21, or 22 is executed. When a diagnostic operation is issued, there is a change in external status 13 before the operation is executed. The contents of external register 13 depends on the keyboard/operation is executed. The contents of external register 13 depends on the keyboard/display unit associated with the partition that issued the instruction as follows: for unit 1, 40; for unit 2, C0; for unit 3, 44; for unit 4, C4. Register 25 and bit 7 of register 26 should not be altered by the application program.

Notes:
1. The external registers are used by the microprocessors; external registers are not binary or decimal registers located within a main storage partition.
2. The execution of a diagnostic operation will cause a change to external register 13 and bit 7 of external register 26 before the operation is performed.
3. External register 25 should not be altered because it is used to determine which partitions are serviced by the microprocessor.
4. Bit 7 of external register 26 should not be altered because it has status information required by the microprocessor.

Device Control Write (KEYOP)



1 Keyboard operation number: The number that the main microprocessor stores in the keyboard/display IOB starting at hex displacement 1F.

2 From address: The address of the binary register that contains the main storage address of data to write into the external register, XR5.

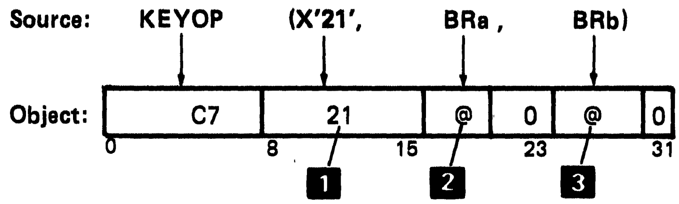
3 Command address: The address of the binary register that contains, in the low-order byte, the attachment command.

When this instruction is executed, external register 5 is loaded with the data at the specified main storage address, external register 13 is loaded with the command. The command must be one of the following:

Hex Value	Command
5A	Load mar hi
4A	Load mar lo
6B, 7B, EB	Keyboard/display storage write
48	Load configuration register
C8	Load sum register
5F	Load diagnostic control register

This operation should be issued *only* for diagnostic programming in a dedicated mode. Following this operation, the keyboard/display microprocessor ignores all keystrokes, the interval timer, parity errors, and the extended sense register until an ENTR command or keyboard operation other than 1F, 20, 21, or 22 is executed. When a diagnostic operation is issued, there is a change in external register 13 before the operation is executed. The contents of external register 13 depends on the keyboard/display unit associated with the partition that issued the instruction, as follows: for unit 1, 40; for unit 2, C0; for unit 3, 44; for unit 4, C4. Register 25 and bit 7 of register 26 should not be altered by the application program. See notes under keyboard operation hex 1F.

Keyboard/Display External Register Read (KEYOP)



1 Keyboard operation number: The number that the main microprocessor stores in the keyboard/display IOB starting at hex displacement 1F.

2 To address: The address of the binary register that contains the main storage address to which the contents of the external register is read.

3 Register address: The address of the binary register that contains, in the low-order byte, the external register to read.

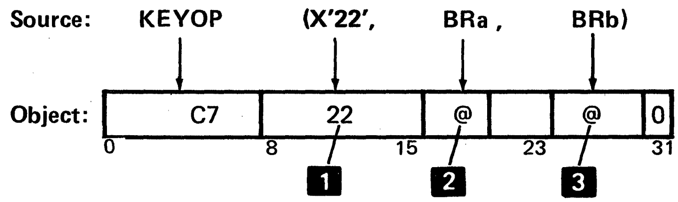
The contents of the low-order byte of the binary register **3** indicates the external register to read into the main storage address, as follows:

00 = External registers 5, 13, 25, and 26
01 = External register 5
02 = External register 13
03 = External register 25
04 = External register 26

This operation should be issued *only* for diagnostic programming in a dedicated mode. Following this operation, the keyboard/display microprocessor ignores all keystrokes, the internal timer, parity errors, and the extended sense register until an ENTR command or keyboard operation other than 1F, 20, or 22 is executed. When a diagnostic operation is issued, there is a change in external status 13 before the operation is executed. The contents of external register 13 depends on the keyboard/display unit associated with the partition that issued the instruction, as follows: for unit 1, 40; for unit 2, C0; for unit 3, 44; for unit 4, C4. Register 25 and bit 7 of register 26 should not be altered by the application program.

See notes under keyboard operation hex 17.

Keyboard/Display External Register Write (KEYOP)



1 Keyboard operation number: The number that the main microprocessor stores in the keyboard/display IOB starting at hex displacement 1F.

2 From address: The address of the binary register that contains the main storage address where the data to write into the external register is contained.

3 Register address: The address of the binary register that contains, in the low-order byte, the external register to write.

The contents of the main storage address are copied into the external register specified by the low-order byte of the binary register, as follows:

01 = External register 5
02 = External register 13
03 = External register 25
04 = External register 26

The operation should be issued *only* for diagnostic programming in a dedicated mode. Following this operation, the keyboard/display microprocessor ignores all keystrokes, the interval timer, parity errors, and the extended sense register until an ENTR command or keyboard operation other than 1F, 20, 21, or 22 is executed. When a diagnostic operation is issued, there is a change in external status 13 before the operation is executed. The contents of external register 13 depends on the keyboard/display unit associated with the partition that issued the instruction, as follows: for unit 1, 40; for unit 2, C0; for unit 3, 44; for unit 4, C4. Register 25 and bit 7 of register 26 should not be altered by the application program.

See the notes under keyboard operation hex 1F.

Keyboard/Display Read Buffer Assist (KEYOP)

Source: KEYOP (X'80', BRa, BRb [(4)])

Output:

C7	80	@	@
0	8	15	23

(bits 0–31; fields 1, 2, 3 correspond to the bytes at 8, 16 and 24)

1 Keyboard operation number: The number that the main microprocessor stores in the keyboard/display IOB starting at hex displacement 1F.

2 Address of the binary register that contains the address of the data stream buffer.

3 Address of a single or double binary register. If a 2-byte single binary register is specified (optional 4 not supplied, meaning the read is for a screen), it contains the information described in bytes 0 and 1. If a 4-byte double binary register is specified (optional 4 is supplied, meaning the read is for a printer), it contains the information described in bytes 0-3.

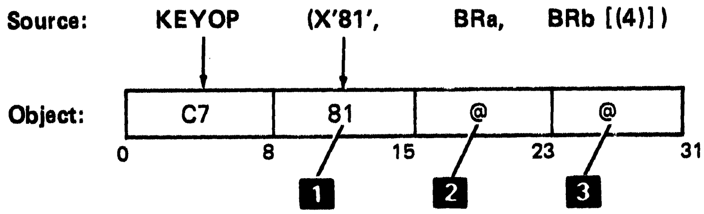
Byte	Bit	Meaning
0	0	Indicator of where to begin read. 0 = Device buffer address 0. 1 = Current buffer address (held in KB/CRT IOB if read is for a screen, or printer control block if read is for printer).
	1-3	Must be 0.
	4-7	
and 1	0-7	Maximum length of data stream.
2-3		Address of a printer control block of 11 bytes in the following format:

Bytes	Contents
1-2	Device buffer address
3-4	Work buffer address
5-6	Current buffer address
7-8	Current cursor position
9	EBCDIC-INTERNAL translation table address
10	Flag/translation table page number
11	INTERNAL-EBCDIC translation table address

The microcode builds an IBM 3270 read buffer data stream using the data contained in the device buffer. The data stream begins with the cursor address.

At the completion of the operation, the microcode stores the length of the data stream in the 1921st and 1922nd bytes of the device buffer. The length includes the cursor address bytes. If the length of the data stream to be built is greater than the maximum length specified, or if the maximum length specified is less than 2, an external status code 17 is posted.

Keyboard/Display Read Modified Assist (KEYOP)



1 Keyboard operation number: The number that the main microprocessor stores in the keyboard/display IOB starting at hex displacement 1F.

2 Address of the binary register that contains the address of the data stream buffer.

3 Address of a single or double binary register. If a 2-byte single binary register is specified (optional 4 not supplied, meaning the read is for a screen), it contains the information described in bytes 0 and 1. If a 4-byte double binary register is specified (optional 4 is supplied, meaning the read is for a printer), it contains the information described in bytes 0-3.

Byte	Bit	Meaning
0	0	Indicator of where to begin read. 0 = Device buffer address 0. 1 = Current buffer address (held in KB/CRT IOB if read is for a screen, or printer control block if read is for a printer).
	1-3	Must be 0.
	4-7	
and		
1	0-7	Maximum length of data stream.
2-3		Address of a printer control block of 11 bytes in the following format:

Bytes	Contents
1-2	Device buffer address
3-4	Work buffer address
5-6	Current buffer address
7-8	Current cursor position
9	EBCDIC-INTERNAL translation table address
10	Flag/translation table page number
11	INTERNAL-EBCDIC translation table address

The microcode builds an IBM 3270 read modified data stream using the data contained in the device buffer. The data stream begins with the cursor address.

At the completion of the operation, the microcode stores the length of the data stream in the 1921st and 1922nd bytes of the device buffer. The length includes the cursor address bytes. If the length of the data stream to be built is greater than the maximum length specified, or if the maximum length specified is less than 2, an external status code 17 is posted.

Keyboard/Display Write Assist For The Display (KEYOP)

Source:	KEYOP	(X'82',	BRa,	BRb (4))
Object:	C7	82	@	@
		1	**2**	**3**

1 Keyboard operation number: The number that the main microprocessor stores in the keyboard/display IOB starting at the hex displacement 1F.

2 Address of the binary register that contains the address of the data stream.

3 A 4-byte double binary register that contains the information described in bytes 0-3.

Byte	Bit	Meaning
0	0	Indicator of where to begin write. 0 = cursor address. 1 = current buffer address.
	1-2	Indicator of work buffer initialization. 00 = no initialization. 01 = initialize to null. 10 = initialize to device buffer contents. 11 = no initialization. If initialize to null is specified, the cursor address and current buffer address are also set to 0 before the write begins.
	3	Indicator for SSCP-SLU 0 = not SSCP-SLU 1 = SSCP-SLU If bit 3 is set, the work buffer is unconditionally initialized to the device buffer.
	4-7	
and		
1	0-7	Length of data stream.
2	0-7	Must be 0.
3	0-3	Must be 0.
	4	Data stream transaction indicator. 0 = Translate data stream. 1 = Do not translate data stream.
	5	Sound alarm indicator. 0 = Do not sound alarm. 1 = Sound alarm.

6	Keyboard restore indicator. 0 = Do not clear input inhibited indicator offer write. 1 = Clear input inhibited indicator after write.
7	Reset MDT indicator. 0 = Do not reset modified data tags. 1 = Reset modified data tags after write. (Bits 4, 5, and 7 are ignored when SSCP-SLU is specified.)

The microcode processes an IBM 3270 write data stream directed to the display. It scans the data stream, modifying the contents of the work buffer as directed by the data stream.

If the data stream should be handled as an SNA SSCP-SLU data stream, only the new line (NL) order is processed. When an NL is encountered, nulls are inserted to fill the remainder of the line and position the current buffer address to the first position of the next line. Null, IFS, and IRS are treated as graphics and displayed as blank, *, and ; respectively. Any other order encountered in the data stream causes a dash to appear at the current position in the buffer. When the write is completed, the cursor is positioned to the next available character location. This location is saved as the initial cursor position and used on a subsequent read operation.

If the data stream is not to be handled as an SNA SSCP-SLU data stream, the following orders within the data stream are processed:

Start field
Set buffer address
Insert cursor
Program tab
Repeat to address
Erase unprotected to address

The microcode also checks for invalid order length, regardless of the setting of the BSC/SNA flag. If an error occurs, external status code 17 is posted with an appropriate error code. The device buffer and the screen are unchanged. If no errors are detected during the write, the contents of the work buffer move to the refresh buffer and to the device buffer; the screen image changes.

While processing the data stream, if the BSC/SNA flag in bit 3 of the byte at address X'F1' in the KB/CRT is set to 1 to indicate SNA, the microcode checks for invalid addresses specified in the following orders:

- Set buffer address.
- Repeat to address.
- Erase unprotected address.

Keyboard/Display Write Assist For The Printer (KEYOP)

Source: KEYOP (X'83', BRa, BRb (4))

Object:

C7	83	@	@
	1	2	3

1 Keyboard operation number: The number that the main microprocessor stores in the keyboard/display IOB starting at hex displacement 1F.

2 Address of the binary register that contains the address of the data stream.

3 A 4-byte binary double register that contains the information described in bytes 0-3.

Byte	Bit	Meaning
0	0	Indicator of where to begin write. 0 = begin at cursor address. 1 = begin at current buffer address.
	1-2	Indicator of work buffer initialization. 00 = no initialization. 01 = initialize to null. 10 = initialize to device buffer contents. 11 = no initialization. If initialize to null is specified, the cursor address and the buffer address are also set to zero before the write begins.
	3	Reset MDT indicator. 0 = Do not reset modified data tags. 1 = Reset modified data tags before write.
	4-7	
and 1	0-7	Length of data stream.
2-3		Address of a printer control block of 11 bytes in the following format:

Bytes	Contents
1-2	Device buffer address
3-4	Work buffer address
5-6	Current buffer address
7-8	Current cursor position
9	EBCDIC-INTERNAL translation table address
10	Flag/translation table page number
11	INTERNAL-EBCDIC translation table address

The microcode processes a 3270 write data stream directed to the printer. It scans the data stream, modifying the contents of the work buffer as directed by the data stream.

The following orders within the data stream are processed:

Start field
Set buffer address
Insert cursor (cursor position is stored into the control block following the write assist if it completes successfully)
Program tab
Repeat to address
Erase unprotected to address

While processing the data stream, if the BSC/SNA flag in bit 3 of the tenth byte of the the printer control block is set to 1 to indicate SNA, the microcode checks for invalid addresses specified in the following orders:

- Set buffer address.

- Repeat to address.

- Erase unprotected address.

The microcode processes an IBM 3270 print image. It copies the device buffer byte for byte into the work buffer, storing a null (X'00') into the work buffer for each attribute encountered in the device buffer. In addition, if an attribute that specifies a nondisplay field is encountered, it stores nulls into the work buffer for each device buffer data byte in the field with the following exception: If the high-order byte of BRb is nonzero and a byte in the nondisplay field is a forms feed character, that forms feed character is not changed. The device buffer is not modified. This enables the printer software to suppress a print line that contains only attributes, nonprint fields, and nulls.

Keyboard/Display Null Non-Print Fields (KEYOP)

Source:	KEYOP	(X'84',	BRa,	BRb)
Object:	C7	84	@	@
	0	8	15	23 … 31
		1	2	3

1 Keyboard operation number: The number that the main microprocessor stores in the keyboard/display IOB starting at hex displacement 1F.

2 Address of a binary register that contains the address of a 3270 printer control block of 11 bytes in the following format:

Bytes	Contents
1-2	Device buffer address
3-4	Work buffer address
5-6	Current buffer address
7-8	Current cursor position
9	EBCDIC-INTERNAL translation table address
10	Flag/translation table page number
11	INTERNAL-EBCDIC translation table address

3 Address of a binary register that contains the following:

Byte	Meaning
0	0 = null all characters in non-display fields. Not 0 = null all characters in non-display fields except forms feed characters.
1	Not used.

The microcode processes an IBM 3270 print image. It copies the device buffer byte for byte into the work buffer, storing a null (X'00') into the work buffer for each attribute encountered in the device buffer. In addition, if an attribute that specifies a nondisplay field is encountered, it stores nulls into the work buffer for each device buffer data byte in the field with the following exception: If the high-order byte of BRb is nonzero and a byte in the nondisplay field is a forms feed character, that forms feed character is not changed. The device buffer is not modified. This enables the printer software to suppress a print line that contains only attributes, nonprint fields, and nulls.

Keyboard/Display Erase All Unprotected Assist (KEYOP)

Source: KEYOP (X'85', BRa)

Object:

0–7	8–15	16–23	24–31
C7	85 (1)	@ (2)	00

1 Keyboard operation number: The number that the main microprocessor stores in the keyboard/display IOB starting at hex displacement 1F.

2 Address of a binary register that contains either:

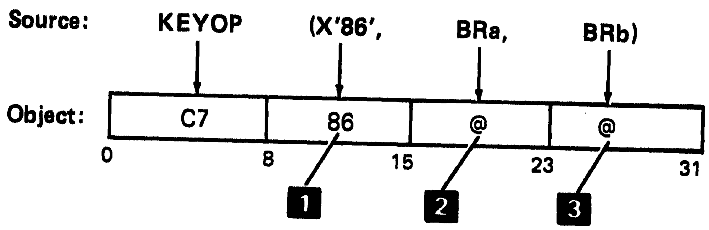
- X'0000' if the operation is directed to a display.
- The address of an IBM 3270 printer control block of 11 bytes in the following format if the operation is directed to a printer.

Bytes	**Contents**
1-2	Device buffer address
3-4	Work buffer address
5-6	Current buffer address
7-8	Current cursor position
9	EBCDIC-INTERNAL translation table address
10	Flag/translation table page number
11	INTERNAL-EBCDIC translation table address

The following functions are performed in the device buffer in the order given:

1. The unprotected device buffer character locations are set to nulls.
2. The MDTs for all unprotected fields are set to 0.
3. If this KEYOP is directed to a screen, the contents of the device buffer are moved into the work buffer and onto the screen. The cursor is repositioned to the first character location in the first unprotected field of the buffer. If no unprotected fields exist, the cursor is positioned to buffer location 0. The input inhibited condition is cleared.
4. If this KEYOP is directed to a printer, the contents of the device buffer are moved into the work buffer. The current cursor position in the control block is set to point to the first character location in the first unprotected field of the buffer. If no unprotected fields exist, the current cursor position is set to point to buffer location 0.

Keyboard/Display Read Buffer Assist For SNA SSCP-SLU Owned Session (KEYOP)



1 Keyboard operation number: The number that the main microprocessor stores in the keyboard/display IOB starting at hex displacement 1F.

2 Address of the binary register that contains the address of the data stream buffer.

3 Address of the binary register that contains the maximum data stream length, in the following format:

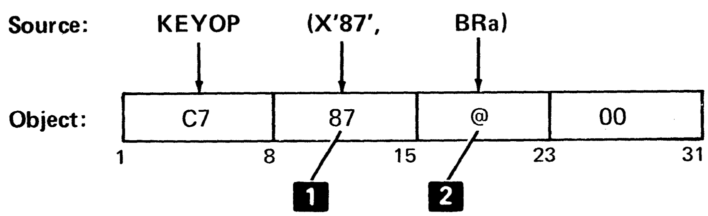
Byte	Bits	Meaning
0	0-3	Must be zero.
	4-7	
and		
1	0-7	Maximum data stream length.

The microcode scans the device buffer beginning at the initial cursor address (saved from the last write assist) for a maximum of 256 bytes or to the end of the buffer, whichever occurs first. It builds an IBM 3270 data stream from the bytes scanned, with nulls suppressed.

If the length of the data stream to be generated is greater than the maximum length specified in BRb or if the maximum length specified is less than 2, external status code 17 is posted.

At successful completion of the operation, the microcode stores the length of the data stream generated in the 1921st and 1922nd bytes of the device buffer.

Keyboard/Display Indicator and Keyboard Control (KEYOP)



1 Keyboard operation number: The number that the main microprocessor stores in the keyboard/display IOB starting at hex displacement 1F.

2 Address of a binary register that contains the information described below:

Byte	Bit	Meaning
0	0-7	Must be 0.
1	0	Must be 0.
	1	Insert mode indicator. 1 = turn off. 0 = no change.
	2-3	Hard lock. 00 = no change. X1 = turn on. 10 = turn off.
	4-5	Input inhibited indicator. 00 = no change. X1 = turn on. 10 = turn off.
	6-7	System available indicator. 00 = no change. X1 = turn on. 10 = turn off.

Note: X denotes either a 1 or a 0.

This operation manipulates the status of the system available indicator, the input inhibited indicator, the insert mode indicator, and the keyboard hard lock. When an indicator is turned on, a solid rectangle appears in the corresponding indicator position on the screen. When an indicator is turned off, a dash appears in the corresponding indicator position on the screen. The indicators are located to the right of the screen on the following rows:

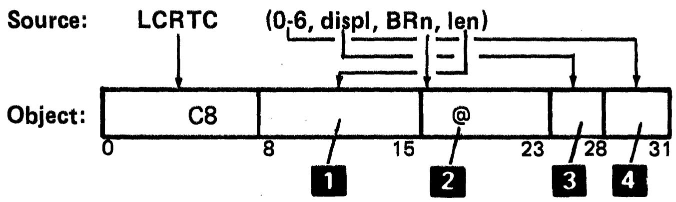
Indicator	Row
System available indicator	10
Insert mode indicator	12
Input inhibited indicator	14

Keyboard/Display Clear and Initialize screen (KEYOP)

Source:	KEYOP	(X'88')		
Object:	C7	88	00	00
	0	8 15	23	31

This operation clears the device buffer to nulls, blanks the screen, positions the cursor cursor to character location 0, sets the current buffer address to character location 0, resets the MDT bits, and sets the initial cursor address (used for SSCP-SLU owned SNA session) to 0.

Load Keyboard/Display Control Area (LCRTC)



1 Length: The number minus 1 (hex 00-FF) of bytes to load into the keyboard/display area from main storage.

2 From address: The address of the binary register that contains the main storage address within the partition where data is moved from.

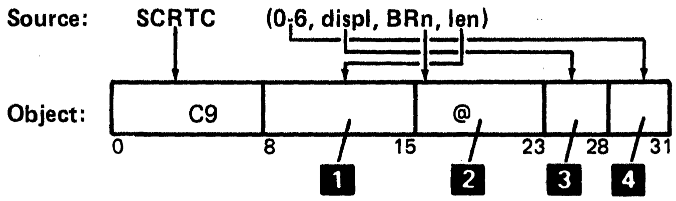
3 Displacement: The number of bytes, divided by 8 (hex 00-1F) into the keyboard/display control area where the loading of bytes begins.

4 Control area: The number (hex 0-6) of the control area to load. Control areas are defined as follows:

0 = Validity table
1 = Display control
2 = Storage area
3 = Scan code translate table
4 = Display translate
5 = Katakana translate
6 = Diacritic translate table

This instruction loads the specified storage area into keyboard/display storage. See Chapter 3 for a description of each area.

Store Keyboard/Display Control Area (SCRTC)



1 Length: The number minus 1 (hex 00-FF) of bytes to load into main storage from the keyboard/display area.

2 To address: The address of the binary register that contains the main storage address where data is stored.

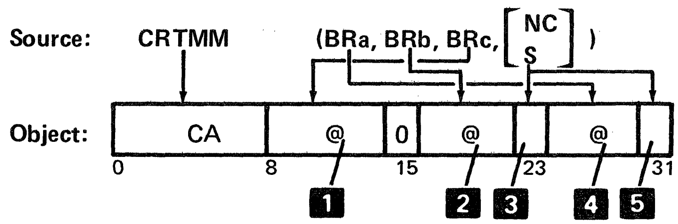
3 Displacement: The number of bytes, divided by 8 (hex 00-1F), into the keyboard/display control area where bytes are moved from.

4 Control area: The number (hex 0-6) of the control area to move bytes from. Control areas are defined as follows:

0 = Validity table
1 = Display control
2 = Storage area
3 = Scan code translate table
4 = Display translate
5 = Katakana translate
6 = Diacritic translate table

This instruction copies the specified storage area from keyboard/display storage to the main storage location specified.

Move Characters to Screen (CRTMM)



1 Length: The address of the binary register that contains the following:

Bit 0: 0 = BRa contains a screen row and column specification, with the row in the high-order byte and the column in the low-order byte.
1 = BRa contains an absolute address in keyboard/display storage. This specification is used for diagnostics.

Bits 1-15: The number minus 1 (hex 0000-7FFF) of bytes to move.

2 From address: The address of the binary register that contains the main storage address where data is moved from.

3 Bit:
0 = S is omitted.
1 = S is specified.

4 To address: The address of the binary register that contains the screen row and column, or the absolute address of keyboard/display storage to which data is moved.

5 Bit:
0 = NC is specified.
1 = NC is omitted.

The bytes are moved from main storage to the specified location. If the location is an absolute address, no checking is done to ensure that it is a valid address. If the location is a row and column, and if the move would extend into the keyboard/display control area (starting at XEA0), or if the column specification is 0, an external status for invalid operation occurs. If the move extends out of the refresh buffer and not into the control area, no external status occurs. No checking is done to assure that the move does not extend into tables stored in the keyboard/display storage, or into the refresh buffer for another screen.

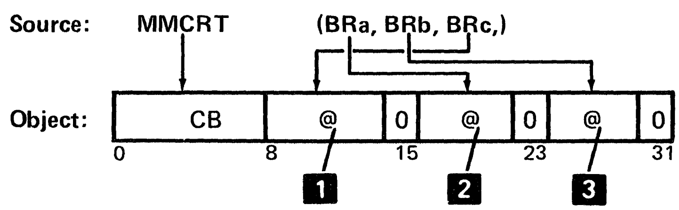
If NC and S are omitted, the bytes are translated through the display translate table before being placed in the refresh buffer. EBCDIC values from hex 20 through hex 2F are translated to display attributes and moved to the refresh buffer; the display attributes effect the display of the screen.

If NC is specified, the bytes are not translated through the display translate table before being placed into the refresh buffer.

If S is specified, the bytes are translated through the display translate table. However, EBCDIC values between hex 20 and 2F are changed to hex 1F and displayed as solid rectangles. The codes in main storage remain unchanged.

If row 0 is specified, the move is to the status line. If row 1 is specified, the move is to the extra line in the screen refresh buffer.

Move Characters from Screen (MMCRT)



1 Length: The address of the binary register that contains the following.

Bit 0:
- 0 = BRb contains a screen row and column specification with the row in the high-order byte and the column in the low-order byte.
- 1 = BRb contains an absolute address in keyboard/display storage. This specification is used for diagnostics.

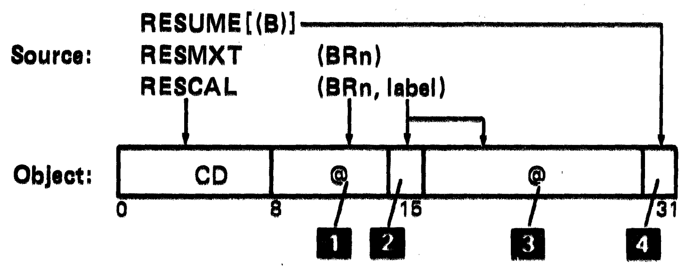
Bits 1-15:
- The number minus 1 (hex 0000-7FFF) of bytes to move.

2 To address: The address of the binary register that contains the main storage address relative to the beginning of the partition to which data is moved.

3 From address: The address of the binary register that contains either the row and column, or the absolute address of keyboard/display storage where data is moved from.

The bytes are moved from keyboard/display storage to the main storage address within the partition. If the from address specifies row 0, the move is from the status line. If it specifies row 1, the move is from the extra line in the screen refresh buffer. If the from address specifies an absolute address that is outside the keyboard/display storage area, an external status for keyboard/display storage parity error occurs. If the column is 0, an external status for invalid operation occurs.

Resume Data Entry (RESUME/RESMXT/RESCAL)



1 Index address for RESMXT: The address of the binary register that contains the index for an indexed return.

Index address for RESCAL: The address of the binary register that contains either of the following:

- The index into the label table for a subroutine call.
- The index for an indexed subroutine call.

If BRn is not specified on either the RESMXT or the RESCAL instruction, the index address is all zeros.

If RESUME is specified, the index address is all zeros.

2 Bit 15:
0 = RESUME is specified.
1 = RESMXT is specified.
OR
0 = RESCAL is specified and the address at **3** is a subroutine address.
1 = RESCAL is specified and the address at **3** is a table address.

3 Table address or subroutine address for RESCAL. If RESUME or RESMXT is specified, this address is all zeros.

4 Bit 31 for RESUME:
0 = The cursor is repositioned forward (B is not specified).
1 = The cursor is repositioned backward (B is specified).

Bit 31 for RESMXT: 0.

Bit 31 for RESCAL: The last bit of either the table address or the subroutine address.

This instruction is included in external status subroutines to unlock the keyboard to allow key entry under the interrupted ENTR command.

For RESUME, the keyboard is unlocked and interrupted ENTR is resumed. If an ENTR is not outstanding or the keyboard is already open the operation is not performed.

If the RESUME is executed after external status condition 04, format processing continues in the forward direction beyond the RG specification. If the RESUME is executed after external status condition 05, format processing continues in the backward direction preceding the RG specification.

The backward option (B) on the RESUME is ignored (a normal RESUME is executed as described above) unless the outstanding ENTR was interrupted by the crossing of an RG specification. If an RG specification was crossed, RESUME (B) causes the outstanding ENTR to be made active again with the cursor positioned in the nearest manual position preceding the RG specification.

Normally, the (B) option should only be used to resume processing of the interrupted ENTR after external status condition 04. The cursor is positioned in the manual position preceding the RG specification regardless of what keystroke caused the crossing of the RG specification.

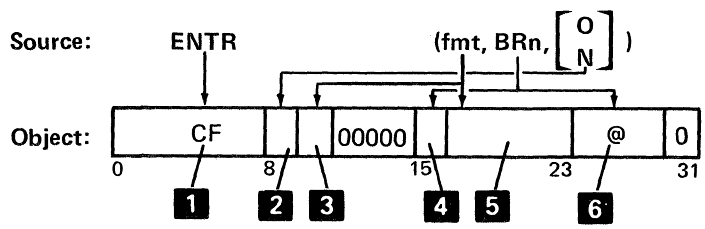
Note that for the (B) option to operate as specified above, there must be at least one manual data position defined preceding the RG specification.

For RESCAL, the keyboard is unlocked and the interrupted ENTR is resumed. At the same time a subroutine is called and executed. If a label is specified with no binary register, the call is made to the label. If a subroutine label is specified with a binary register, the contents of the register are added to the subroutine with a binary register, the contents of the binary register are taken as an index into the label table. The call is made to the address in the label table at the index.

For RESMXT, the keyboard is unlocked and the interrupted ENTR is resumed. In addition, the external status bit in the IOB is turned off. The external status subroutine is terminated, BR18 is decremented by 2, and return is made to the address in the partition subroutine stack pointed to by BR18. If a binary register is included, the contents of the register are added to the address pointed to by BR18, and return is made to the resulting address.

The RESUME, RESCAL, and RESMXT operations are not meaningful for 3270 mode.

Enter (ENTR)



1 Op code: The op code is stored in the command operation code byte of the keyboard/display IOB by the main microprocessor.

2 Bit 8:
- 0 = Overlap mode (O specified)
- 1 = Nonoverlap mode (N specified)

3 Bit 9:
- 0 = The format is contained in the partition.
- 1 = The format is contained in the common area.

4 Bit 15:
- 0 = The current record buffer address and the previous record buffer address are not alternated (BRn is not specified).
- 1 = The current record buffer address and the previous record buffer address are alternated (BRn is specified).

5 Format: The number (hex 00-FF) of the screen format to use.

Note: The source instruction specifies a label that the assembler converts to the number of the index where the format address is located in the screen format system table.

6 Previous record buffer address: The address of the binary register that the system loads with the address of the buffer that contains the previous record.

When the main microprocessor encounters an ENTR command, it places the command op code in the keyboard/display IOB. If the binary register is specified, the main microprocessor exchanges the contents of the current record buffer address and the previous record buffer address in the IOB, and places the address of the buffer that contains the previously entered record in the binary register. The main microprocessor places the screen format number into the keyboard/display IOB at hex displacement 09 and 0A. If overlapped I/O is specified, the main microprocessor continues executing instructions following the ENTR command while the keyboard/display microprocesor processes the screen format control string. If non-overlapped I/O specified, the main microprocessor waits until the keyboard/display microprocessor has finished processing the screen format control string before it executes instructions following the ENTR command.

The keyboard/display microprocessor uses the screen format number in the keyboard/display IOB as an index into the screen format system table. If the system table is within the partition, the address of the system table is found in the keyboard/display IOB. If the system table is in the common area, the address of the system table is found in the system control block. The keyboard/display microprocessor takes the address at the index into the system table and stores it in the keyboard/display IOB at hex displacement 09 and 0A. While the keyboard/display microprocessor is processing the screen format control string, the address of the byte currently being processed is maintained in this IOB location. When the keyboard/display microprocessor finishes the control string or encounters a condition that requires the main microprocessor, it reports an external status condition.

This page intentionally left blank

Diagnostic aids include the display/alter function and the dump and trace functions. In addition, several instructions are intended for diagnostic use. See Chapter 4 under *Device Control (DEVCTL)*, opcode 3D, and under *Keyboard Operations (KEYOP)*, opcode C7 for the following operations:

Keyboard Operation	Description
12	Allocate keyboard/display storage
1F	Device control read
20	Device control write
21	Keyboard/display external register read
22	Keyboard/display external register write

DISPLAY/ALTER FUNCTION

The display/alter function is a diagnostic tool that allows you to examine and alter the contents of main storage or keyboard/display storage, move the contents of main storage to keyboard/display storage and move the contents of keyboard/ display storage to main storage.

You can use only keyboard 0 (the keyboard attached to partition 0) to execute display/alter functions; however, during power-on checkout, you can start display/ alter from any keyboard. If you do start display/alter during power-on checkout, power-on checkout and IPL do not continue when you terminate display/alter.

To use the display/alter functions, the keyboard/display MPU must be operational. While you are using display/alter, no other keyboard/display operations can be performed. *Thus, you will hold up the rest of the system while using display/alter.*

Keyboard/display storage for keyboard 0 must be allocated to addresses FE00 through FFFF. Normally, keyboard/display storage is allocated by the configuration utility.

Other system conditions during display/alter functions are as follows:

- Magnetic stripe reader and elapsed time counter functions are not operational.
- Parity errors in main storage and keyboard/display storage are not detected.
- Status line data is removed from the secondary display of a dual display station.

How to Start the Display/Alter Function

During Power-on Checkout and IPL: Press the L key on any keyboard while the cursor is moving through the power-on checkout display.

After Power-on Checkout and IPL: You must use keyboard 0; press the Cmd key, then the L key (the keyboard buzzes).

After you have started the display/alter function, if you are using a proof keyboard or a dual display, press and hold the shift key and press the C key (the keyboard buzzes). Release the shift key, then enter one of the following:

01—Nonproof keyboard and dual display
10—Proof keyboard and single display
11—Proof keyboard and a dual display

A line of data is displayed on the bottom of the screen as follows:

```
0    3A00    E2E8E2C9 . . .
A     B         C
```

A Main storage page number of data displayed, or an asterisk (*) if keyboard/display storage data pointer is displayed; set to 0 when the display/alter is started.

B Address of the first byte of data displayed. The address is set to 0000 when the display/alter is first started.

C Data: Displayed in eight 4-byte groups.

Pointers Maintained for Display/Alter

Three pointers are maintained for the display/alter function. The pointers indicate: (1) the main storage address (the address of the data being displayed on the screen), (2) the base address, and (3) the keyboard/display storage address.

How to Terminate Display/Alter

To terminate the display/alter function, press and hold the numeric shift key on the data entry/proof keyboard or the upper shift key on the typewriter keyboard and press the E key. Then press the Error Reset key.

How to Select and Use the Display/Alter Functions

When you use the display/alter functions on a typewriter keyboard, use the numeric key pad to enter digits 0 through 9.

To select a function, press and hold the Num (Numeric Shift) key on a data entry/proof keyboard or the ⬆ (Upper shift) key on the left of the typewriter keyboard, then press a key 0 through 9 or A through F to select the desired function. (When you select a function the keyboard buzzes.) Then release the shift key and enter the required parameters for the function (if parameters are required). If you press any key other than 0-9 or A-F, unpredictable results occur.

The following chart shows the options available with the display/alter function. Following the chart is a more complete description of several of the options.

Press this key to select the option.	Parameters	Option Function
0		Display main storage; display is not updated if data changes. See *Display Main Storage.*
2	aabbccdd	Search storage, where aabbccdd is the data to be found. See *Search Storage.*
3	dddd	Display the main storage at a displacement from the base address, where dddd is the displacement. See *Display Main Storage.*
4	aaaa	Display main storage at a specified address, where aaaa is the address. Display is updated as main storage changes. See *Display Main Storage.*
5		Increment main storage address; the address in the main storage address pointer is incremented by 16, and the data at that address is displayed. See *To scan the main storage display* under *Display Main Storage.*
6		Decrement main storage address; the address in the main storage address pointer is decremented by 16, and the data at that address is displayed. See *To scan the main storage display* under *Display Main Storage.*
7	dd...	Alter main storage, where dd is one hexadecimal character to replace the data in main storage. See *Alter Main Storage.*
A	00	Test a byte; the keyboard buzzes when the byte at the current main storage address changes. See *Test for a Change in a Byte or a Bit.*
A	nnxx	Test a bit, where nn and xx are masks to test the byte. See *Test for a Change in a Byte or a Bit.*
B	1p0	Display the beginning of a partition, where p is the partition number. See *Display the Beginning of a Partition or of an IOB.*

Press this key to select the option.	Parameters	Option Function
B	1pd	Display the beginning of an IOB, where p is the partition number and d is the data set number. See *Display the Beginning of a Partition or of an IOB.*
B	0@@	Display the beginning of an IOB chain, where @@ is the low-order hexadecimal address of the IOB pointer. See *Display the Beginning of a Partition or of an IOB.*
C	pd	Accept keystrokes, where p=1 for a proof keyboard and p=0 for a typewriter or data entry keyboard, and d=1 for dual screen and d=0 for a single screen. See *How to Start the Display/Alter Function,* earlier in this section.
D	p	Set page number, where p is the page number to use for the current main storage address. See *To set the page number* under *Display Main Storage.*
E	Reset	Terminate display/alter. See *How to Terminate Display/Alter.*
F	0@@@@	Set keyboard/display address pointer, where @@@@ is the address. See *Move Keyboard/Display Storage.*
F	1	Display keyboard/display address. See *Move Keyboard/Display Storage.*
F	2	Display main storage address. See *Move Keyboard/Display Storage.*
F	3	Move keyboard/display storage to main storage. See *Move Keyboard/Display Storage.*
F	4	Move main storage to keyboard/display storage. See *Move Keyboard/Display Storage.*
F	5	Increment keyboard/display address, move to main storage, and display. See *Move Keyboard/Display Storage.*
F	6	Decrement keyboard/display address, move to main storage, and display. See *Move Keyboard/Display Storage.*

Display Main Storage

The display main storage function allows you to display main storage at a specified address or at a specified displacement from the base address. The base address can be set to the beginning of a partition or to the beginning of an IOB. When the display/alter function is first started, the base address is set to page 0 address 0000.

To display main storage at a specified address on the current 64 K page, press and hold the shift key and press the 4 key. Release the shift key and enter the hexadecimal address of the storage to be displayed. For example:

4 0100

causes 32 bytes of data to be displayed starting at the address 0100 within the current 64 K byte page.

Once the data is displayed, the system can alter the data at that location in main storage. The displayed data is updated to show the change until you press the shift key. If you do not want the display to reflect changes being made to the data, hold the shift key and press 0. Release the shift key when you want the display to stop changing.

To display main storage at a specified displacement from the base address, press and hold the shift key and press the 3 key, then enter the hexadecimal displacement value. For example:

3 0010

displays the data beginning with the base address plus 0010.

The display is updated to show any change in main storage data.

To set the page number of the current main storage address, press and hold the shift key and press the D key. Release the shift key and enter p, where p is the number of the 64 K byte page.

To scan the main storage display, press and hold the shift key and press the 5 key to scan forward or the 6 key to scan backward. Each time the 5 key is pressed the address of the displayed data is incremented 16 bytes. Each time the 6 key is pressed the address of the displayed data is decremented 16 bytes. If you hold down the 5 key or the 6 key, the address of the displayed data is automatically incremented or decremented until you release the key.

Alter Main Storage

The alter storage function allows you to alter main storage beginning at the currently displayed address. The format of the alter storage function is:

7dd

where dd is one hex character that replaces the character in main storage.

For each additional hex character entered, the storage position altered is automatically incremented one position. When 16 bytes have been altered, the displayed address is incremented 16 bytes.

Display the Beginning of a Partition or of an IOB

To display the beginning of a partition:

1. Press and hold the shift key and press the B key. Then release the shift key.

2. Enter:

   1p0

   where p is the number of the partition to be displayed. The beginning of the partition is displayed, and the base address is set to the beginning of the partition.

To display the beginning of a device IOB using an IOB pointer address:

1. Press and hold the shift key and press the B key. Then release the shift key.

2. Enter:

   0 @@

   where @@ is the low-order hexadecimal address of the device IOB pointer that points to the device IOB to be displayed.

The first IOB on the chain is displayed. You can increment through the chain by pressing the 0 key to display the next IOB on the chain.

To display the beginning of a device IOB using a data set number:

1. Press and hold the shift key and press the B key. Then release the shift key.

2. Enter:

   1pd

   where p is the number of the partition that contains the IOB chain to be displayed, and d is the data set number for the IOB to be displayed.

The base address is set to the beginning of the IOB currently displayed.

Move Keyboard/Display Storage

This function allows you to move data from keyboard/display storage to main storage or from main storage to keyboard/display storage. You can also display data moved from keyboard/display storage.

To start this function, press and hold the shift key and press the F key, then release the shift key and enter a number (0-6) to select the desired function as follows:

Number	Function
0@@@@	Set the keyboard/display address pointer, where @@@@ is the hexadecimal address to place in the pointer.
1	Display the current keyboard/display address set by the 0@@@@ function.
2	Display the address in the main storage address pointer.
3	Move 32 bytes of keyboard/display storage data into main storage, using the addresses in the main storage address pointer and the keyboard/display address pointer.
4	Move 32 bytes of main storage data into keyboard/display storage, using the address in the main storage address pointer and the keyboard/display address pointer.
5	Increment the keyboard/display storage address by 16, move 32 bytes of keyboard/display storage data into main storage, and display the 32 bytes of data.
6	Decrement the keyboard/display address by 16, move 32 bytes of keyboard/display storage data into main storage, and display the 32 bytes of data.

Search Storage

The search storage function allows you to search storage for specified data. To start this function, press and hold the shift key and press the 2 key. Then enter the EBCDIC data to be found as follows:

aabbccdd

where aabbccdd is the data to be found.

The search begins with the address displayed and continues until the data is found or until 4 K (hex 1000) bytes of storage have been searched. If the data is found, the address of the first byte of the data is displayed along with 32 bytes of data beginning with the first byte. If the data is not found in the 4 K bytes of storage, the address displayed is incremented by hex 1000.

For example, assume the address displayed is 4000 and the data to be found is D4C8D7C8. If the data is found at address 4C00, the displayed result is:

    0 4C00 D4C8D7C8 XXXXXXXX . . .

If the data is not found, the displayed address is:

    0 5000 XXXXXXXX XXXXXXXX . . .

If you enter hex 00 for dd or for cc and dd, the hex 00 is not included in the search. For example, if you enter D4C80000, a match occurs when the data D4C8 is found.

Test for a Change in a Byte or a Bit

To determine when the value at the displayed address changes, press and hold the shift key and press the A key. Then enter 00. The keyboard buzzes the first time the data changes.

To determine when a bit(s) turns on or off in a byte at a specified address, press and hold the shift key and press the A key. Then enter the following:

    nnxx (nn must not equal 00)

where nn is a byte to be logically ANDed with the byte at the displayed address, and xx is a byte to be logically exclusive ORed with the result of the AND operation. If the result of the operation is zero, the keyboard buzzes. (The byte is not changed in storage.) Thus, you can determine when a certain bit turns on or off. For example, to determine if bit 4 of the byte at the displayed address turns on, you would enter 0808 as shown below:

xxxx 1xxx	This bit is the bit to be tested.
0000 1000	AND the value with this byte.
0000 1000	This is the result of the AND operation if the bit is on.
0000 1000	Exclusive OR the result with this byte.
0000 0000	The keyboard buzzes when the result is zero to indicate that the bit did turn on.

To determine if the same bit goes off, you would enter 0800; that is, exclusive OR the result of the AND operation with 00.

DUMP AND TRACE CONSOLE FUNCTIONS

With the dump console function, you can dump any portion or all of main storage. There are two options with this function: (1) dump storage by page number, beginning address, and number of blocks, and (2) dump an entire partition by partition number.

With the trace console functions, you can trace program execution of specified instructions and display the results, or write the results to a diskette or printer. You can also display or write the contents of storage. You can use trace options to display information on the status line.

To write dump or trace output to a diskette or printer, a program must be loaded that sets up an IOB for data set 15. (When using trace options, data set 15 is not required unless the results are to be written to diskette or printer.) If you are using an assembler program, data set 15 must be set up by a .DATASET control statement. Following is an example of a .DATASET control statement, and .DC control statements required by the .DATASET statement:

```
.DATASET  LABEL=DMPTRIOB DSN=15 DEV=X'8000' PBI=BUF256
          LBUF=BUF128 RECL=128 NAME=DTNAME TYPE=SW,SHRW
          ELAB=ERRRTN;
.DC LABEL=DTNAME    TYPE=STOR   LEN=9   INIT='DUMP0000';
.DC LABEL=BUF256    TYPE=STOR   LEN=256  BDY=128;
.DC LABEL=BUF128    TYPE=STOR   LEN=128;
```

If you are using a DE/RPG program, you can set up data set 15 by modifying X'0100' from X'00' to X'80', using the patch function of SYSPTF (see the IBM 5280 System Control Programming Reference/Operation Manual, GC21-7824.) If you set this bit, you do not have to recompile; however, you must use a larger partition.

If the dump or trace data is to be written to a diskette data set, you must have allocated a data set that is large enough to contain the data to be dumped.

Before you start the dump or trace function, you must open data set 15 (if data set 15 is required for your output). Data set 15 can be opened by calling the CFDUMPTR routine. If you use CFDUMPTR the name of data set 15 must be DUMP0000. The CFDUMPTR routine is called by pressing the Cmd key, then shift, then the Dump Trace Open key when using one of the following programs:

SYSSORT
SYSMERGE
SYSCOPY* (except when using the image copy option)
SYSPRINT
SYSKEU
DE/RPG program that has been modified as described above.

***Note:** Used only when more than 1 drive is available.

When the CFDUMPTR routine is called, the following prompt is displayed:

Dump/Trace file open
Enter device address:______

Enter the device address for the printer or diskette to indicate the destination of the dump or trace output, and press the Enter key. You can now use the dump or trace function, as described below.

The interactive console dump and trace functions normally accessible by the command console key sequence are not accessible in 3270 mode because all keystrokes are handled as 3270 keystrokes. For program debug, trace instructions can be used within the program. Also, a trace to data set 15 could be set up at a point before the emulation application program switches from 5280 mode to 3270 mode.

Note: Before attempting to dump to diskette, be sure to allocate a data set (DSN = 'DUMP0000' in this example). Use the SYSLABEL utility to allocate the DSN.

Dump Function

To dump storage by page number, address, and number of blocks, do the following:

1. Press the Cmd key.
2. Press the C key.
3. Press the D key.
4. Enter the following to specify the main storage data to dump:

   P@@BB

   where:

   P = The page in main storage from which the data is dumped.
   @@ = The first 2 hex digits of the address (hex 00-FF) at which the dump begins (the low-order address is always hex 00).
   BB = The number (hex 00-FF) of 256-byte blocks of data to dump.

To dump the data from an entire partition, do the following:

1. Press the Cmd key.
2. Press the C key.
3. Press the P key.
4. Enter the partition number, 0 through 7.

When dumping to data set 15, data set 15 is not closed when the dump is completed until: (1) the partition is exited, or (2) the partition is reloaded if the partition exit operation calls the standard load processor, or (3) the application program explicitly closes the data set.

Trace Function

The trace function traces the execution of specified instructions and displays and/or writes the trace output after each instruction is executed. The trace output is in the following format:

P @@@@ xx R

where:

P	=	The partition number of the last instruction traced. If the last instruction traced is in the common function area of main storage, an asterisk is displayed in this field.
@@@@	=	The relative address of the last instruction traced.
xx	=	The op code of the last instruction traced.
R	=	The result of the last instruction traced. The length of this field varies from 0 to 16 positions depending upon the type of instruction traced.

For branch instructions, the result field contains the address of the next instruction to execute if the branch is successful.

For table and binary instructions, the result field contains the specified binary result register.

For decimal instructions, the result field contains the specified decimal result register.

For all other instructions, the result field is blank.

To start the trace function, press the Cmd key, then the C key, then enter the following:

Tnss

where:

T = The uppercase letter T to select the trace function.

n = 0-To display trace output on the screen only.
4-To write trace output to data set 15.

s = 01-To trace branching instructions only.
02-To trace decimal arithmetic instructions only.
03-To trace branching instructions and decimal instructions.
04-To trace nonbranching instructions only.
05-To trace all instructions except binary and decimal.
06-To trace nonbranching instructions and decimal instructions.
07-To trace all instructions except binary instructions.
08-To trace binary instructions.
09-To trace branching instructions and binary instructions.
10-To trace decimal and binary instructions.
11-To trace decimal instructions, binary instructions, and branching instructions.
12-To trace binary instructions and nonbranching instructions.
13-To trace all instructions except decimal instructions.
14-To trace binary instructions, decimal instructions, and non-branching instructions.
15-To trace all instructions.

Note: To cancel trace output to data set 15, specify trace output to the display screen only (option T0ss). This puts the trace program in address-stop mode. Then press the uppercase letter C to cancel address-stop mode. This does not close data set 15.

ADDRESS-STOP MODE

Address-stop mode causes the 5280 to stop executing program instructions when it reaches the instruction at a specified address. To start address-stop mode or alter the address-stop, enter the following:

A@@@@

where:

@@@@ = The address of the instruction at which to stop, relative to the start of the the partition.

When the 5280 stops program execution at the selected address, the following functions can be requested.

Main Storage Display

You can request main storage display only after setting single instruction mode by trace (T0ss) or after stopping on address-stop. When you request the main storage display, the contents of 16 bytes of main storage are displayed on the status line. The specified address, relative to the start of the partition, is displayed in positions 41 through 44 of the status line, followed by the byte at the selected address and the following 15 bytes. To select the main storage display, enter:

M@@@@

where:

@@@@ = The address of the first byte to display.

Forward Scroll

You can request the forward scroll function only after the main storage display function. The forward scroll function replaces the 16 bytes being displayed on the status line with the next sequential 16 bytes of main storage. To select forward scroll, enter the uppercase letter F.

Backward Scroll

You can request the backward scroll function after the main storage display function. The backward scroll function replaces the 16 bytes being displayed on the status line with the preceding 16 bytes of main storage. To select backward scroll, enter the uppercase letter B.

Replace Main Storage

During main storage display, you can replace the byte of storage at the address displayed in position 41-44 of the status line.

To replace the byte at the displayed address, enter:

Rdd

where:

dd = Two digits to store in main storage.

After the two digits are stored in the main storage byte, the address is incremented by one and the contents of the next 16 bytes are displayed on the status line.

Single Instruction

When you request the single instruction function, the 5280 executes the next instruction and stops. After the instruction is executed, trace information is displayed on the status line, beginning in position 41. To select the single instruction function, enter the uppercase letter S.

Loop

When you request the loop function, the 5280 executes the program instructions until it again reaches the original address-stop address. It stops at the address-stop address, and trace information is displayed on the status line, beginning in position 41. To select the loop function, enter the uppercase letter L.

Main Storage Dump

You can request a main storage dump function while the 5280 is operating in address-stop mode. The dump function is requested the same as a normal dump (Dp@@BB), that is, the contents of storage are written to data set 15. (See *Dump Function*.) When the dump is completed, you may continue with other address-stop mode functions. Data set 15 is not closed until the partition is exited, or until the partition is reloaded if the exit operation calls the standard load processor, or until the application program explicitly closes the data set.

Trace

You can request a trace while the 5280 is operating under address-stop mode. The trace function is requested the same as a normal trace (T4ss). (See *Trace Function*.) The 5280 executes the remaining program instructions and does not stop, but the trace information continues to be written to data set 15.

Cancel Address-Stop

You can cancel address-stop mode by keying an uppercase letter C. The 5280 will execute the remaining program instructions with no stops and no trace output.

This page intentionally left blank

Keyboard functions may be initiated by function keys or by program instructions. Each function is assigned an EBCDIC value between hex 00 and hex 3F. See Appendix C for a list of these EBCDIC values. When a keyboard function is initiated, the EBCDIC for that function is placed into the keyboard/display IOB, at relative address hex A7.

Certain functions are normally processed by the 5280, but may be processed by an application program subroutine. Other functions are always processed by the 5280, and others are always processed by an external status subroutine for external status condition 1. Many functions that are processed by the 5280 must first be enabled by the application program, which must set flags in the keyboard/display IOB.

Some function keys operate differently during the 3270 mode. See the *IBM 3270 Information Display System Component Description Manual,* GA27-2749.

KEYBOARD FUNCTION CONTROL

The 5280 performs automatic functions and maintains certain function control. The application program must enable the automatic functions by setting flags in the keyboard/display IOB. The keyboard function control flag bytes are maintained by both the 5280 and the application program. The flag bytes are located at relative address hex BE and BF, as follows:

Byte	Bit	Meaning if 1
X'BE'	0	Keyboard is in enter mode.
	1	Keyboard is in update mode.
	2	Keyboard is in rerun mode. (See BF, bit 6.)
	3	Keyboard is in verify mode.
	4	An application program must not change this bit.
	5	An application program must not change this bit.
	6	Keyboard is in display mode.
	7	Fixed prompts are not displayed.
X'BF'	0	*Modified data bit* is set to 0 by the 5280 when the current field is entered, and set to 1 by the 5280 if data is entered into the field. When the field is exited, the 5280 ORs this bit with the modified data indicator that is assigned to the field.
	1	An application program must not change this bit.
	2	An application program must not change this bit.

Byte	Bit	Meaning if 1
	3	*Auto-dup/skip enable* bit must be maintained by the application program. While this bit is 1, the 5280 automatically processes fields defined as auto-skip (AS) or auto-dup (AD). When this bit is 0, these fields are treated as manual fields. When this bit is 1, a field defined as main storage store (MS) is stored; otherwise, it is not stored.
	4	*Auto-enter enable* bit must be maintained by the application program. When the bit is 1, the 5280 automatically performs a record advance when the operator enters the last manual position of a record format. If bit is 0, the 5280 puts the keyboard in the awaiting record advance state after the operator enters the last position of the record.
	5	*Alternate record advance* bit must be maintained by the application program. If this bit is 1, when the operator presses the Rec Adv key the 5280 ignores all remaining fields and format specifications. If this bit equals 0, the 5280 processes the remaining fields and format specifications.
	6	*Rerun/display enable* bit must be maintained by the application program. This bit is 1 and the 5280 is processing in rerun mode, display is enabled.
	7	An application program must not change this bit.

FUNCTIONS NORMALLY HANDLED BY THE 5280

The following function descriptions detail how each function is initiated and how the 5280 processes the function. The function descriptions pertain to all modes of entry unless a mode is specifically mentioned. Most functions are processed differently for verify mode; the descriptions for verify mode follow the general descriptions of each function.

The shift keys on the 5280 Katakana keyboard will operate identically for 3270 emulation. The 3270 Katakana shift key functions (Latin shift, Kana shift, and lock) will not be emulated.

Alpha Shift Function

The alphabetic shift function is initiated when the operator presses the Alpha key. The Alpha key is on the data entry and proof keyboards, and is valid at all times. While the Alpha key is pressed, the lower character on the key top is selected for any data key.

Character Advance Function

The character advance function is initiated when the operator presses the → (Character Advance) key, and is valid only while an ENTR command is being processed.

In enter, update, special verify and field correct modes, when the → (Character Advance) key is pressed the cursor moves to the next position within the current field. If the → (Character Advance) key is pressed when the cursor is in the rightmost position of the field or when awaiting field advance, a field advance is performed. The contents of the positions the cursor moves through remain unchanged. If the character advance key is pressed when the cursor is in the last position of the record, an error occurs unless the auto-enter flag is on. If the auto-enter flag is on a record advance is performed.

In verify mode, the → (Character Advance) key is not valid except when the system is awaiting field exit or record advance, or when the cursor is in a position other than the rightmost position of a right-to-left field. If the system is awaiting field exit, a field advance is performed. If the system is awaiting record advance, an error occurs unless the auto-enter flag is on. If the flag is on, a record advance occurs. If the cursor is in any position other than the rightmost position of a right-to-left field, the → (Character Advance) key is processed as for enter mode except that any character advanced over is blanked on the screen and must be reverified before the field is exited.

Character Backspace Function

The character backspace function is initiated when the operator presses the ← (Character Backspace) key, and is valid only when an ENTR command is being processed.

In enter, update, and special verify modes, when the ← (Character Backspace) key is pressed the cursor normally moves back to the previous position within the field. If the system is awaiting field exit, the cursor remains in the same position but the awaiting field exit condition is cleared. The cursor stops blinking; the operator can enter another character into the position. If the system is awaiting record advance, the condition is cleared and the cursor is positioned to the last manual input position of the record. If the key is pressed when the cursor is in the leftmost position of a field, the cursor moves to the rightmost position of the previous input field. Any automatic fields, display attribute specifications, or prompts that the cursor moves through are processed, and fields with RG (return to program) exits specified cause external status condition 5. If the mode is special verify, the fields are blanked, including the field the cursor was in when the key was pressed.

If the cursor is in the first input position of the record when the ← (Character Backspace) key is pressed, screen format specifications between the first input position and the start of the screen format are processed in the backward direction, and then in the forward direction. No record backspace function occurs.

In field correct mode, if the cursor is in a field position other than the leftmost position when the ← (Character Backspace) key is pressed, the backspace is processed as described for enter mode. If the cursor is in the leftmost position of the field, the backspace is processed as described above and, in addition, the field is blanked on the screen and the mode returns to Verify mode.

In verify mode, for all fields except a right-to-left field, when the ← (Character Backspace) key is pressed the backspace is processed as described above and, in addition, any position the cursor backspaces through is blanked on the screen. If the field is a right-to-left field, the ← (Character Backspace) key is not valid unless the system is awaiting a field exit or record advance; then the field is blanked on the screen, the awaiting field exit or record advance condition is cleared, the cursor remains in the rightmost position of the field, and the entire field must be reverified.

Clear Screen Function

The clear screen function is initiated by the KEYOP instruction (op code C7) for keyboard operation hex 11. This function is always handled by the 5280. The 5280 fills the screen, but not the status line, with blanks.

Clear Status Line Function

The clear status line function is initiated by the KEYOP instruction (op code C7) for keyboard operation hex 11. This function is always handled by the 5280. The 5280 fills the status line except the first position with blanks. The partition number in the first position is not cleared.

If this function is performed when an ENTR command is being processed, the status line counters and the field shift position will not be completely updated until the cursor enters the next field in the screen format.

The Command Key

The command function is initiated when the operator presses the Cmd (Command) key. The Cmd key is a prefix key, valid at all times. When the Cmd key is pressed, the 5280 sets a flag in the keyboard/display IOB. When the next key is pressed, except for the Shift key, Reset key, the Hex key, Console key, or another Cmd key, external status is posted. If the keystroke following the Cmd key is lowercase, external status condition 2 is posted. If the keystroke following the Cmd key is uppercase, external status condition 3 is posted. After the Cmd key has been pressed, the Reset key will clear the fact that the Cmd key has been pressed.

Cursor Movement

Cursor movement is initiated when the operator presses one of the cursor movement keys. Cursor movement keys, which are located on the left of the keyboard, can move the cursor to the right (→), to the left (←), up (↑) or down (↓). Or the Newline key at the right of the keyboard (↵) can move the cursor to the first position of the next line. The cursor movement keys are valid only while an ENTR command is being processed in enter, update, verify, or special verify modes, and the current screen format definition is for a format level zero field. (Field correct mode is not valid for a format level zero field.) If a cursor movement keystroke moves the cursor out of the format level zero field, an error occurs.

In verify mode, the cursor movement keys to move right, down or to the next line are not valid. The keys to move the cursor left and up are valid, and blank the screen positions through which the cursor moves.

Note: The → (Cursor Right) and ← (Cursor Left) keys are normally redefined in the scan code translated table to invoke the character advance and character backspace functions, respectively.

Delete Function

The delete function is initiated when the operator presses the Del (Delete) key. The Del key is valid only when an ENTR command is being processed. The Del key is not valid in a blank check field or in a mandatory fill field if the mandatory fill check is enabled.

In enter, update, special verify, and field correct modes, when the Delete key is pressed the character above the cursor is deleted. All characters within the field to the right of the cursor are shifted one position to the left. A blank is inserted at the end of the field. The cursor position does not change.

If the cursor is within a picture check subfield when the delete key is pressed, the delete function treats the subfield as a field. If the cursor is within a field defined as format level zero, the delete function treats the total number of 1-byte alphameric fields as one field.

In verify mode, the Del key is not valid.

Duplicate Function

The duplicate function is initiated when the operator presses the Dup (Duplicate) key. The Dup key is valid only when an ENTR command is being processed, and when the Dup enable flag is set to zero. The Dup key is never valid if the system is awaiting field exit or record advance. How the Dup key is processed depends upon the current field definition.

In enter, update, special verify, and field correct modes, if the field definition does not specify a main storage duplicate field, data is duplicated into the current field from corresponding field positions in the previous record buffer. The duplication begins at the current cursor position and continues to the end of the field. If the field is a right-to-left field, the duplication begins at the current cursor position and continues to the leftmost position of the field. A field advance function is then performed.

If the field definition specifies a main storage duplicate field, data is duplicated into the field as described above, except that the data is duplicated from the main storage location specified in the format.

If the field definition specifies a format level zero, only the current position is duplicated from the previous record.

No character set checking is performed on data duplicated into the current field.

In verify mode, automatic verification is performed on the data from the current cursor position to the end of the field, or, for a right-to-left field to the leftmost position of the field. If the field is a main storage duplicate field the data in the field in the current record buffer is verified with the corresponding data in the main storage location. If the field is not a main storage duplicate field, the data is verified with the corresponding data in the previous record buffer. If the verification is successful, a field advance function is performed.

If the field definition specifies format level zero, the data at the current field position in the current record buffer is compared with the corresponding position in the previous record buffer.

If the verification is not successful, a verify mismatch error occurs. The cursor stops at the position where the mismatch occurred, the entire field is displayed on the screen. If the operator presses the Reset key, and then presses the Dup key again, the character is replaced with the corresponding character from the previous record buffer or the main storage location. The automatic verification then continues to the end of the field unless the field is a format level zero field.

Field Advance Function

The field advance function is initiated when the operator presses the →| (Field Advance) key and is valid only when an ENTR command is being processed.

In enter and update modes, when the →| (Field Advance) key is pressed the 5280 checks the characters that have been entered into the field to make sure they satisfy the attributes (except character set) that are specified in the screen format definition for the field. If they do not, an error occurs. If they do, the cursor moves to the first position of the next input field; the first position is the leftmost position in a left-to-right field and the rightmost position in a right-to-left field. Intervening automatic fields, prompts, and display attributes are processed. Fields with RG (return to program) exits specified cause external status condition 4. If the Field Advance key is pressed while the system is awaiting field exit, the awaiting field exit condition is cleared and the field advance is performed. If processing is complete on the last input field of the screen format and the auto-enter flag is on, a record advance is performed. Otherwise, the system sets the awaiting record advance condition.

If the →| (Field Advance) key is pressed while the system is awaiting record advance, an error occurs unless the auto-enter flag is on. If the auto-enter flag is on, a record advance is performed.

If the field is a format level zero field, the field advance is processed as a character advance.

In special verify mode the field advance is processed as described above except that the characters in the field are not checked to make sure they satisfy the attributes specified in the screen format.

In field correct mode, the checks are made as in enter mode. If the checks are successful, the field is blanked on the screen, the cursor moves to the first position of the field, and the mode returns to verify mode. The field can then be verified.

In verify mode, the →| (Field Advance) key is valid only after a constant insert verify error or when the system is awaiting field exit or record advance. If awaiting record advance or field exit, the field advance key is processed as for enter mode except that the attribute checks are ignored. If the →| (Field Advance) key is pressed after a constant insert verify error has occurred, after the operator has pressed the Reset key the constant in the current record buffer remains unchanged and a field advance is performed.

Field Backspace Function

The field backspace function is initiated when the operator presses the |← (Field Backspace) key, and is valid only when an ENTR command is being processed.

In enter, update, and special verify modes, if a |← (Field Backspace) key is pressed while the system is awaiting the field exit or record advance, the condition is cleared and the cursor is repositioned to the first position of the field.

If the |← (Field Backspace) key is pressed when the cursor is in any field position other than the first position of the field, the cursor is repositioned to the first position of the field.

If the |← (Field Backspace) key is pressed when the cursor is in the first position of the field, the cursor is repositioned to the first position of the preceding input field. Intervening automatic fields, prompts, and display attributes are ignored. Intervening RG (return to program) exit specifications are posted with the external status condition 5. If the mode is special verify, the data field in which the cursor was positioned when the key was pressed is blanked, and intervening automatic fields are blanked.

If the |← (Field Backspace) key is pressed when the cursor is in the first position of the record, format specifications between the first position and the start of the screen format are processed in the backward direction, then in the forward direction. A record backspace is not performed.

If the field definition specifies format level zero, the field backspace is processed as a ← (Character Backspace) key.

In field correct mode, if the system is awaiting field exit, the |← (Field Backspace) key is processed as described for enter mode.

If the |← (Field Backspace) key is pressed when the cursor is in any position other than the first position, the key is processed as described for enter mode. If the key is pressed when the cursor is in the first position of the field or of the record, the key is processed as described for enter mode except that the entire field is blanked on the screen and the mode returns to verify mode.

In verify mode, if the |← (Field Backspace) key is pressed while the system is awaiting field exit or record advance in a right-to-left field, the condition is cleared, the field is blanked on the screen, the cursor remains in the rightmost position of the field and the entire field must be reverified.

If the I← (Field Backspace) key is pressed under any other condition, the key is processed as described for enter mode except that any data character that is backspaced over is blanked on the screen, and reverification is required in order to advance over the position.

If the field definition specifies a format level zero, the I← (Field Backspace) key is processed as for a ← (Character Backspace) key.

Field Correct Function

The field correct function is initiated when the operator presses the lowercase Field Corr (Field Correct) key, and is valid only in verify mode. It is not valid for a format level zero field.

If the Field Corr key is pressed when the cursor is in an automatic field, verification of the field is not done automatically.

When the Field Corr key is pressed and a constant insert verify error has not occurred, the cursor is repositioned at the first input position of the current field and the field is filled with blanks in the current record buffer and on the screen. The operator can enter data into the field as in enter mode. Auto dup and auto skip functions are not performed. Character set and field edit checks are performed. When the field is exited in the forward direction, the cursor is repositioned to the first position and the mode returns to verify mode.

Following a constant insert verify error, the operator can press the Reset key, then press the Field Corr key. The constant insert data from the main storage location specified in the screen format is placed into the current record buffer. This data overwrites the data in the buffer. A field advance is then performed.

Field Exit Function

The field exit function is initiated when the operator presses the Field Exit or the Field+ key, and is valid only when an ENTR command is being processed.

In enter, update, special verify, and field correct modes, if the key is pressed while the system is awaiting field exit, the awaiting field exit condition is cleared and a field advance is performed. If the field is a singed numeric field, the sign position of the field is set to blank. If the key is pressed while the system is awaiting record advance, an error occurs unless the auto-enter flag is on. If the auto-enter flag is on, a record advance is performed.

- Right-Adjust Field: For a right-adjust field (that is not signed numeric), the right-adjust function is performed before the field advance occurs. The data in the field to the left of the cursor is right-adjusted on the screen and in the current record buffer. The leftmost positions are filled with alphabetic or numeric fill characters, according to the field definition. The zone of the rightmost byte in the buffer is not changed. If the key is pressed when the cursor is in the leftmost position of the field, the entire field is filled with the fill characters.

- Signed Numeric Field: If the field is a signed numeric field, the right-adjust function is performed as described above for a right-adjust field, except that the rightmost position of the field on the screen is blank, which represents a positive sign. The data in the field is right-adjusted to the position to the right of the blank.

- All Other Fields: When a Field Exit key is pressed when the cursor is in any other field, and the system is not awaiting field exit or record advance, it is processed as for the skip function.

  In verify mode, if a Field Exit key is pressed while the system is awaiting record advance, it is processed as described for enter mode. If the system is not awaiting record advance, the verify function is determined by the field definition.

- Right-Adjust Field or Signed Numeric Field: If the field is specified as right-adjust or signed numeric, the key may be pressed only when the cursor is in the leftmost position of the field or when the system is awaiting field exit. When the key is pressed when the cursor is in the leftmost position, the field is verified for the appropriate fill characters. When the key is pressed when the system is awaiting field exit, and if the rightmost character of the field has been completely verified, a field advance is performed. If only the digit portion of the rightmost character has been verified, the zone portion is verified against hex F. If it does not match hex F, a verify sign mismatch error occurs. If the operator presses the Reset key and then presses the Field Exit key again, the zone of the rightmost character is changed to hex F. If the field is signed numeric, the minus sign on the screen is replaced by a blank. If the field is not signed numeric and not numeric shift, the negative numeric graphic in the rightmost position is replaced with the routine numeric graphic. A field advance is then performed.

- All Other Fields

  In all other fields the verify action of the key is as for the Skip key.

Field Exit Minus Function

The field exit minus function is initiated when the operator presses the Field- key, and is valid only when an ENTR command is being processed.

In enter, update, special verify, and field correct modes, if the key is pressed while the system is awaiting record advance an error occurs unless the auto-enter flag is on. If the auto-enter flag is on, a record advance is performed. If the system is not awaiting record advance, the processing of the Field- key depends upon the field definition.

- Digits Only Right-Adjust or Numeric Only Right-Adjust: When the system is not awaiting field exit, the data to the left of the cursor is right-adjusted to the rightmost position of the field on the screen and in the current record buffer. The leftmost positions of the field are filled with the appropriate fill characters. After the right-adjust, if the rightmost character of the data is not a digit (0-9) an error occurs. Otherwise, the negative graphic for the digit is placed into the rightmost field position on the screen, and a hex D is placed into the zone portion of the rightmost byte in the current record buffer. Then a field advance is performed. If the Field- key is pressed when the cursor is in the leftmost position of the field, the function is processed as described above except that the field is filled with the appropriate fill character before the negative graphic and the hex D zone are processed. If the system is awaiting field exit, the function is processed in the same way except that no right-adjust occurs.

- Digits Only or Numeric Only (Not Right-Adjust): For a digits-only or numeric-only field that is not right-adjust, and while not awaiting field exit, the positions to the right of the cursor except for the rightmost position are filled with blanks on the screen and in the current record buffer. The negative zero graphic is placed in the rightmost field position on the screen, a negative zero (hex D0) is placed into the rightmost byte in the buffer, and a field advance is performed. If awaiting field exit, the key is processed in the same way except that an error occurs unless the rightmost data character in the field is a digit (0-9). The zone of the digit is set to hex D in the current record buffer and the negative zero graphic is displayed on the screen.

- Numeric Field: For a numeric field, the Field- key is valid only if the field exit- flag (bit 0 of byte hex 3D into the IOB) is set to 0. If the field exit- flag is zero, the function is processed as for a numeric-only field except that the negative graphic is not displayed on the screen. If the field exit- flag is not zero, the Field- key is not valid in the field; an error occurs if it is pressed while the cursor is within the field.

- Signed Numeric Field: If the system is not awaiting field exit, the data to the left of the cursor is right-adjusted to the next to the rightmost position of the field on the screen and to the rightmost position of the field in the current record buffer. The leftmost positions are filled with the appropriate fill character. After the right-adjust, if the rightmost character is not a digit (0-9) an error is posted. Otherwise, the zone of the rightmost digit is set to hex D in the current record buffer, a minus sign is displayed on the screen in the sign (rightmost) position of the field, and a field advance is performed. If the system is awaiting field exit, the processing is the same except that no right-adjust is performed. If the key is pressed while the cursor is in the leftmost position of the field, the processing is the same except that the field is filled with the appropriate fill character before the sign is processed.

- All Other Fields: The Field- key is not valid for any other field definition for these modes.

In verify mode, if the system is awaiting record advance when the Field- key is pressed, an error occurs unless the auto-enter flag is on. If the auto-enter flag is on, a record advance is performed. If the system is not awaiting record advance, the function is processed depending upon the field definition.

- Signed Numeric, Digits Only Right-Adjust, Numeric Only Right-Adjust: For a signed numeric, digits-only right-adjust, and numeric-only right-adjust field, the Field– key is valid only when the cursor is in the leftmost position of the field or when the system is awaiting field exit.

  Awaiting Field Exit: If the key is pressed when the system is awaiting field exit, the zone portion of the rightmost byte in the current record buffer is verified for a hex D. If the zone is not a hex D, a verify sign mismatch error occurs. If the operator presses the Reset key, and then presses the Field– key again, the zone is changed to hex D in the buffer and a field advance is performed.

  If the field is signed numeric and the rightmost byte is hex D0-D9 the negative graphic for the digit is displayed in the rightmost field position on the screen, or if it is hex DA-DF, a blank is displayed in the rightmost field position on the screen; a field advance is then performed.

  If the field is numeric-only or digits-only and the rightmost byte is hex D0-D9, the negative graphic for the digit is displayed in the rightmost field position on the screen, or if it is hex DA-DF, no change is made on the screen; a field advance is then performed.

  Leftmost Position: If the Field– key is pressed when the cursor is in the leftmost position of the field, all field positions except the rightmost position are verified for the appropriate fill character. The digit portion of the rightmost byte in the buffer is verified for the digit portion of the appropriate fill character. The zone portion is verified for a hex D. If the verification is successful, the rightmost field position on the screen displays as described above. If the zone of the rightmost character is not hex D, an error occurs and the zone may be changed to hex D as described above. If verification other than sign verification fails, an error occurs and the operator must press the Reset key, then reenter the field positions from the error keystroke to the end of the field.

- Digits Only or Numeric Only (Not Right-Adjust): If the field is digits-only or numeric-only but right-adjust is not specified, and if the system is awaiting field exit the Field– key is processed as for a digits-only or numeric-only right-adjust field. If the system is not awaiting field exit when the Field– key is pressed, the positions to the right of the cursor except for the rightmost field position are verified for blanks. If a nonblank character is encountered, the cursor stops at that position, the remainder of the field is displayed, and a verify mismatch error is reported. If the operator presses the Reset key and then presses the Field– key again, a blank replaces the character at that position and the blank verification continues. The rightmost byte of the field in the buffer is verified for a negative zero (hex D0). If it is not a negative zero, the character is displayed on the screen and a verify mismatch error is reported. If the operator presses the Reset key and then presses the Field– key again, a negative zero is placed into the rightmost byte in the buffer and displayed in the rightmost field position on the screen. After the rightmost position is successfully verified, a field advance is performed.

- Numeric Field: For a numeric field, the Field– key is valid only if the field exit minus flag (bit 3 of byte hex 3D into the IOB) is zero. The function is processed as described above for the numeric-only field except that the negative graphic is not displayed.

- The Field- key is not valid for any other field definition.

Field Exit Minus/Dash Function

The field exit minus/dash function is initiated when the operator presses the lowercase dash key on the data entry keyboard.

In all modes, a dash character is selected when Num or Shift is held down while Field Minus/Dash is pressed. A dash is also selected if the field definition is not numeric only, digits only, signed numeric, or numeric shift, even though Num or Shift is not held down.

A field minus function is selected if the field definition is numeric, (and the field minus key enable flag in byte 3D bit 3 of the KB IOB is 0) numeric only, digits only, or signed numeric, and Num or Shift is not held down.

Hex Function

The hex function is valid only when an ENTR command is being processed. It is not valid for a hex field or when the system is awaiting field exit or record advance.

In all modes, the hex function is selected with a command key sequence from the operator or by the application program issuing a keyboard operation (KEYOP) for a keyboard function. When the hex function is selected, the keyboard is placed in hex mode. The next two keystrokes must be 0-9 or A-F, and are combined to make one EBCDIC value. This EBCDIC value is then processed as a data character. It is not necessary to use the shift key to select the hex characters.

If the operator presses the Reset key after the Cmd key and the Hex key have been pressed, or after the first of the two hex character keystrokes has been pressed, no data is processed and hex mode is cleared. If a key other than the 0-9 or A-F key is pressed following the Cmd key and the Hex key, an error occurs. The operator must press the Reset key; hex mode is cleared and no data is processed.

Insert Function

The insert function is initiated when the operator presses the Ins (Insert) key. The Ins key is valid only when an ENTR command is being processed. The Ins key is not valid in a field defined as mandatory fill.

In enter, update, special verify, and field correct modes, when the Ins key is pressed the keyboard is placed in insert mode. The insert mode symbol is displayed in position 14 of the status line. When the operator presses a data key, the data character is inserted into the field in the current cursor position. All field positions to the right of the cursor, and the cursor and character above the cursor, are shifted one position to the right. If the character that would be shifted out of the end of the field is not blank, an error occurs. If the cursor is in the rightmost position of a field when an attempt is made to insert a character, an error occurs. Any attempt to exit a field while in insert mode causes an error. The operator can cancel insert mode by pressing the Reset key.

If the cursor is within a picture check subfield when the Ins key is pressed, the insert function treats the subfield as a field. If the cursor is within a field defined as format level zero, the insert function treats the total number of 1-byte alphameric fields as one field.

If the first of two hex digits has been entered into a position of a hex field when the Ins key is pressed, the keyboard is placed into Insert mode but the one previously entered hex digit is lost.

In Verify mode, the Insert key is not valid.

Katakana Alphameric Lowershift

Alphameric lowershift is initiated when the operator presses the Alphameric lowershift key (ALPH SHIFT) on Katakana keyboards, and is valid at all times. If a key is pressed while the Alphameric lowershift key is held down, the bottom left symbol on the keytop is selected. The Alphameric uppershift key overrides the Alphameric lowershift key.

Katakana Alphameric Uppershift

Alphameric uppershift is initiated when the operator presses the Alphameric uppershift key (NUM SHIFT) on Katakana keyboards, and is valid at all times. If a key is pressed while the Alphameric uppershift key is held down, the top left symbol on the keytop is selected.

Katakana Shift Lock Function

The shift lock function is initiated when the operator presses the Shift lock key (Lock) on Katakana keyboards and is valid at all times. If the Shift lock key is held down while the Alphameric lowershift key is released, the keyboard is locked to the Alphameric shift. If the Shift lock key is held down while the Katakana lowershift key is released, the keyboard is locked to the Katakana shift. The lock status is overridden by the Alphameric uppershift key, the Alphameric lowershift key, the Katakana uppershift key, and the Katakana lowershift key. The lock status is cleared when the Alphameric lowershift key or the Katakana lowershift key is pressed.

Katakana Lowershift

Katakana lowershift is initiated when the operator presses the Katakana lowershift key (Kata shift) on Katakana keyboards, and is valid at all times. If a key is pressed while the Katakana lowershift key is held down, the bottom right symbol on the keytop is selected. The Alphameric uppershift, Alphameric lowershift, and Katakana uppershift key override the Katakana lowershift key.

Katakana Uppershift

Katakana uppershift is initiated when the operator presses the Katakana uppershift key (SYM SHIFT) on Katakana keyboards, and is valid at all times. If a key is pressed while the World Trade uppershift key is held down, the top right symbol on the keytop is selected. The Alphameric uppershift and Alphameric lowershift keys override the Katakana uppershift key.

Record Advance Function

Record advance is initiated when the operator presses the Enter or Rec Adv (Record Advance) key, and is valid only when an ENTR command is being processed.

In enter, update, and special verify modes, unless the alternate record advance is enabled, when the Rec Adv key is pressed the current field and all remaining input fields in the format are processed as though the →I (Field Advance) key were pressed for each field. Edit checks except the character set checks are performed on the input fields. Intervening automatic fields, prompts, display attributes, and RG (return to program) exit specifications are processed. When the last field has been exited, the record advance function is performed. The current ENTR command is made complete, and external status condition 6, for record advance, occurs. The record advance function can be initiated by pressing the Rec Adv key or by pressing a key that causes a field exit to be performed on the last input field of the record format when the auto-enter switch is on.

If the Rec Adv key is pressed when the alternate record advance is enabled, the format specifications from the current point to the end of the format are not performed, but the record advance function is performed.

In field correct mode, the record advance function is processed as a field advance.

In verify mode, if the Rec Adv key is pressed, the remainder of the record format is verified. Input fields are verified as though the Skip key were pressed for the field except when: a verify mismatch error occurs, and the operator presses the Reset key and then presses the Rec Adv key. In this case the nonblank character is replaced with a blank and blank verification continues to the end of the record. Auto-duplicate fields, auto-skip fields, and constant insert fields are verified as described under the duplicate function, skip function, and insert function.

Record Backspace Function

Record backspace is initiated when the operator presses the Home (Record Backspace) key, and is valid only when an ENTR command is being processed. If the Home key is pressed while the system is awaiting field exit or record advance, the condition is cleared before the record backspace function is performed.

In enter and update modes, when the Home key is pressed the cursor is repositioned to the first position of the record. The format specifications between the position of the cursor when the Home key was pressed and the start of the format are processed in the backward direction. RG (return to program) exit specifications cause external status 5. The format specification between the start of the format and the first manual field are processed in the forward direction. RG exit specification cause external status 4.

If the cursor is in the first position of the record when the Home key is pressed, the current ENTR command is made complete and format specifications between the position on the cursor when the Home key was pressed and the start of the format are processed in a backward direction. RG (return to program) exit specifications cause external status condition 5. After return is made from any specified external status 5 subroutine, external status condition 7 occurs.

For special verify mode, the Home key is processed as described above except that the fields on the screen are blanked as they are backspaced through.

For field correct mode, the Home key is processed as described for enter mode, except that all data on the screen is blanked as it is backspaced through, and requires reverification. The mode returns to verify mode.

For verify mode, the Home key is processed as described for the enter mode, except the data on the screen is blanked as it is backspaced through and requires reverification.

Reset Function

The reset function is initiated when the operator presses the Reset key. The Reset key is valid at all times.

In all modes, when the Reset key is pressed following a keystroke error, the blinking stops and the operator may continue keying. The Reset key also cancels hex mode and insert mode, and resets the Cmd key so the following keystroke is not treated as part of a command key sequence.

Shift Function

The shift function is initiated when the operator holds down the uppershift or numeric shift key, and is valid at all times. While the key is held down, the keyboard is in uppershift. Keys that are pressed while the keyboard is in uppershift select the character, symbol, or function on the upper half of the keytop. When the shift key is released, the shift of the keyboard returns to the shift specified in the screen format control string for the current field.

Shift Lock Function

The shift lock function is initiated when the operator presses the ⬇ (Shift Lock) key. The ⬇ (Shift Lock) key is on typewriter keyboards only. It is valid at all times to lock the keyboard into the uppershift. Except for keys that require special shifting, when the keyboard is in uppershift, the uppercase character on the keytop is selected when a data key is pressed. The shift lock is cleared when the ⬆ (Shift) key is pressed.

Skip Function

The skip function is initiated when the operator presses the Skip key. A Skip key is valid only when an ENTR command is being processed.

In enter, update, special verify, and field correct modes, if the Skip key is pressed while the system is awaiting field exit, the field advance function is performed. If the Skip key is pressed while the system is awaiting record advance, an error occurs unless the auto-dup/skip switch is on. If the auto-dup/skip switch is on, a record advance function occurs.

If the system is not awaiting field exit or record advance, the positions from the cursor to the rightmost field position are filled with blanks. If the field is a right-to-left field, the positions from the cursor to the leftmost field position are filled with blanks. Character set checks are not performed for the blanks. A field advance function is performed.

If the field definition specifies format level zero, the Skip key fills the current position with a blank. The cursor then moves to the next position.

In verify mode, if the system is awaiting field exit or record advance, the function is processed as for enter mode. If not awaiting field exit or record advance, the positions from the cursor to the rightmost field position are verified for blanks. In a right-to-left field the positions from the cursor to the leftmost field position are verified for blanks. If a nonblank character is encountered, the cursor stops at that position and the skip action is terminated. The remainder of the field is displayed, and a verify mismatch error is reported. If the operator presses the Reset key and then presses the Skip key again, a blank replaces the character and the blank verification continues. After the last position has been successfully verified, a field advance function is performed.

If the field definition specified format level zero, the Skip key verifies the current position for a blank, and the cursor moves to the next position.

TIMESLICING

In order to maintain an acceptable response time for keystrokes from all keyboards regardless of system load, the KB/CRT microprocessor, when necessary, will temporarily suspend screen format processing in a partition in order to service keystrokes or format work in another partition.

After processing a clear screen, field, prompt, or constant insert specification within the format control string, the microcode checks for the need to timeslice before it continues processing the same format control string.

Timeslicing is done if any one of the following conditions exist:

1. There is a new keystroke for a partition where the keystrokes are to be processed immediately.

2. Another partition is already being timesliced.

3. The interval timer (an optional feature) has overflowed.

4. There is a new keystroke for a partition where the keystrokes are being buffered in the main memory keystroke buffer.

5. There is a buffered keystroke to be processed for a partition where the keystrokes are no longer being buffered.

While a partition is being timesliced, no keystrokes from its keyboard are processed completely. They remain in the hardware keystroke buffer or are moved to the main memory keystroke buffer until the KB/CRT microprocessor completes the sequence of format specifications that require timeslicing. Note that if the user executes an ENTR instruction specifying a format with no manual fields, no keystrokes from that keyboard will be processed completely until the KB/CRT microprocessor completes processing the ENTR by posting external status for record advance.

KEYSTROKE BUFFERING

Keystroke buffering gives the application program the ability to protect the operator from 1110 message codes during interrecord and return-to-program processing by postponing the processing of keys pressed during those time periods. Across record boundaries, the KB/CRT MPU can at a user option buffer keystrokes in a main memory buffer until processing on a new ENTR command begins. During return-to-program processing, the KB/CRT MPU can at a user option buffer keystrokes in a main memory buffer until processing on a RESUME operation begins. While keystrokes are buffered during software processing,t he interval timer is used to time the maximum length of the buffering period. If a new ENTR (during interrecord buffering) or a RESUME (during return-to-program buffering) is not received within two timer overflow counts (between 1.6 and 3.2 seconds), the buffering is automatically terminated. This timed termination eliminates the possibility of a hung keyboard due to the software not returning with a new ENTR or a RESUME.

The following diagram shows when keystroke buffering can occur at interrecord time, the time from when the last key of one record is hit until the cursor is positioned in the first manual field of the next record.

Interrecord Keystroke Buffering

```
<------------------------------------------------------------->
                                      1.6 - 3.2 SEC.
<-------------------------X-----------------------X----------->
X    A    X    B    X    C    X    D    X  E    X    F    X    G    X
A         A         A         A         A       A         A         A
|         |         |         |         |       |         |         |
|         |         |         |         |       |         |         |
Last Key  |         Click     |         |       Main      |         Cursor
of Record |         For       |         |       MPU       |         In First
Hit       |         Key       |         |       Executes  |         Manual
          |                   |         |       ENTR      |         Field
          |                   |         |                 |
     KB MPU Begins       External    Main            KB MPU Begins
     To Process Key      Status      MPU             To Process ENTR
                         Posted to   begins to
                         Main        Process
                         MPU         External
                                     Status
```

Diagram A

During time periods A, B, C, and G the KB/CRT MPU buffers keystrokes because it is processing the format control string. Buffering during these periods is not subject to the maximum buffering time since the KB/CRT MPU is actively working on the screen format and has control. However, during periods D, E, and F the KB/CRT MPU is not actively processing a format and must put a limit of between 1.6 and 3.2 seconds on the buffering period.

The following diagram shows when keystroke buffering can occur during return-to-program time, the time from when the key is pressed that exits to the application program until the cursor is positioned in the next manual field.

Return-to-Program Keystroke Buffering Time

```
<------------------------------------------------------------->
                          1.6 – 3.2 SEC.
<------------ X·------------------------------- X------->
X    A    X    B    X    C    X        D        X    E    X    F    X
A         A         A         A                 A         A         A
|         |         |         |                 |         |         |
Key Hit   |         External  |                 Main      |         Cursor
Which     |         Status    |                 MPU       |         In Manual
Exits     |         Posted to |                 Executes  |         Field
Field     |         Main      |                 ENTR      |
          |         MPU       |                           |
          |                   |                           |
   KB MPU Begins              Main                  KB MPU Begins
   To Process Key             MPU begins            To Process Resume
                              to Process
                              External
                              Status
```

Diagram B

During time periods A, B, and F the KB/CRT MPU always buffers keystrokes because it is processing the format control string. Buffering during these periods is not subject to the maximum buffering time since the KB/CRT MPU is actively working on the screen format and has control. However, during time periods C, D, and E the KB/CRT MPU is not actively processing a format and must put a limit of between 1.6 and 3.2 seconds on the buffering period.

Conditions For Keystroke Buffering

There are a number of conditions which must be met in order for the KB/CRT MPU to do keystroke buffering in a main memory buffer:

1. Buffering of keystrokes in a main memory buffer can occur only if at IPL time the buffer space is allocated. In order to determine if buffer space is allocated, the KB/CRT MPU checks the page and address high of the buffer area specified in the system control area. If both are zero, no buffer is available and no main memory buffering can occur.

2. During the time the KB/CRT MPU is actively processing the format control string (periods A,B, and G in diagram A and periods A, B, C, and F in diagram B) or is processing an IBM 3270 mode keystroke which requires time slicing, the KB/CRT MPU unconditionally buffers keys hit. If a main memory buffer is available as in 1 above, the keys will be transferred from the keyboard hardware buffer into the main memory buffer. If a main memory buffer is not available, the keys will be left in the hardware buffers.

3. At end of record time, the KB/CRT MPU will buffer keystrokes only if ALL of the following conditions are met:

   A. The interval timer is installed and operational at IPL time.

   B. The end of format control string specification in the format specifies that buffering should be done.

   C. The mode is not rerun.

   D. The screen format contains at least one manual field.

   If all the conditions are met and a main memory buffer is available as in 1 above, buffering is done in that buffer. If all the conditions are met and a main memory buffer is not available, buffering is done in the keyboard hardware buffer.

4. At return-to-program time, the KB/CRT MPU will buffer keystrokes only if ALL of the following conditions are met:

   A. The interval timer is installed and operational at IPL time.

   B. The return-to-program keystroke buffering flag in the KB/CRT IOB is set.

   C. The mode is not rerun.;

Keystroke buffering will be terminated for the following reasons:

1. If a new ENTR is executed during interrecord buffering.

2. If a RESUME operation is executed during return-to-program buffering.

3. If the maximum buffering time is reached.

In addition, buffering will be terminated for the following reasons:

1. If a KACCEPT operation is executed.

2. If an ATTACH or DETACH operation is executed.

3. If a keystroke error occurs.

4. If a KERRST operation is executed.

Keystroke Buffer Overrun

If the keystroke buffer is filled and another keystroke is hit while buffering is still enabled, a unique scan code, X'75', (which does not exist on any keyboard) is written into the last position of the buffer overwriting the key scan code of the previous key. When the buffer overrun scan code is processed, a keyboard overrun error —1171— is posted to the operator. The last key scan code byte at offset X'26' of the keyboard/display IOB is set to X'75' to distinguish the buffer overrun from a hardware buffer overrun.

Note that when a buffer overrun occurs, the error is not posted at the time the overrun keystroke is hit. When buffering is terminated, all keystrokes preceding the buffer overrun code in the buffer will be processed first.

Main Memory Buffer Structure

The KB/CRT microprocessor buffer keystrokes from each workstation in a main memory buffer reserved and initialized by SYSCON and IPL'ed at power on. The buffer area is reserved in memory outside the user partitions. Its length varies depending on the number of keyboards attached to the system and the lengths of the individual buffers. A pointer in the system control area gives the 20 bit address of the buffer area.

To find the buffer area in the system control area, the contents at byte 00FB bits 0-3 give the main memory page of the buffer area. Then, the contents at addresses 00E1-00E2 point to the buffer area in the page specified.

The buffer area begins with a series of 2-byte pointers, 1 per keyboard on the system. Each 2-byte pointer is the offset from the start of the buffer area to the first byte of the individual buffer for the respective keyboard. Each individual buffer begins with 3 bytes of control information:

1. A pointer to the first element in the buffer.

2. A pointer to the last element in the buffer.

3. A maximum buffer length.

This page is left intentionally blank

Conversion Table

Byte				Byte				Byte			
0123		4567		0123		4567		0123		4567	
Hex	Dec	Hex	Dec	Hex	Dec	Hex	Dec	Hex	Dec	Hex	Dec
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
1	1 048 576	1	65 536	1	4 096	1	256	1	16	1	1
2	2 097 152	2	131 072	2	8 192	2	512	2	32	2	2
3	3 145 728	3	196 608	3	12 288	3	768	3	48	3	3
4	4 194 304	4	262 144	4	16 384	4	1 024	4	64	4	4
5	5 242 880	5	327 680	5	20 480	5	1 280	5	80	5	5
6	6 291 456	6	393 216	6	24 576	6	1 536	6	96	6	6
7	7 340 032	7	458 752	7	28 672	7	1 792	7	112	7	7
8	8 388 608	8	524 288	8	32 768	8	2 048	8	128	8	8
9	9 437 184	9	589 824	9	36 864	9	2 304	9	144	9	9
A	10 485 760	A	655 360	A	40 960	A	2 560	A	160	A	10
B	11 534 336	B	720 896	B	45 056	B	2 816	B	176	B	11
C	12 582 912	C	786 432	C	49 152	C	3 072	C	192	C	12
D	13 631 488	D	851 968	D	53 248	D	3 328	D	208	D	13
E	14 680 064	E	917 504	E	57 344	E	3 584	E	224	E	14
F	15 728 640	F	983 040	F	61 440	F	3 840	F	240	F	15
6		5		4		3		2		1	

Hexadecimal Addition Table

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F
1	02	03	04	05	06	07	08	09	0A	0B	0C	0D	0E	0F	10
2	03	04	05	06	07	08	09	0A	0B	0C	0D	0E	0F	10	11
3	04	05	06	07	08	09	0A	0B	0C	0D	0E	0F	10	11	12
4	05	06	07	08	09	0A	0B	0C	0D	0E	0F	10	11	12	13
5	06	07	08	09	0A	0B	0C	0D	0E	0F	10	11	12	13	14
6	07	08	09	0A	0B	0C	0D	0E	0F	10	11	12	13	14	15
7	08	09	0A	0B	0C	0D	0E	0F	10	11	12	13	14	15	16
8	09	0A	0B	0C	0D	0E	0F	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17
9	0A	0B	0C	0D	0E	0F	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18
A	0B	0C	0D	0E	0F	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19
B	0C	0D	0E	0F	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	1A
C	0D	0E	0F	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	1A	1B
D	0E	0F	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	1A	1B	1C
E	0F	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	1A	1B	1C	1D
F	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	1A	1B	1C	1D	1E

EBCDIC CHARTS FOR PRINTABLE CHARACTERS

Second Hex Digit ↓ / First Hex Digit →	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F
0						&	-						{	}	\	0
1							/		a	j	~		A	J		1
2									b	k	s		B	K	S	2
3									c	l	t		C	L	T	3
4									d	m	u		D	M	U	4
5									e	n	v		E	N	V	5
6									f	o	w		F	O	W	6
7									g	p	x		G	P	X	7
8									h	q	y		H	Q	Y	8
9								`	i	r	z		I	R	Z	9
A					¢	!	¦	:								
B					.	$	,	#								
C					<	*	%	@								
D					(	)	_	'								
E					+	;	>	=								
F					|	¬	?	"								

IBM 5256 STANDARD CHARACTER SET

LANGUAGE: US AND CANADA

Second Hex Digit ↓ / First Hex Digit →	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F
0						&	-	ø	Ø	°	µ	¢	{	}	\	0
1						é	/	É	a	j	¯	£	A	J		1
2					â	ê	Â	Ê	b	k	s	¥	B	K	S	2
3					ä	ë	Ä	Ë	c	l	t	₧	C	L	T	3
4					à	è	À	È	d	m	u	ƒ	D	M	U	4
5					á	í	Á	Í	e	n	v	§	E	N	V	5
6					ã	î	Ã	Î	f	o	w	¶	F	O	W	6
7					å	ï	Å	Ï	g	p	x		G	P	X	7
8					ç	ì	Ç	Ì	h	q	y		H	Q	Y	8
9					ñ	ß	Ñ	`	i	r	z		I	R	Z	9
A					[	]	¦	:	«	ª	¡	¬	-	≥	²	³
B					.	$	,	#	»	º	¿	|	ô	û	Ô	Û
C					<	*	%	@	ð	æ	Ð	≠	ö	ü	Ö	Ü
D					(	)	_	'	≤	¸	↑	¨	ò	ù	Ò	Ù
E					+	;	>	=	þ	Æ	Þ	´	ó	ú	Ó	Ú
F					!	^	?	"	±	¤		×	õ	ÿ	Õ	

IBM 5256 STANDARD CHARACTER SET

LANGUAGE: INTERNATIONAL

This page intentionally left blank

Printer formatting can be accomplished via an assembler, COBOL or DE/RPG program or via communiactions. To use the SCS characters supported by communications, see the description under the desired communications access method: SNA, BSC, or MRJE. To use program to format your printed output, code the following SCS characters that your printer supports. Code the control characters in the printer output data stream intended for the printer. The format of the data stream is:

CC Data CC Data CC Data

where CC is the control characters.

The following table describes the general functions provided by the printer control characters. A detailed description of each control character follows the table.

SCS Control Character	Hex Code	Function	Valid with			
			5222	5224	5225	5256
BEL	2F	Alarm; sound alarm on printer	√	√	√	√
CR	0D	Carrier return	√	√	√	√
FF	0C	Forms feed	√	√	√	√
Fmt	2B . . .	Format				
	2BC1nnhh	Horizontal (SHF)	√	√	√	√
	2BC2nnvv	Vertical (SVF)	√	√	√	√
	2BC6nnld	Line density (SLD)	√	√	√	
	2BC8nngguu	Graphic error (SGEA)	√	√	√	√
	2BD10381P1	Set CGCS (SCL)		√	√	
	2BD2042900VV	Char distance (SCD)	√	√	√	
	2BFEnnmmP1Pn	Alt char (LAC)		√	√	
IRS	1E	Interchange record separator	√	√	√	√
LF	25	Line feed	√	√	√	√
NL	15	New line	√	√	√	√
NUL	00	No operation	√	√	√	√
PP	34 . . .	Print position	√	√	√	√
	34C0nn	Horizontal absolute	√	√	√	√
	34C8nn	Horizontal relative	√	√	√	√
	34C4nn	Vertical absolute	√	√	√	√
	344Cnn	Vertical relative	√	√	√	√
TRN	35nn	Transparent		√	√	

- *BEL*

Function: This control character stops printing, sounds the audible alarm, if installed, and turns on the Attention indicator.

Code: X'2F'

Results: When the printer detects this control character, it:

1. Allows all preceding data to be printed and all preceding control characters to be executed

2. Turn the Ready indicator off

3. Turns the Attention indicator on

4. Sounds the audible alarm, if installed

5. Stops printing

6. Stops formatting

7. Returns an unavailable status to the controller

- *CR (Carrier Return)*

Function: This control character performs a carrier return to the first print position on the same line.

Code: X'0D'

Results: The horizontal print position logically moves to the first print position on the same line. If it already is at the first print position, no operation occurs. No physical motion will occur as a result of this control character.

- *FF (Forms Feed)*

Function: This control character moves the paper to the next logical page as specified by the Set Vertical Format control character (see *Fmt*) in this topic.

Default: 1 logical page = 1 logical line.

Code: X'0C'

Results: The print position moves to the first logical print line and first logical print position of the next logical page. Physical motion of the paper will occur as a result of this control character.

- *Fmt (Format)*

Function: This control character defines forms movement, line length, and other printer functions as per the following description:

Code: X'2B'

Format:

Code	Function Parameter	Length	Associated Parameters
2B	(HEX)	(HEX)	(HEX)

Note: The following table shows the various function types and their associated parameters. The nn is the number of bytes to follow the function type and includes the count frame in its value.

Function Types Available for Use with the Format (Fmt) Printer Control Character

Function Type	Format	Values of Parameters	Description
SHF (set horizontal format)	C1nnhh	nn = number of bytes in the SHF string.	Valid extries are 01 and 02.
		hh = maximum horizontal print position (greater than or equal to 1 and less than or equal to 198). The default is 132 (X'84') 10 cpi or 198 (X'C6') 15 cpi.	Sets the maximum print position (MPP), which is the value of the print line length. MPP is 132 for 10 cpi and 198 for 15 cpi.
SVF (set vertical format)	C2nnvv	nn = number of bytes in the SVF string.	Valid entries are 01 and s 02.
		vv = maximum number of lines on a page greater than or equal to 1 and less than or equal to 255). The default is a page length of one line.	Sets the maximum print line (MPL) on the logical page.
SLD (set line density)	C6nnld	nn = number of bytes in the SLD string. Valid entries are 01 and 02.	Allows selection of vertical line density of either 6, 8, or 9 lines per inch. Default is 6 lpi.
		ld = density parameters. Line density is defined in increments of .353 mm (1/72 inch). Normal values are: 0C = 6 lpi (12/72 inch). 09 = 8 lpi (9/72 inch). 08 = 9 lpi (8/72 inch).	

SGEA (set graphic error action)	C8nngguu	nn = number of bytes in the SGEA string.	nn must be at least 1 and not greater than 3 for SGEA.
		gg = substitute character option. Default is a hyphen (X'60').	This substitute character will be printed in place of any unprintable characters in the data stream.
		uu = Error and status options when an unprintable character is encountered. 01=No stop, no status. 02=Defaults to 01. 03=Stop, hard error status. 04=Defaults to 03. The default for uu is 01.	
SCL (set CGCS through local ID)	D1nn81P1	nn = number of bytes in the SLC string. Must be 03.	
		81 = type.	
		P1 = local ID of character set to be loaded.	Load a predetermined graphic character set to be used for the next print job. Default is FF.
SCD (set character distance)	D2nn29 oovv	nn = number of bytes in the SCD string. Must be 04.	
		29 = type.	
		oovv = character per inch. Valid vv values are: 0A = 10 cpi 0F = 15 cpi.	Allows selection of character density of either 10 or 15 characters per inch.
LAC (load alternate characters)	FEnn01 P1-Pn	nn = number of bytes in to be loaded.	nn = (N x 10) + 2 where N is the number of alternate characters being loaded. Maximum valve of nn = 252 for each command.
		P1-Pn define the character images.	Allows customer designed fonts or characters to be loaded from host for subsequent printing. Each character image requires 10 bytes.

For load alternate character, see the reference manual for the particular printer you are using.

The following table shows the characteristics of the SHF and SVF function types.

Valid Values for the SHF and SVF Set Types

Set Type Code	Parameters	Results (MPL and MPP)	Error
SHF 2BC1nnhh	nn=00		Invalid SCS parameter
	nn=01	MPP=132 for 10 cpi MPP=198 for 15 cpi	None
	nn=02 hh=00	MPP=132 for 10 cpi MPP=198 for 15 cpi	None
	nn=02 hh=01-C6	MPP=hh Maximum line length for 15 cpi is 198 characters; for 10 cpi it is 132 characters.	None
	nn=02 hh=C7-FF		Invalid SCS parameter
	nn=03-FF		Invalid SCS parameter
SVF 2BC2nnvv	nn=00		Invalid SCS parameter
	nn=01	MPL=1	None
	nn=02 vv=00	MPL=1	None
	nn=02 vv=01-FF	MPL=1-255 as specified	None
	nn=03-FF		Invalid SCS parameter

- *IRS (Interchange Record Separator)*

Function: This control character does the same thing that NL does.

Code: X'1E'

Results: Move the print position to the first print position of the next line. If the current position is on the last line of the page, the new position is the first print position of the first line of the next page.

- *LF (Line Feed)*

Function: This control character moves the paper one line without altering the print position.

Code: X'25'

Results: Moves the paper logically to the same print position on the following line. If you use this control character on the last line of a page, it will move the print position to the first line of the next page.

- *NL (New Line)*

Function: This control character moves the paper to the next line.

Code: X'15'

Results: The print position moves to the first print position on the next line if it is not coded on the last line of the page. If you code this on the last line, it moves the paper to the first print position on the first line of the next page.

- *NUL*

Function: No-op

Code: X'00'

Results: No characters are printed and no functions are performed.

- *PP (Print Position)*

Function: This control character moves the logical print position as determined by the associated parameters.

Code: X'34'

Format:	**Function Parameter** (HEX)	**Value Parameter** (HEX)

Note: The following table shows the various function types and their associated parameters. nn is the value parameter for the function type that precedes it.

Function Type	**Format**	**Values of Parameters**	**Description**
AH (absolute horizontal move)	C0nn	nn = 00 - No operation. PP is unchanged; no error. 01 < nn < MPP - The print position becomes the value of nn. nn > MPP - Error; invalid SCS parameter.	Hex value of the horizontal position (current print position, PP, less than or equal to the end of the line, MPP).
AV (absolute vertical move)	C4nn	nn = 00 - No operation. PL is unchanged; no error. PL < nn < MPL - The PL becomes the value of nn and remains on the logical page. 01 < nn < PL - The PL becomes the value of nn and remains on the logical page. nn > MPL - Error; invalid SCS parameter.	Hex value of the vertical position (current print line, PL, less than or equal to the end of the page, MPL).

RH (relative horizontal move)	C8nn	nn = 00 - No operation. PP is unchanged; no error. $PP + nn < MPP$ - The print position becomes the value of PP + nn. $PP + nn > MPP$ or $nn > PP$ - Error; invalid SCS parameters.	Hex value of the movement from present horizontal position (current print position, PP, less than or equal,to the end of the line, MPP).
RV (relative vertical move)	4Cnn	nn = 00 - No operation; PL is unchanged; no error. $PL+nn < MPL$ - The PL becomes the value of PL+nn. $PL+nn > MPL$ or $nn > MPL$ - error; invalid SCS parameters.	Hex value of the movement from present vertical position (current print line, PL, less than or equal to the end of the page, MPL).

Appendix C. Keyboard Functions: EBCDIC Codes and Bit Numbers

IBM 5280 Mode Keyboard Functions

The EBCDIC is the code the microprocessor uses to define the key. The bit number is the number used for the TRAP parameter of the .KBCRT control statement.

EBCDIC	Bit Number	Key	Description
X'00'	–	–	Invalid scan code generated from translate table or hardware. An error code is presented to the operator.
X'01'	0	Cmd	Command key prefix to select command function.
X'02'	1	Cmd	Shifted command key.
X'03'	2	–	Keyboard overrun; keyboard has lost two keystrokes due to hardware keystroke buffer overrun.
X'04'	3	–	Invalid keystroke; the code is generated directly from the scan code translate table or the World Trade translate table.
X'05'	4	Reset	Reset function; reset error condition, or reset Hex key command, or insert function.
X'06'	5	Ins	Insert function; initiate character insert.
X'07'	6	Del	Delete function; initiate character delete.
X'08'	7	Alpha	Alpha shift, with the Alpha key pressed.
X'09'	8	⬆ or Num	Numeric shift, with the ⬆ (Shift) key or Num key pressed.
X'0A'	9	⬇	Shift lock, with the ⬇ (Shift Lock) key pressed.
X'0B'	10	Num Shift	Katakana numeric shift, with the Num Shift key pressed.
X'0C'	11	Alpha Shift	Katakana alphabetic shift, with the Alpha Shift key pressed.

EBCDIC	Bit Number	Key	Description
X'0D'	12	Kata Shift	Katakana shift, with the Kata Shift key pressed.
X'0E'	13	Sym Shift	Katakana uppershift; with Sym. Shift key pressed.
X'0F'	14	Lock	Katakana shift lock; with the Lock key pressed.
X'10'			Cursor right (not used for normal IPL).
X'11'			Cursor left (not used for normal IPL).
X'12'	17	↑	Move cursor up; valid only for format level zero.
X'13'	18	↓	Move cursor down; valid only for format level zero.
X'14'	19	↵	New line; moves cursor to the first position on the next line; valid only for format level zero.
X'15'	20	Field Exit, Field+	Field exit function.
X'16'	21	Field–	Field exit minus function.
X'17'	22	Skip	Skip function.
X'18'	23	Alpha	Alpha shift, with the Alpha key released.
X'19'	24	⬆ or Num	Numeric shift, with the ⬆ (Shift) key or Num key released.
X'1A'	25	⬇	Shift lock, with the ⬇ (Shift Lock) key released.
X'1B'	26	Num Shift	Katakana numeric shift, with the Num Shift key released.
X'1C'	27	Alpha Shift	Katakana alphabetic shift, with the Alpha Shift key released.
X'1D'	28	Kata Shift	Katakana shift, with the Kata Shift key released.
X'1E'	29	Sym Shift	Katakana uppershift, with the Sym Shift key released.

EBCDIC	Bit Number	Key	Description
X'1F'	30	Lock	Katakana shift lock; with the Lock key released.
X'20'	31	Dup	Duplicate function.
X'21'	32	→|	Field advance function.
X'22'	33	|←	Field backspace function.
X'23'	34	Unshifted Corr	Field correct function.
X'24'	35	Enter/ Rec Adv	Record advance function.
X'25'	36	Home	Record backspace function.
X'26'	37	→	Character advance function.
X'27'	38	⟵	Character backspace function.
X'28'	39	Hex key	Hex command function key.
–	40		Keystroke error, detected and normally handled by the keyboard/display.
X'29'	–	No key is associ- ated with this function.	Clear screen function; blanks all positions on the screen except the status line.
X'2A'	–	No key is associ- ated with this function.	Clear status line function; blanks all posi- tions on the status line.
X'2B'	–	No key is associ- ated with this function.	Keystroke with this EBCDIC is ignored.
X'2C'	43	=̲	Field-/dash combination key.

Note: Even if the user specifies in the keyboard bit map that the shifted or un- shifted CMD key be processed by software, the microcode will continue to track and post CMD key sequences to the software through external status code 2 or 3.

Functions from 2D-3F are handled by your program, with external status condition 1 subroutines.

EBCDIC	Bit Number	Key	Description
X'2D-32'			Not assigned; you may assign these codes to special functions for your applications.
X'33'		Sel Fmt	Select format function.
X'34'		Dup Skip	Switches the auto dup/skip flag.
X'35'		Auto Enter	Switches the auto enter flag.
X'36'		Cncl	Cancel function; defined and processed by your program.
X'37'		Page Fwd	Page forward function; to read the next record without writing out the current record, processed by your program.
X'38'		Next Fmt	Next format function; to allow the operator to exit a repetitive format, processed by your program.
X'39'		Prnt	Print function; to initiate output from the printer.
X'3A'			Not used.
X'3B'		Erase Inpt	Erase input function.
X'3C'		Corr	Record correct function; initiated by the shifted Corr key.
X'3D'		Sys Req	System request function.
X'3E'		Attn	Attention function.
X'3F'		Help	Help function; to request a help message.

IBM 3270 Mode Keyboard Functions

The internal code is the code the microprocessor uses to define the key during the IBM 3270 mode.

Internal Code	Function	General Description
00	Invalid scan code	Scan code improperly generated by hardware or problem in scan code translate table or world trade translate table. This internal code causes the invalid scan code to be logged to the hard error log and input inhibited to be set.
80	Ignore keystroke	Keystroke with this code is ignored.
81	Command	Command key prefix to select function.
82	Erase EOF	Clears the cursor position and all positions to the right in the current field to nulls.
83	Keyboard overrun	Keyboard has lost 2 keystrokes due to hardware keystroke buffer overrun.
84	Error keystroke	Invalid keystroke due to undefined key position.
85	Erase input	Clears all unprotected character locations to nulls, resets mdt's, repositions cursor.
86	Field Mark	Causes field mark character code to be inserted into the current field.
87	NUM lock key	Fixes or releases the upshift character selection on the data entry keyboard.

Internal Code	Function	General Description
88/98	Shift key make/ break numeric key make/ break	Shifts to upper half of scan code translate table, selecting characters on upper half of key.
89/99	Alpha shift key make/ break	Shifts to lower half of scan code tranlsate table, selecting character on lower half of key.
8A/9A	Lock make/ break	Fixes the upshift character selection.
8B/9B	Alpha/numeric lower shift key make/break	On Katakana keyboard, shifts to lower half of scan code translate table, selecting character on lower left half of key.
8C/9C	Alpha/numeric upper shift key make/ break	On Katakana keyboard, shifts to upper half of scan code translate table, selecting character on upper left half of key.
8D/9D	Katakana lower shift make/ break	On Katakana keyboard, shifts to lower half of world trade translate table, selecting character on lower right half of key.
8E/9E	Katakana upper shift make/break	On Katakana keyboard, shift to upper half of world trade translate table, selecting character on upper right half of key.
8F/9F	Katakana shift lock make/break	Locks Katakana keyboard to Katakana lower or alpha/numeric lower shift.

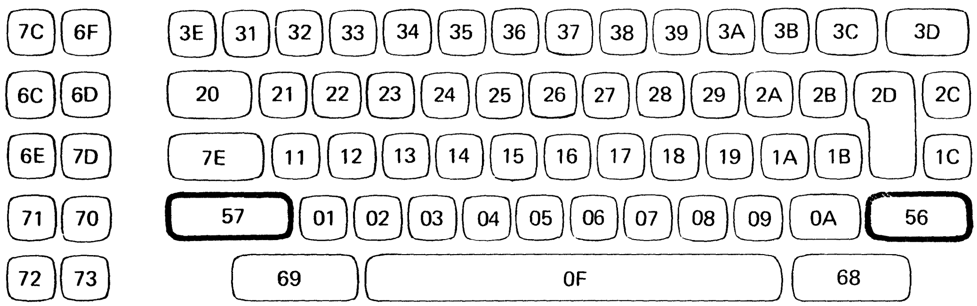
Internal Code	Function	General Description
90	Cursor up	Moves cursor up 1 line.
91	Cursor down	Moves cursor down 1 line.
92	Cursor right	Moves cursor one position to the right.
93	Cursor left	Moves cursor one position to the left.
94	New line	Moves cursor to the first unprotected character location of the next line.
95	DUP	Causes DUP character code to be inserted into the current field with tab to next field.
96	Insert mode	Puts keyboard into insert mode. Subsequent data keystrokes are inserted at the cursor position. Characters above and to the right of the cursor are shifted to the right.
97	Delete	Deletes the character at the cursor position. Characters to the right in the same field within the same row are shifted one position to the left.
A0	Tab key skip key	Moves cursor to first character location of next unprotected data field.
A1	Backtab	Backspaces cursor to first character location of current field or previous unprotected field.

All other function keys are processed by the application programs. See the IBM 3270 Information Display System Component Description Manual, GA27-2749, for a detailed description of the function keys.

This page intentionally left blank

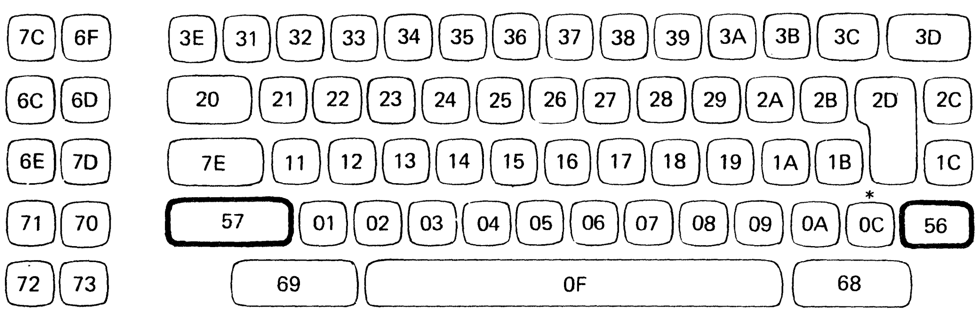
The keyboard scan codes for the different keyboards are shown on the individual keytops. The make/break keys generate a scan code of X'5n' when they are pressed, as illustrated in the following illustrations. The make/break keys generate a scan code of X'Dn' when they are released. For example, the shift key shown in the first illustration generates a scan code of X'57' when it is pressed and generates a scan code of X'D7' when it is released.

The 66-Key Data Entry Keyboard and Data Entry with Proof Keyboard



— A make/break key

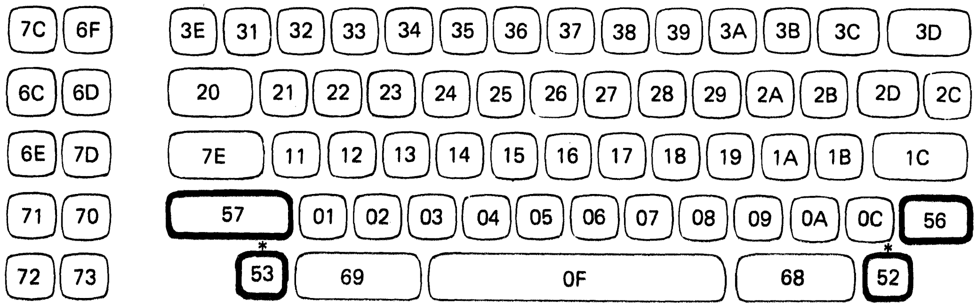
The 67-Key Data Entry Keyboard and Data Entry with Proof Keyboard (Not used in the US)



* — Not present on the 66-key keyboard

— A make/break key

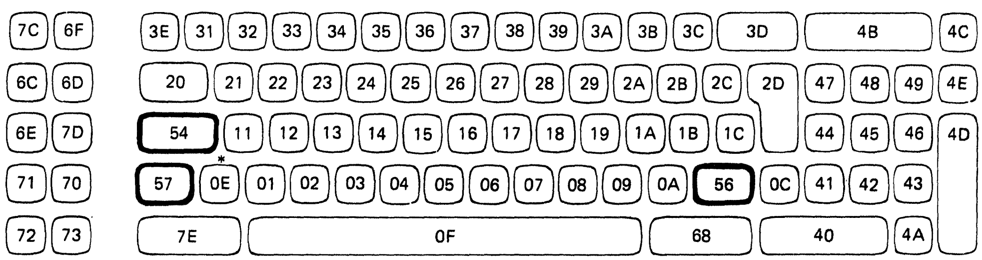
The 69-Key Data Entry Keyboard and Data Entry with Proof Keyboard (Katakana only)



* — Not present on the 67-key keyboard

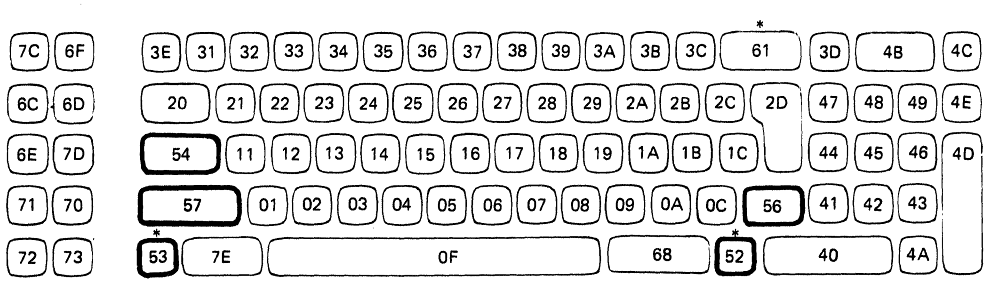
— A make/break key

The 83-Key Typewriter Keyboard



— A make/break key

The 85-Key Typewriter Keyboard (Katakana only)



* — Not present on the 83-key keyboard

— A make/break key

DISKETTE VOLUME LABEL

The diskette volume label identifies the volume, owner, security and sequence of the physical records on the tracks of the specified volume. The volume label is located at track 00, head 0, record 7, on each diskette. The following table shows the format of the diskette volume label (VOL1).

Decimal Position	Description
01-03	Volume label identifier; must be C'VOL'.
04	Volume label number; must be C'1'.
05-10	Volume identification field; up to 6 alphameric characters.
11	Accessibility indicator; a blank in this field permits access to this diskette. Any other character requires additional owner ID information to permit access.
12-24	Not used.
25-37	System code; not supported on the 5280.
38-51	Owner identification field; up to 14 alphameric characters used to access secure diskette.
52-64	Not used.
65	Volume Label Extension Indicator:

Character	*Meaning*
Blank or 0	No additional cylinders allocated.
1-9	Number of additional cylinders allocated; valid only on diskette 2D.

66-71	Not used.
72	Surface Indicator:

Character	*Meaning*
Blank	1 surface, FM recording (diskette 1)
2	2 surfaces, FM recording (diskette 2)
M	2 surfaces, MFM recording (diskette 2D)

Decimal Position	Description
73	Extent arrangement indicator (not used by the 5280).
74	Special requirements indicator (not used by the 5280).
75	Not used.
76	Physical Record (sector) Length Indicator:

Character	*Meaning*
Blank	128-byte sectors
1	256-byte sectors
2	512-byte sectors
3	1024-byte sectors

77-78	Physical record sequence code (see *Physical Record Sequence Code*).
79	Not used.
80	Label standard version; W indicates standard IBM labels are used. Anything else is invalid on the 5280.
81-128	Padding.

Physical Record Sequence Code (Position 77-78): Indicates how the physical records are sequenced on the diskette. This field contains either blanks or the characters 01 through 13. Blanks or a 01 indicates the sectors are physically sequential. Otherwise, this field is used as an increment to determine the next physical sectors.

26 Sectors Per Track

When this field contains:	Blank	01	02	03	04	05	06	07	08	09	10	11	12	13
The sequencing is:	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
	2	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14
	3	3	5	7	9	11	13	15	17	19	21	23	25	2
	4	4	7	10	13	16	19	22	25	2	2	2	2	15
	5	5	9	13	17	21	25	2	2	11	12	13	14	3
	6	6	11	16	21	26	2	9	10	20	22	24	26	16
	7	7	13	19	25	2	8	16	18	3	3	3	3	4
	8	8	15	22	2	7	14	23	26	12	13	14	15	17
	9	9	17	25	6	12	20	3	3	21	23	25	4	5
	10	10	19	2	10	17	26	10	11	4	4	4	16	18
	11	11	21	5	14	22	3	17	19	13	14	15	5	6
	12	12	23	8	18	3	9	24	4	22	24	26	17	19
	13	13	25	11	22	8	15	4	12	5	5	5	6	7
	14	14	2	14	26	13	21	11	20	14	15	16	18	20
	15	15	4	17	3	18	4	18	5	23	25	6	7	8
	16	16	6	20	7	23	10	25	13	6	6	17	19	21
	17	17	8	23	11	4	16	5	21	15	16	7	8	9
	18	18	10	26	15	9	22	12	6	24	26	18	20	22
	19	19	12	3	19	14	5	19	14	7	7	8	9	10
	20	20	14	6	23	19	11	26	22	16	17	19	21	23
	21	21	16	9	4	24	17	6	7	25	8	9	10	11
	22	22	18	12	8	5	23	13	15	8	18	20	22	24
	23	23	20	15	12	10	6	20	23	17	9	10	11	12
	24	24	22	18	16	15	12	7	8	26	19	21	23	25
	25	25	24	21	20	20	18	14	16	9	10	11	12	13
	26	26	26	24	24	25	24	21	24	18	20	22	24	26

15 Sectors Per Track

When this field contains:	Blank	01	02	03	04	05	06	07
The sequencing is:	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
	2	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
	3	3	5	7	9	11	13	15
	4	4	7	10	13	2	4	7
	5	5	9	13	2	7	10	14
	6	6	11	2	6	12	2	6
	7	7	13	5	10	3	8	13
	8	8	15	8	14	8	14	5
	9	9	2	11	3	13	5	12
	10	10	4	14	7	4	11	4
	11	11	6	3	11	9	3	11
	12	12	8	6	15	14	9	3
	13	13	10	9	4	5	15	10
	14	14	12	12	8	10	6	2
	15	15	14	15	12	15	12	9

8 Sectors Per Track

When this field contains:	Blank	01	02	03	04
The sequencing is:	1	1	1	1	1
	2	2	3	4	5
	3	3	5	7	2
	4	4	7	2	6
	5	5	2	5	3
	6	6	4	8	7
	7	7	6	3	4
	8	8	8	6	8

DISKETTE HEADER LABEL (HDR1)

Diskette 1: The HDR1s on diskette 1 are located on track 0, head 0, on sectors hexadecimal 08 through 1A.

Diskette 2: The HDR1s on diskette 2 are located on cylinder 0, head 0, on sectors hex 08 through 1A and on cylinder 0, head 1, on sectors 01 through 1A.

Diskette 2D: The HDR1s on diskette 2D are located on cylinder 0, head 0, on sectors 08 through 1A and on cylinder 0 head 1 on sectors 01 through 1A. In addition, nine additional cylinders can be allocated on diskette 2D for HDR1 labels on sectors 01 through 1A. On cylinder 0, head 1 and on additional index cylinders there are 2 labels per sector. The following table shows the format of the diskette header label (HDR1).

Decimal Position	Description
01-03	Header label identifier; must be C'HDR'.
04	Header label number; must be C'1'.
05	Not used.
06-22	Data set identifier; user name for the data set. It must be 1 to 17 characters. The first character must be in position 6 and must be alphabetic. No blanks are allowed between characters. Duplicate names are not permitted on the same diskette. For basic, H, and I exchange only 8 characters can be used. The names ERRORSET and SYSAREA are reserved for special use.
23-27	Block length; a numeric value (1 to 16 256) specifying the maximum numbers of characters per block. At label creation, the contents must be entered. Blocks must begin on physical record boundaries. For basic exchange, 1 to 128. For H exchange, 1 to 256. For I exchange, the block length must equal the physical record length.
28	Record Attribute:

Character	*Meaning*
Blank	Records are unblocked, unspanned
B	Records are blocked, unspanned
R	Records are blocked, spanned

29-33	Beginning of extent (BOE); the address of the first sector of the data set. Positions 29 to 30 contain the cylinder number, position 31 contains the header number, and positions 32 to 33 contain the sector number.

Decimal Position	Description

34 Physical record length; must be the same as position 76 of the volume label.

Blank = 128-byte records.
1 = 256-byte records.
2 = 512-byte records.
3 = 1024-byte records.

35-39 End of extent (EOE); the address of the last sector reserved for this data set, using the same format as BOE.

40 Record Block Format:

Character	*Meaning*
Blank or F	Fixed-length records in the fixed blocks.
V	Record length is variable; not supported on the 5280.

41 Bypass Indicator:

Character	*Meaning*
B	Not to be exchanged or copied
Blank	Can be exchanged or copied

42 Data set security; data set cannot be accessed if this byte contains other than a block.

43 Write protect; if this position contains a P, the data set can only be read. This field must be blank to allow both reading and writing.

44 Exchange Type Indicator:

Character	*Meaning*
Blank	Basic exchange for diskette 1 and 2, formats 1 and 4.
H	H exchange for diskette 2D, format 7.
E	No summation of attributes exists.
I	I exchange.

Decimal Position	Description
45	Multivolume Data Set Indicator:

Character	Meaning
blank	The data set is complete on this diskette.
C	The data set is continued on another diskette.
L	This is the last volume of a multivolume data set.

Decimal Position	Description
46-47	Volume sequence number; specifies the sequence of volumes in a multivolume data set. The sequence must be consecutive, beginning with 01 (to a maximum of 99). Blanks indicate that volume sequence checking is not to be performed on this volume and all subsequent volumes of a multivolume data set.
48-53	Creation date; may be used to record the date the data set was created. The format is digits representing YYMMDD, where YY is the low-order 2 digits of the year, MM is a 2-digit representation of the month, and DD is a 2-digit representation of the day of the month. Blanks indicate that the creation date is not significant.
54-57	Logical record length; 1-9999. Blank indicates that the logical record length equals the block length.
58-62	Offset to next record space; indicates the starting position for the next sequential record relative to the end of the last block before EOD (end of data) and contains blanks or a decimal value to be used as a negative displacement. Blanks mean zero displacement from the next block (starts at EOD address). This field is used only in conjunction with blocked records.
63-66	Not used.
67-72	Expiration date; may be used to contain the date the data set (and the data set label) may be deleted. The format is the same as creation date (positions 48-53). All blanks indicate the data set is expired. All 9s indicate the data set will never expire.
73	Verify/copy indicator; V indicates that the data set has been verified. C indicates that the data set has been copied. Blank indicates that it has been neither verified nor copied.
74	Data set organization; blank indicates that the data set organization is sequential. D indicates the sequential relocation is not allowed.

Decimal Position	Description
75-79	End of data address (EOD); identifies the address of the next unused sector within the data set extent, using the same format as BOE. If this field is the same as BOE, the extent contains a null data set. If this field contains the address of the next block beyond the extent (for unblocked, unspanned records), the entire extent has been used. For blocked or spanned records, this field must be used with offset to next record space (positions 58-62) to determine the end of actual data recorded.
80	Not used.
81	Destination selection code (not used by the 5280).
82-95	Not used.
96-108	System code; identifies the operating system that created the data set label for this data set. (For the 5280 system, this field will be IBM5280.)
109-110	File application type (not used by the 5280).
111-118	Not used.
119	Data header/trailer label indicator (for I and E exchange only): Blank Indicates that the data set uses no data labels. F Indicates that one or more data header labels are stored in the beginning of the data set. E Indicates that one or more data trailer labels are stored at the end of the data set. B Indicates that one or more data header labels are stored at the beginning of the data set and one or more data trailer labels are stored at the end of the data set.
120-121	Number of data header labels (I and E exchange only). Can have values 01 through 99.
122	Number of data trailer labels (I and E exchange only). Can have values 1 through 9.
123	Record delete indicator (for I ad E exchange only); the character used to indicate deleted records. This character appears in the last position of a logical record to indicate that it is deleted. Valid characters are A-Z, 0-9, or one of the following symbols: . , - / % # @ : $ &
124-128	Not used.

This page intentionally left blank

ASSEMBLER LANGUAGE INSTRUCTION TIMES

These timings for the specified assembler language instructions assume that no other programs are running in the system except the one executing the assembler language instructions being measured. Any other programs running on the system will cause the instruction times to exceed those tabulated by an amount dependent upon the number and types of programs.

Instruction Type		Time (microseconds)
Indexed branch	GOTO	140
Constant insert	= Constant	140
Indicator tests and full branches	0x Op codes	160
Binary register operations	9x Op Codes	150-220
Decimal or binary logical compare operations	IF Rn, IF BRn	190-700
Subroutine call or return	CALL, RETURN	320
Set indicator ON, OFF	SON, SOFF	70 + 130 per indicator
Decimal register operations	1x Op codes	440-1900
Decimal register multiply	Rn*	3800-15700
Single decimal register divide	Rn/	3800-16600
Double decimal register divide	Rn(32)/	3800-91700
Table operations	5x Op codes	320+160 per entry + 20 per byte looked at
Translate	TRNAS	258 + 22 per byte
Translate and test	TRT	350 + 23 per byte
Move characters	MVC	240 + 10 per byte
Compare character strings	CLC	350 + 21 per byte up to miscompare
Generate self check number	GSCK	1000-8000

I/O processing times (exclusive of physical I/O, which is usually the largest part of the time) are as follows:

Instruction Type	Time (microseconds)
• Read and write with no format, SCS, or translation	1-2 ms.
• Data directed setup	1 ms. + 100 microseconds per format entry searched
• Format processing	0.5-1 ms. for setup + 10 microseconds per character for straight move + 25-30 microseconds per character for write editing + 30-35 microseconds per character for read editing

Instruction Type	Time (microseconds)
• SCS processing	0.5-50 ms. for setup + 20-25 microseconds per character

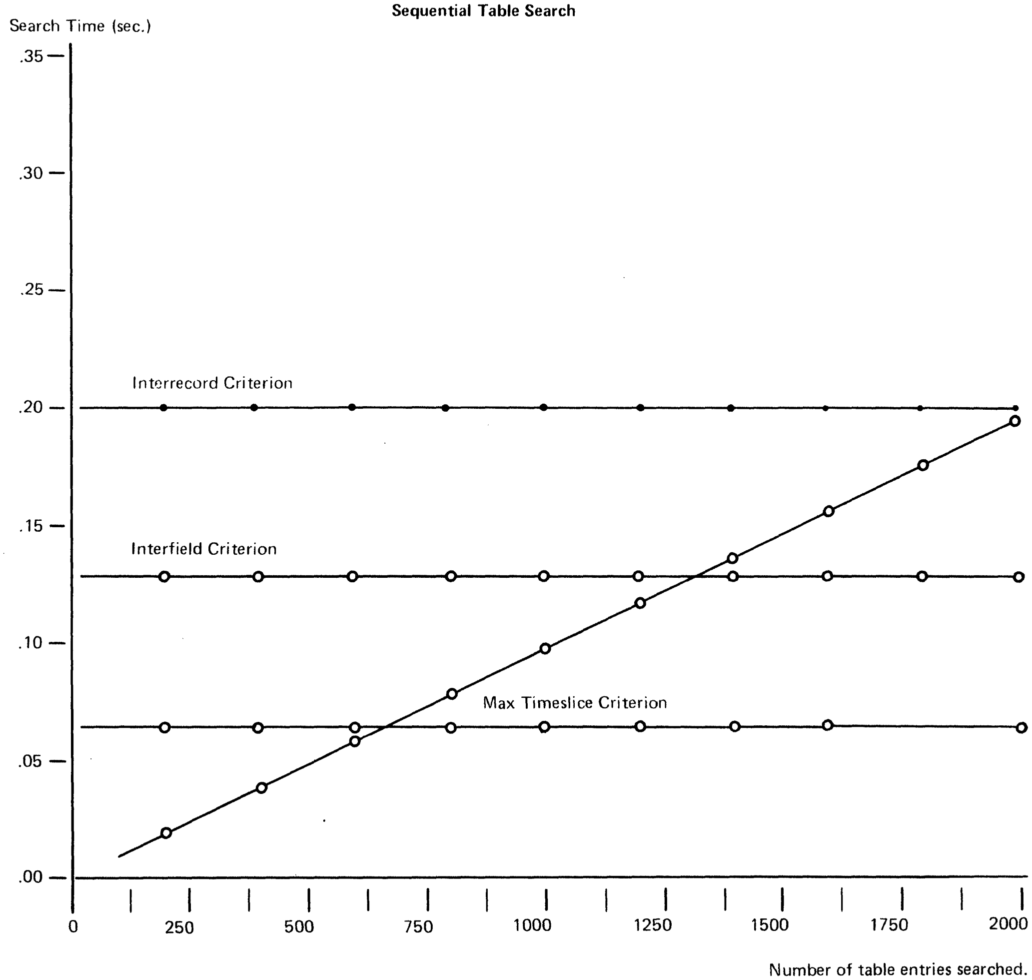
In addition to the times stated above, time must be added for:

Instruction Type	Time (microseconds)
• Time between a main microprocessor raising attention to device MPU and device MPU getting to IOB.	About 100 microseconds if device MPU is not busy.
• Device MPU processing time	1-2 ms.

SEQUENTIAL TABLE SEARCH TIMES

The time to search a sequential table in memory with the approriate assembler language instruction is specified in the graph titled *Sequential Table Search.* Characters of each entry are assumed to be random, equally distributed decimal digits, and the chance of a miscompare on any digit is 0.9. (For other kinds of data, search times are increased by about 20% for each additional character search per entry on the average.)

Sequential Table Search



access method: A technique for moving data between main storage and an input/output device.

active data set: A data set being used by a program.

adapter: The part of an attachment that is needed to electrically or physically fit a device to another system component.

address: A name, label, or number that identifies a register, location in storage, or any other data source.

alphabetic characters: Letters and other symbols, excluding digits, used in a language.

alphabetic field: One or more alphabetic characters of related information in a record.

alphabetic shift: A control (attribute or key) for selecting the alphabetic character set in an alphameric keyboard.

alphameric characters: Same as alphabetic characters, with the addition of digits 0 through 9.

alphameric field: One or more alphameric characters of related information in a record.

arithmetic expression: An expression that contains arithmetic operations and that can be reduced to a single numeric value. An arithmetic expression is evaluated from left to right with multiplication and division preceding addition and subtraction.

alternate record advance: A function that causes the system to stop processing the current record and ignore any specifications between the cursor position and the end of the record when the Enter or Rec Adv key is pressed.

apostrophe: This character (') is used to enclose character strings such as 'NUMBER'. Two consecutive apostrophe characters are used to form an apostrophe in a character constant such as 'DRIVERS''S LICENSE'.

application: A unit of work for which the system will be used. For example, this unit of work can consist of entering data from source documents to do payroll for a small company.

application program: A program that processes user data to perform a particular data processing task; for example, inventory control or payroll.

arithmetic expression: An expression that contains arithmetic operations and that can be reduced to a single numeric value. An arithmetic expression is evaluated from left to right with multiplication and division preceding addition and subtraction.

ASCII: American National Code for Information Interchange. The standard code, using a coded character set consisting of 7-bit coded characters (8 bits including parity check), used for information interchange among data processing systems, data communication systems, and associated equipment. The ASCII set consists of control characters and graphic characters.

assembler: A computer program that prepares an object program from a source program written in a symbolic source language.

assembler language: A source language that includes symbolic machine language statements in which there is a one-to-one correspondence with the instruction formats and data formats of the computer.

attachment: An entire device or feature as attached to a processing unit, including any required adapters.

attention line: A hardware attention used by the microprocessors to communicate with each other.

attribute: A characteristic. For example, attributes of a data set include record length, label, and creation date. Attributes of a displayed field could include high intensity, reverse image, and column separators.

attribute byte: A control position that describes attributes to the system.

auto enter: A record advance function is automatically performed when the operator enters the last position of a record.

auto dup: Automatic duplication. (1) The process of automatically copying the contents of a field in a previous record or a storage area into the corresponding positions of the current record. (2) The process of automatically verifying the contents of a field in the current record with the contents of the corresponding positions of a previous record or a storage area.

auto record advance: Automatic record advance. A movement forward to the next sequential record without manual intervention when the current record is completely entered and the auto rec adv switch is on.

auto skip: Automatic skip. In enter mode, if the auto skip/dup switch is on, the process of automatically filling an auto skip field with blanks and advancing to the next field. In verify mode, the process of verifying that all the positions in the field are blank.

auto verify: Automatic verify. In verify mode, auto dup fields are checked against the same fields in the previous record. See *auto dup*, 2.

auxiliary duplication: The process of copying or verifying data from a named storage location into a field. For assembler programs, this is called main storage duplication.

awaiting field exit: The state of the keyboard when the operator has entered the last position of a field that is defined as a field exit required field.

awaiting record advance: The state of the keyboard when the operator has entered the last position of a record with a key other than the Record advance key, and the auto-enter function is not enabled.

background job: A job that is run in a partition which does not have immediate access to a keyboard/display unit.

base displacement addressing: An addressing method that involves setting up a base address from which other addresses can be calculated.

basic data exchange: A diskette data exchange that uses 128-byte sectors and allows only one record per sector. The logical record length must be $\leq$ 128 bytes and is unblocked and unspanned. The basic data exchange formats allow you to exchange data between 5280 and other systems that use the basic data exchange format.

binary: Base 2 arithmetic.

binary register: A 2-byte register in partition storage which contains binary notation and is used for binary arithmetic/logical operations.

binary search: At each step of the search the set of items is partitioned into two equal parts so that the search starts at the middle.

blank check: A check of a field to ensure that there are no blank characters (hex 40) in the field.

blank fill: To fill a field with blank characters (hex 40).

block: (1) A set of things, such as words, characters, or digits, handled as a unit. (2) A collection of contiguous records recorded as a unit. Each block can contain one or more records.

blocking: Combining two or more records into one block.

boundary alignment: The positioning of data areas such as registers or blocks, on an appropriate boundary for that type of data.

bps: Bits per second.

branch instruction: An instruction that changes the sequence in which the instructions in a computer program are executed. Execution of instructions continues at the address specified in the branch instruction.

BSC: Binary synchronous communications.

buffer: An area of storage that is temporarily reserved for use in performing an input/output operation, into which data is read or from which data is written. See also *physical buffer, logical buffer, current record buffer,* and *refresh buffers.*

CAM: Communications access method.

CCR: Communications configuration record.

CCU: Communications configuration utility.

character constant: Any combination of characters, including blanks, enclosed in apostrophes.

collating sequence: The order each character holds in relation to other characters according to the bit structure.

column separators: A display screen attribute that shows vertical lines preceding each position of a field on a display. These lines do not occupy positions on the display. For example, ABC.

command keys: The 14 keys on the top row of the data station keyboard that are used with the Cmd key to request functions.

comments: Words or statements in a program that serve as documentation rather than instructions to an assembler or compiler.

common area: The first part of main storage that contains the system control area, common functions, global tables (such as ASCII and error recording), and so on. Depending upon the common function option selected, this area can be 6 K, 14 K, or 16 K. This area is not available for user programs.

common functions: A set of IBM-supplied programs in the common area that is used by programs executing in any partition.

communications access method (CAM): A 5280 program that provides the necessary link between a communications program and the communication line. It performs functions such as data formatting and link protocol.

communications adapter: A hardware feature that enables the 5280 to become a part of a data communications network.

communications configuration record: A record that describes the communications environment. This record is created by the communications configuration utility.

communications control block pointer: Contains the address of the communications control block (CCB) and flags.

concurrent: Pertaining to the occurrence of two or more activities within a given interval of time.

configuration: The group of machines, devices, features, and programs that make up a data processing system.

constant: A data item that does not change during the execution of a program. This item represents itself and is actually used in processing rather than being a field name representing the data. For example, 'cost' is a name representing a field containing data that changes. The constant 100 is actual data used that does not change.

control block: A storage area used by a program to hold control information.

controller: A device that controls operation of one or more input/output devices; for example, a 5285 Programmable Data Station.

copy: To read data from a source, leaving the source data unchanged, and to write the same data elsewhere in a physical form that may differ from that of the source.

counter: A register or storage location used to accumulate the number of occurrences of an event.

current record buffer: The I/O buffer that holds the current record during data input via a keyboard.

cursor: A movable horizontal line (underscore) on a display screen, used to indicate where the next character entered by the operator will appear. It blinks when no additional entry is allowed and the system is awaiting the Enter key.

cylinder: The tracks that can be accessed without repositioning the diskette drive access mechanism.

data-directed format selection: Format selection is determined by the data contained in the record.

data exchange: The ability to exchange diskettes and the data recorded on a diskette data set with a system or device that is different from the one recording the data.

data required: A field attribute that indicates an operator must enter at least one nonblank character into the displayed field.

data set: An organized collection of related data records treated as a unit and existing on a diskette.

data set label: A 128-byte area on the diskette index cylinder that describes a data set.

data set name: The name associated with a data set. The first character must be alphabetic, and the remaining characters can be any combination of alphabetic or numeric characters. Blanks cannot appear between characters in a name.

data stream: Data transferred by stream-oriented transmission, as a continuous stream of data elements in character form.

data table: A table defined by the .TABLE control statement.

decimal register: A 16-byte register wherein data is stored in EBCDIC or signed decimal numbers and is used for arithmetic/logical operations.

default value: A value automatically chosen by the system when a value is not specified by the user.

DE/RPG: Data Entry with RPG Subroutines. A 5280 program product that provides a means for writing programs that provide the function required for a specific job.

device address: Four hex characters used to identify a 5280 I/O device such as a diskette drive or printer.

device microprocessors: The microprocessors that control I/O devices, such as the keyboard/display microprocessor, diskette microprocessor, printer attachment microprocessor, and communications microprocessor. The device microprocessors are controlled by the main microprocessor.

diacritic: A modifying mark that changes the phonetic value of a character. When you enter a diacritic from the keyboard, the cursor does not advance until another character is entered to combine with the diacritic.

diacritic table: A table in keyboard/display storage that defines diacritic characters and valid diacritic-character composites for graphic display.

direct access method: An access method for processing files by specifying the address (record number) or key value of each record to be accessed.

direct addressing: A method of addressing in which the addressed storage location contains the desired data. See also *indirect addressing.*

direct by key access method: An access method for processing index data files by specifying the key associated with each record to be accessed. The current key specified need not have any relative sequence with the last key or next key to be specified.

diskette attachment: Controls the function for up to four diskette drives and includes the hardware adapter, a microprocessor, and read only storage (ROS).

diskette drive: The mechanism used to read and write diskettes.

diskette head: The device that moves a diskette past a read/write mechanism.

diskette labels: The header (HDR1) and volume (VOL1) labels that are recorded on a diskette to describe the data sets on the diskette.

displacement: The number of bytes from the beginning of a partition or block to the beginning of a particular data area.

display/alter: A diagnostic function that allows data in storage to be displayed and changed.

display attributes: The characteristics assigned to a field record that control the way the data is displayed.

display mode: The mode in which the prompts, display attributes, and the contents of the current record buffer are displayed, but the cursor is not displayed and no data can be entered. This mode is used to inspect prompts and display attributes of a screen format.

double register: Two decimal or binary registers used together as one data area. In a source program, the leftmost register is referenced, followed by the length in parentheses (4 for binary, 32 for decimal).

dup: Abbreviation for duplicate.

EBCDIC (extended binary-coded decimal interchange code): A character set containing 256 eight-bit characters.

edit format: A description of a record that is read from a diskette, written to a diskette or printer, or moved from one storage location to another. An edit format is set up by a FMT series of control statements in an assembler program, and defines the fields, punctuation, data types, and other editing requirements of the record.

ELAB/ETAB: Parameter in the .COMM and .DATASET control statements that specifies the name of a routine (ELAB) or table (ETAB) to be used to handle error or external status conditions.

enter mode: The mode in which the operator initially enters data through a display station. Some editing and interaction may occur. See also *verify mode; update mode.*

E-type data exchange: A diskette data exchange format that uses blocked and spanned, blocked and unspanned, or unblocked and unspanned records. Block size can be up to 16 256 bytes.

extent: A continuous space on a diskette that is occupied by or reserved for a particular data set.

external register: A register that is used by a microprocessor. External registers are not located within main storage and are not used by an application program.

extra line: Row 1 of the screen refresh buffer, which can be displayed on the top row of the screen in place of the status line.

field: One or more bytes of related information in a record.

field attribute: See *attribute.*

field correct mode: The mode in which the operator can enter data into a field during verification.

field separator: A blank character position preceding every field of an enter record. This position is required for the attribute byte.

fixed position prompt: A user-written message that appears on a specified row of the display screen. Contrast with *standard position prompt.*

foreground job: The keyboard/display unit is immediately available to the partition where the job is being executed.

format control string: The object code generated by source program edit format or screen format specifications.

format level: The identification associated with a format.

format 0 (zero): A screen format for display stations that allows entering information on an unformatted display.

formatted diskette: A diskette on which track and sector control information has been written but which may or may not contain data.

global load: A load operation that uses the standard load prompt. A global load is initiated by the system when the load parameters are not specified for a LOAD instruction in an assembler program, and when an error occurs when using the Standard Load Processor.

global table: A table in the common area. The first two global tables are the error recording tables. If the ASCII translate table is selected during system configuration, the ASCII translate table is another global table.

HDR1 label: Control information written on a diskette index that describes a data set on the diskette.

hex: Hexadecimal. A number system using 16 symbols: 0-9, A-F each representing 4 bits (one-half byte).

host computer: The primary or controlling computer in a data communications system.

H-type data exchange: A diskette data exchange format that uses 256-byte sectors. It allows only one record per sector. The logical record length must be 256 bytes; it is unblocked and unspanned. The H-type exchange allows you to exchange data between 5280 and other systems that use the H-type data exchange format.

ID: Identification.

index data set: A data set in which the keys from another data set and their record position within that data set are recorded. When index data sets are used, the following access methods can be used: sequential; direct by relative record number; and direct by key value.

index register: A register whose contents can be added to or subtracted from the operand address before or during execution of a computer instruction.

indexed address: An address that is modified by the content of an index register before or during the execution of an instruction.

indexed instruction: An instruction that requires address modification before the data byte is fetched from storage.

indirect addressing: A method of addressing in which the addressed storage location contains the address of the desired data. See also *direct addressing.*

initial program load (IPL): A sequence of events that loads the system programs and prepares the system for execution of jobs.

input data set: A set of records a program uses as source information.

input/output control block (IOB): A data area that may be used to pass the required information from the calling program to the input/output supervisor for data operations.

input record: A data record that is transferred to computer storage for processing.

insert field: A field not present in the enter record, but which will be inserted by the system and will be present in the output record.

insert mode: The mode, initiated by the Ins key, in which the operator can insert characters into a field at the current cursor position. The cursor, the character above the cursor, and all characters to the right of the cursor are shifted to the right.

instruction: A statement that specifies an operation to be performed by the computer and the locations in storage of all data involved in that operation.

IOB: Input/output control block.

IOB pointer: A 4-byte block in the system control area that contains the address of a device IOB and other information (such as, if the device is installed).

IPL: Initial program load.

I-type data exchange: A diskette data exchange format that uses 128-, 256-, 512-, or 1024-byte sectors. All records in a data set must be the same length. All records in the data set are blocked and spanned. The I-type exchange allows you to exchange data between the 5280 and other systems that use the I-type data exchange.

keyboard bit map: Control bits in the keyboard/display IOB that correspond to functions that are totally or partially processed by the keyboard/display microprocessor. An application program written in assembler language can set these bits to indicate that the corresponding function is to be handled by the application program.

keyboard/display storage: An area of control storage separate from main storage, which provides control information and refresh areas for processing keystrokes and for displaying characters on the screen.

keyword: A word, coded in source statements, that represents specific attributes and functions, and that is usually accompanied by a string of one or more parameters.

label table: A table of addresses set up by the .LABTAB control statement, and used for indexed branches and indexed subroutine calls.

label update: A data set type that allows the labels on the diskette index to be updated.

logical buffer: An I/O buffer that contains a logical record, used to block and deblock logical records in the physical buffer.

logical record: A record independent of its physical environment. Portions of the same logical record may be located in different physical records, or several logical records or parts of logical records may be located in one physical record, depending on the exchange type being used.

Magnetic Stripe Reader feature: Allows use of the 5280 system only after a valid badge (operator ID) is read by an attached magnetic stripe reader.

main microprocessor: The microprocessor that processes the the object code instructions and controls the device microprocessors. References to the main microprocessor can also apply to the second application microprocessor.

main storage: (1) General purpose storage of a computer. (2) Storage that can be addressed by programs, from which instructions can be executed, and from which data can be loaded directly into registers.

main storage duplication field: See *auxiliary duplication.*

main storage store field: A field that is automatically stored from the current record buffer into a main storage location.

make/break key: A key that generates a scan code when the key is pressed, and another when the key is released.

mandatory enter: A field attribute that indicates an operator must enter at least one character into the displayed field.

mandatory fill: A field attribute that indicates an operator must enter all or none of the displayed field.

mask: A pattern of characters that is used to control the retention or elimination of another group of characters.

microprocessor save area: Bytes marked as a microprocessor save area contain information that depends upon the operation being executed, and is therefore unpredictable. An application program must not change these bytes.

mode: The operational category of a data station. Modes for the 5280 include: enter, update, verify, rerun, rerun/display, field correct, and special verify.

MPU: The main microprocessor.

MRJE: MULTI-LEAVING remote job entry.

multinational character set: The 188-character (or 184-character) display and printer character set available with the 5280.

multiprogramming: The concurrent execution of 2 or more programs (up to the maximum number of partitions) in which each program appears to be the only program in the system. Programs can have exclusive use of data sets and/or system I/O resources or can share them, depending upon the application requirements.

multivolume data set: A data set that extends beyond the boundaries of a single data set. It can be extended on the same diskette or on another diskette.

nest: To embed subroutines or data in other subroutines or data at a different hierarchical level such that the different levels of routines or data can be accessed or executed in a reentrant fashion.

nondisplay: A field attribute that prevents display of data. It can be used for fields containing confidential information.

null character: The hexadecimal character 00.

numeric fields: A field that contains one or more numeric characters. Valid numeric characters are the digits 0-9 and + (plus sign), - (minus sign), . (decimal point), blank, and , (comma).

numeric shift: A control (attribute or key) for selecting the numeric character set in an alphameric keyboard.

object code: The 4-byte instructions from the compiler or assembler that are machine executable. The first byte of the object code contains the operation code.

object program: A set of instructions in machine language (object code). The object program is produced by the assembler from the source program.

offset: The distance from the beginning of a register or record to the beginning of a particular field.

overlay: (verb) The act of one module being called on top of another to use the same space.

output data set: A data set containing the data that results from processing.

packed data field: One byte is used to store two numeric digits. Bits 0 through 3 for one digit and bits 4 through 7 for the other.

packed decimal format: Each byte within a field represents two numeric digits except the rightmost byte, which contains one digit in bits 0 through 3 and the sign in bits 4 through 7. For all other bytes, bits 0 through 3 represent one digit; bits 4 through 7 represent one digit. For example, the decimal value +123 is represented as 0001 0010 0011 1111. Contrast with zoned decimal format.

packed field: A field that contains data in the packed decimal format.

pad: To fill unused positions in a field with dummy data, usually zeros or blanks.

parameter: A field of a control statement or instruction.

partition: An area of 5280 storage in which a program can execute.

partition IOB: A control block that is stored in the first 128 bytes of a partition, and which describes the partition and the program that is loaded into the partition.

partition pointer: Contains the address of the beginning of a partition. The partition pointer also contains flags to indicate the status of the partition (such as whether the partition is a foreground or background partition).

partition stack pointer: See *stack pointer.*

physical buffer: An I/O buffer that contains a physical record.

physical record: A record whose characteristics depend on the manner or form in which it is stored, retrieved, or moved. A physical record may consist of all or part of a logical record, or more than one logical record.

port: An access point for receiving or transmitting data.

production statistics: Statistics related to activities occurring during key entry operation.

program listing: A computer printout that gives information about the source program, such as source statements, diagnostic messages, indicators used, storage addresses of fields and constants used.

program product: An IBM-written, licensed program for which a monthly charge is made. A program product performs functions related to processing user data.

prompt: A message issued by a program that requests either information or an operator action to continue processing.

QBA: Queued block address; a pointer to a device or partition IOB.

reformatting: The rearrangement of an addition or elimination of fields in a record.

refresh: The continuous redisplaying of data on the display screen to prevent the data from fading out.

refresh buffers: Areas in keyboard/display storage that are used to refresh each row of display characters on the screen. The refresh area for the status line is in an area separate from the refresh area for the other rows on the screen.

relative addressing: A means of addressing instructions and data areas by designating their location in relation to the location counter or to some symbolic symbol. Relative addresses of areas within a partition are relative to the beginning of the partition.

relative record number: A number that specifies the location of a record in relation to the beginning of the data set.

rerun mode: An operational mode that allows the application program to perform the return-to-program (RG) exits within a screen format control string in a rapid fashion without operator intervention. No status line information, prompts, data, or display attributes appear on the display screen.

rerun/display mode: An operational mode that is the same as rerun mode except that the status line information, prompts, data, and display attributes appear on the screen so the operator can inspect the rerun data.

resource allocation table: A table in storage that is used to assign a logical device ID (a name) to a physical device.

return-to-program exit: See *RG exit.*

reverse image: The display attribute that causes characters to be displayed as dark characters on a light background.

RG exit: A user exit that interrupts the processing of a screen format to give control to a user's routine.

right adjust: The placement of data in a register or field, or the shifting of the contents of a register or field, so that the least significant byte at the right end of the data is placed into the rightmost position of the register or field. A right adjust field must be at least 2 characters in length.

right justify: The adjustment of positions of characters so that the rightmost character entered is at the extreme right of a field.

SCP: See *system control programs.*

screen format: A description of a record that is entered via the keyboard/display. A screen format is set up by a SFMT series of control statements, and defines the fields, prompts, control specifications, and display attributes of the record.

screen format control string: The object code that is generated by a series of SFMT control statements.

SCS: SNA standard character string.

SCS conversion data set: A data set that has SCS conversion specified in the .DATASET control statement that defined the data set. The system automatically inserts SCS control characters into an SCS conversion data set.

SCS data set: A data set that contains SCS control characters. Contrast with *SCS conversion data set.*

SDLC: Synchronous data link control.

search argument: The data to be compared to specific parts of a record for a data set search operation, or to table entries for a table search operation.

second application microprocessor: Is identical to the main microprocessor except it does not respond to keyboard attentions.

sector: An area on a diskette track reserved to record a unit of data.

security: Prevention of access to or use of all or part of data or programs without authorization.

self-check field: A field, such as an account number, consisting of a base number and a self-check digit or digits. For data entry applications, the self-check digit or digits entered by the operator is compared to the self-check digit or digits computed by the system. If the operator makes a mistake when entering (keying) a self-check field, an error message is displayed.

sequential access method: An access method in which records are accessed in the order in which they occur in the file. Contrast with *direct access method.*

sequential by key: A method of data set processing that accesses records in the order in which a keyed or indexed data set is arranged.

SNA: Systems network architecture.

source program: A set of instructions that represents a particular job as defined by the programmer. These instructions are written in a programming language, such as DE/RPG.

spanned record: (1) A record that crosses a block boundary. (2) A record that is stored in more than one block.

stack pointer: The binary register (BR18) used for subroutine calls and returns. During a subroutine call, the stack pointer contains the address of the next available entry in the subroutine stack; during a subroutine return it contains the address of the last entry in the subroutine stack.

standard load prompt: The screen format stored in the common area that is used to prompt for load parameters during a global load or by the Standard Load Processor.

standard position prompt: A user-written message that can appear in any position on the display screen. Contrast with *fixed position prompt.*

status line: Usually, the first line on a display screen. This line provides operational information.

stripped zone: See *packed data field.*

subroutine stack: A table of return addresses used for subroutine returns.

subroutine stack pointer: See *stack pointer.*

Synchronous data link control (SDLC): A discipline for managing synchronous, transparent, serial-by-bit information transfer over a communications line.

syntax: (1) The structure of expressions in a language. (2) The rules governing the structure of a language.

system configuration: A process that specifies the various components and devices that form a particular operating system. System configuration combines user-specified options and parameters with IBM programs to produce a system having the desired form and capacity.

system control block: 256 bytes starting at address X'00'. This area contains information such as the address of each partition, device IOB pointers, system flags, machine storage size, and so on.

system control programming: IBM-supplied programs that are on a diskette. These programs are included with each system and allows the operator to configure the system, IPL the system, and recover from power failures.

system table: A table set up and used by the system to store the addresses of screen formats, edit formats, prompts, data tables, and duplicate or store fields.

system network architecture (SNA): A total description of logical structure, formats, protocols, and operation sequences for transmitting information throughout a communications network.

system use only: Bytes marked system use only should never be changed by an application program.

timeout: A time interval during which a station waits for a certain operation to occur. Some timeouts are automatic hardware functions and some are program functions.

trace: A record of the execution of a computer program; it exhibits the sequence in which the instructions were executed.

track: A circular path on the surface of a diskette upon which information is magnetically recorded and from which recorded information is read.

update mode: The mode in which the operator selects certain records for review and correction.

verify: To determine whether a transcription of data or other operation has been accomplished accurately.

verify bypass field: A field that was entered, but does not need to be verified.

verify mode: The mode in which the operator rekeys data from a source document that has already been keyed in order to check that the data has been entered correctly.

VOL1 label: Control information written on a diskette index that describes the volume, owner, security, and sequence of the physical records on the tracks of the specified volume.

zero fill: To fill with the numeric value zero.

zero suppress: The elimination of preceding zeros in a number. For example, 0057 becomes 57 when zero suppressed.

zone: The high-order 4 bits of a byte.

zoned decimal format: Representation of a decimal value by 1 byte per digit. Bits 0 through 3 of the rightmost byte represent the sign; bits 0 through 3 of all other bytes represent the zone portion; bits 4 through 7 of all bytes represent the numeric portion. For example, the decimal value +123 is represented as 1111 0001 1111 0010 1111 0011. Contrast with packed decimal format.

zoned field: A field that contains data in the zoned decimal format.

Index

READER'S COMMENT FORM

IBM 5280
Distributed Data
System
Functions Reference Manual

GA21-9353-1

Please use this form only to identify publication errors or request changes to publications. Technical questions about IBM systems, changes in IBM programming support, requests for additional publications, etc, should be directed to your IBM representative or to the IBM branch office nearest your location.

Error in publication (typographical, illustration, and so on). **No reply.**

Page Number *Error*

Inaccurate or misleading information in this publication. Please tell us about it by using this postage-paid form. We will correct or **clarify the** publication, or tell you why a change is not being made, **provided you** include your name and address.

Page Number *Comment*

IBM may use and distribute any of the information you supply in any way it believes appropriate without incurring any obligation whatever. You may, of course, continue to use the information you supply.

- No postage necessary if mailed in the U.S.A.

Name ____________________

Company or
Organization ____________________

Address ____________________

____

Reader's Comment Form

Cut or Fold Along Line

Fold and tape | **Please Do Not Staple** | Fold and Tape

NO POSTAGE
NECESSARY
IF MAILED
IN THE
UNITED STATES

BUSINESS REPLY MAIL

FIRST CLASS PERMIT NO. 40 ARMONK, NEW YORK

POSTAGE WILL BE PAID BY ADDRESSEE

International Business Machines Corporation
Department 506, Building 998
11400 Burnet Rd.
Austin, Texas 78758

Fold and tape | **Please Do Not Staple** | Fold and Tape

International Business Machines Corporation

General Systems Division
4111 Northside Parkway N.W.
P.O. Box 2150
Atlanta, Georgia 30055
(U.S.A. only)

General Business Group/International
44 South Broadway
White Plains, New York 10601
(International)

GA21-9353-1

Printed in U.S.A.